Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Material Issues

In this section, we discuss our most important sustainability issues and how they were identified. We also present perspectives on key issues from external and internal experts.

Materiality Analysis

Ford uses a rigorous materiality analysis to prioritize key sustainability issues.

READ MORE

Climate Change

We have a comprehensive climate change strategy to cut greenhouse gas emissions from our products and operations.

READ MORE

Water

We recently refined our corporate water strategy.

READ MORE

Supply Chain

Our aim is to leverage our supply chain – and our industry – to make a positive impact in the markets in which we do business.

READ MORE

Vehicle Safety and Driver-Assist Technologies

Safety is one of four principles that guide our every design and engineering effort.

READ MORE

Sustaining Ford

Sustainability is at the heart of our business.

READ MORE

Perspectives on Sustainability

Experts from Ford and other institutions offer their perspectives on our key sustainability issues.

READ MORE

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Materiality Analysis

For its 2010/11 Sustainability Report, Ford conducted an update of its materiality analysis, adding key inputs, replacing outdated inputs and gathering feedback from internal experts. In addition, a Ceres Stakeholder Committee reviewed the analysis and provided comments.

Not surprisingly, in the two years since our last analysis, some new issues emerged, some dropped out and others were recast or reorganized.

In general, there was less concern about Ford's financial viability among non-Company stakeholders, likely reflecting Ford's improved financial performance. Water emerged as a material issue – in particular, the need for a water strategy that varies by risk and region. Supply chain issues also rose in importance for Ford and other stakeholders, including issues related to the sustainability of raw materials and the environmental and human rights performance of suppliers. These topics are now at the highest level of importance under the new issue category of "supply chain sustainability."

In addition to these major trends, changes to the most material issues (upper right part of the materiality matrix) included the following:

- Financial issues were reorganized into two primary categories: Ford's financial health and Ford's future competitiveness. Some issues that were formerly in the upper-right segment – including health care legacy costs, labor costs and access to capital – declined in importance, likely because of actions Ford has taken to manage them. As a result, many financial issues were reorganized into a more general "costs and risks" category. This category and "product competitiveness" issues remained at the highest level of importance for Ford and stakeholders. Labor costs, access to capital, the threat of competitor bankruptcy and dealer and supplier viability – new issues that were added in the last analysis – were less important than in the last analysis.
- Mobility issues – including urban mobility, mega-cities and urban-to-rural migration – were included under the category of "Ford's future competitiveness," as they present challenges for traditional models of personal mobility and opportunities to develop new products and services. Also in the future competitiveness category are emerging markets products and services strategy, an issue of increasing importance as Ford continues to grow globally.
- Ford's climate change strategy remains of the highest importance to the Company and stakeholders alike, but the issues comprising the grouping have shifted. For example, as anticipated global carbon markets failed to emerge, emissions trading/cost of carbon decreased in importance to Ford and its stakeholders. Climate change policy remains of high concern.

Materiality Matrix

Our interactive materiality matrix categorizes issues according to their concern to stakeholders and their current or potential impact on the Company.

READ MORE

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Overview of the Analysis

What Is Materiality?

For the purposes of this report, we consider material information to be that which is of greatest interest to, and which has the potential to affect the perception of, those stakeholders who wish to make informed decisions and judgments about the Company's commitment to environmental, social and economic progress. Thus, materiality as used in this Sustainability Report does not share the meaning of the concept for the purposes of financial reporting.

How Was the Analysis Conducted?

To identify and prioritize material issues, we significantly updated the analysis done for our 2008/9 Sustainability Report using a three-step process.

Identification of Material Business Issues

We developed a list of more than 500 issues, grouped into 15 topics. The issues were identified by reviewing Ford business documents as well as comments from employees, dealers and our major external stakeholders: customers, communities, suppliers, investors and NGOs. For the Ford analysis, the documents included Ford policies, business strategy and performance tracking tools, and the Annual Report on Form 10-K. To represent stakeholder views, we looked at Ford-specific inputs like summaries of stakeholder engagement sessions as well as documents that represent stakeholder views more broadly, such as the Global Reporting Initiative G3 Guidelines, the Ceres Roadmap to Sustainability and reports from socially responsible and mainstream investors.

Prioritization of the Issues

We noted the frequency with which issues were raised in the source documents and rated each issue as low, moderate or high for current or potential impact on the Company in a three- to five-year timeframe, and degree of concern to stakeholders (by stakeholder group). For each issue, the ratings were averaged separately for Ford and stakeholders (with extra weight assigned to investors and multi-stakeholder inputs, as they are key audiences of our reporting). The issues and their ratings were then plotted on a "materiality matrix."

We consider the issues in the upper-right sector to be the most material. None of the issues is unimportant; the position of each in the matrix simply represents our understanding of its relative importance to the Company and its stakeholders.

Review of the Analysis

The draft matrix was reviewed internally. It was then reviewed and revised again based on a meeting of a Ceres stakeholder committee that included representatives of environmental and other NGOs, socially responsible investment organizations and a supplier company.

Use of the Analysis

We have used this analysis to identify issues to cover in our reporting and as an input to our sustainability strategy development. This analysis, and the methods for conducting materiality analyses generally, are works in progress. Sustainability issues are not discrete. Rather, they overlap and interconnect in a complex system that is difficult to capture in a list of issues. Analyzing issues by stakeholder group adds depth to our understanding of who is concerned about which issues and why, but in the process of placing them on a two-dimensional matrix, some of that nuance is lost. Finally, an element of subjectivity is inevitable.

We have participated with other companies and organizations in documenting current methods for materiality analysis with the expectation that this will help advance the practice.

Materiality Matrix

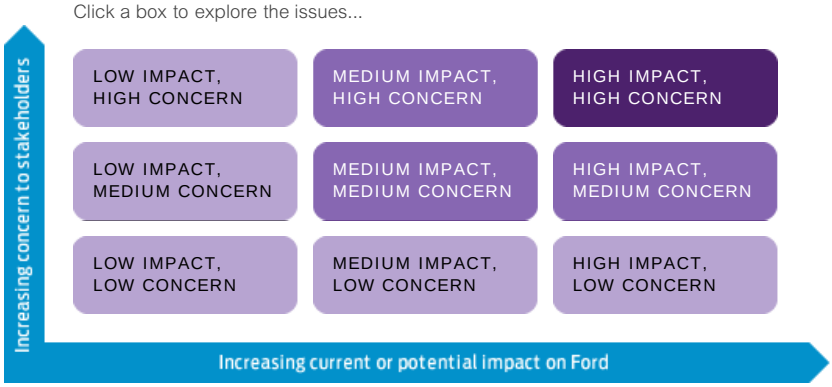
Our interactive materiality matrix categorizes issues according to their concern to stakeholders and their current or potential impact on the Company.

READ MORE

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



Above is our interactive materiality matrix. In it, issues are categorized according to their concern to stakeholders and their current or potential impact on the Company. Click each box to see which issues are categorized within each sector.

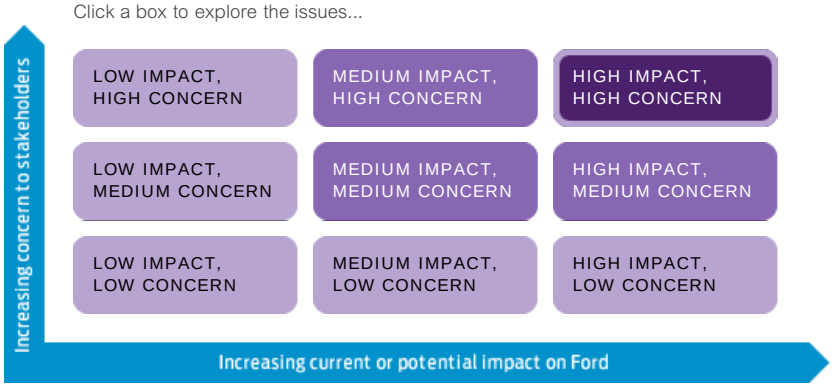
Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

14 material issues have been identified at this level

Click on an issue below for more details

CLIMATE CHANGE

Low-carbon strategy

Definition/Description	Ford's strategy to reduce carbon emissions from products and operations; goals and targets; use of renewable energy and offsets.
Comments	Strongly related to other material issues; of increasing interest to government and investors.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level
More information	• Climate Change • Our Strategy: Blueprint for Sustainability • Environment • Delivering New Products • Electrification: A Closer Look • Facilities

Vehicle GHG emissions

Definition/Description	Ford's product actions to meet its CO_2 target.
Comments	Increasingly driven by regulatory requirements as well as Ford's voluntary product CO_2 goal; of increasing interest to government and investors.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level
More information	• Climate Change • Vehicle • Environment Progress and Goals • Environment Data: Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions

Fuel economy

Definition/Description	Increasingly global issue, but particular focus on Ford's U.S. fleet.
Comments	Increasingly driven by regulatory requirements as well as Ford's voluntary product CO_2 goal; of increasing interest to government and investors.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level
More information	• Environment Progress and Goals • Delivering More Fuel-Efficient Vehicles • Greenhouse Gas Emissions Overview • Climate Change Risks and Opportunities

	• Our Strategy: Blueprint for Sustainability • Improving Fuel Economy • Environment Data: Fuel Economy and CO_2 Emissions

Electrification strategy

Definition/Description	Ford's strategy to deliver electric vehicles to the marketplace and work with partners to address infrastructure and utility interface issues.
Comments	Reflects growing interest in alternatives to fossil fuels and domestic energy and the challenges of transitioning from traditionally fueled vehicles to plug-in vehicles.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level
More information	• Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains • Electrification: A Closer Look • Public Policy Positions: Electrification

PUBLIC POLICY

GHG/fuel economy regulation

Definition/Description	Regulation of vehicle emissions globally, state-by-state regulation in U.S.; increasing stringency and inconsistency of regulation; challenges left by lack of U.S. federal climate legislation.
Comments	With passage of new CAFE requirements in U.S. and new EU requirements in Europe, focus is increasingly on economy-wide policy approaches.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level
More information	• U.S. Climate Change Policy • U.S. Greenhouse Gas and Fuel Economy Regulation • European Climate Change Policy • Climate Change Risks and Opportunities • Emissions Trading Policy • Greenhouse Gas Emissions Overview • Public Policy Positions

WATER

Water strategy

Definition/Description	Includes growing recognition of water as a key sustainability issue, including water scarcity and risks, need for water risk assessments, and understanding of linkages between water and carbon.
Comments	New material issue this year, reflecting higher profile of this issue for Ford and stakeholders.
Trend (from previous analysis)	NEW
More information	• Water • Perspectives on Sustainability: Monica Ellis • Water Use

FORD FINANCIAL HEALTH

Product competitiveness

Definition/Description	Ford's strategy related to products and sales, including product mix, market share, and meeting customer demands, including for more fuel-efficient products.
Comments	A top concern for Ford and stakeholders. Reorganized and renamed since last materiality analysis.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level
More information	• Product Competitiveness • Delivering New Products

Risk and cost management

Definition/Description	Broad concerns about Ford's financial performance, with a focus on costs and cost-related risks.
Comments	A top concern for Ford and stakeholders. Reorganized slightly and renamed since last materiality analysis. Includes health care legacy costs, labor costs, energy security and

	access to capital, formerly top-right issues on their own in the previous analysis.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level, though some of the specific issues have shifted up or down in importance.
More information	• Sustaining Ford • Economy • Health as a Strategic Advantage • Public Policy • Restructuring Our Business • Financing Our Plan and Improving Our Balance Sheet

FORD FUTURE COMPETITIVENESS

Sustainable mobility

Definition/Description	Ford's approach to increasing challenges of urban mobility, congestion, urbanization and mega-cities, as well as rural mobility and economic opportunity.
Comments	Reorganized – formerly under a stand-alone mobility category; now an element of Ford's future competitiveness strategy.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level
More information	• Mobility Solutions

VEHICLE SAFETY

Vehicle safety

Definition/Description	Active and passive safety; pedestrian safety; customer interest in and demand for safe vehicles; increasing regulation generally with focus on active safety; challenge of evolving in-vehicle technology.
Comments	Developed and emerging market issues differ.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Ford increasingly emphasizing market opportunity for safer products
More information	• Vehicle Safety • Public Policy Positions: Vehicle Safety • Perspectives on Sustainability: Scott Belcher

SUPPLY CHAIN SUSTAINABILITY

Supplier relationships

Definition/Description	Includes importance of Ford's financial variability to suppliers and vice versa, and importance of strong relationships as well as established policies and performance commitments.
Comments	Increased importance in this analysis, especially to Ford and suppliers.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Increased in importance to Ford and stakeholders
More information	• Supplier Relationships

Supply chain environmental sustainability

Definition/Description	Includes need to address carbon and water issues in supply chain relationships.
Comments	Largely a new issue from last analysis, reorganized and of higher importance to Ford and stakeholders.
Trend (from previous analysis)	NEW
More information	• Supply Chain Environmental Sustainability • Environmental Management: Suppliers

Sustainable raw materials

Definition/Description	Includes issues around conflict minerals, rare earth metals and other strategic materials, and overall impacts of raw material extraction on the environment, communities, geopolitics and Ford's costs.
Comments	New issue this year reflecting increased prominence of these concerns.
Trend (from previous analysis)	NEW

More information	Sustainable Raw Materials • Sustainable Materials • Product Sustainability Index

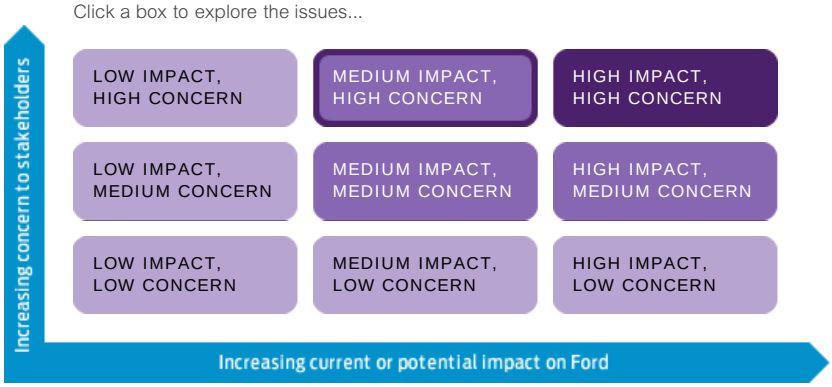
Human rights in the supply chain

Definition/Description	Issues covered by Ford's working conditions code; need for industry cooperation.
Comments	Issues have been reorganized in this analysis under umbrella of supply chain sustainability. High interest to communities, suppliers and NGOs.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Already at the highest level
More information	• Human Rights in the Supply Chain: Ford's Global Working Conditions Program • Perspectives on Sustainability: Sister Patricia Daly

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



No material issues have been identified at this level

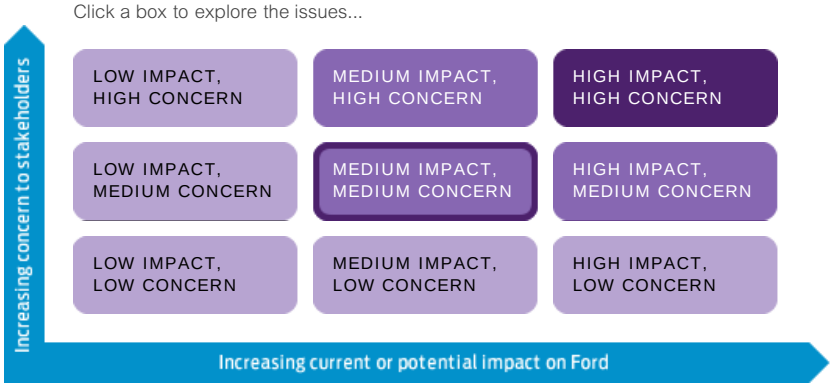
Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

Seven material issues have been identified at this level

Click on an issue below for more details

FORD FUTURE COMPETITIVENESS

Innovation management

Definition/Description	Includes R&D investment and new business models.
Comments	Of interest to investors.
Trend (from previous analysis)	NEW
More information	• Delivering New Products • Economy Data: Innovation

COMMUNITY

Community impacts and contributions

Definition/Description	Encompasses a range of direct and indirect economic impacts, including local hiring and sourcing and philanthropic donations to the community; also local environmental impacts.
Comments	High concern to communities.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Lower level of concern to stakeholders
More information	• Communities • Human Rights in the Supply Chain: Ford's Global Working Conditions Program • Sustaining Ford • Restructuring Our Business • Manufacturing • Case Study: Economic Impacts of the Auto Industry

PUBLIC POLICY

Political payments and contributions

Definition/Description	Includes need for consistent and transparent public policy positions and concerns about Company donations to candidates and campaigns; lobbying costs; employee Political Action Committee; indirect giving through trade associations, etc.
Comments	Stakeholders, including shareholders, are showing increasing interest and advocacy for "political accountability" or transparency around corporate participation in the political process and various forms of corporate political donations.

Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Public Policy • Participation in the Policy-Making Process • Policy Letters and Directives

OPERATIONS

Energy use and oil consumption operations

Definition/Description	Operations/facilities: concerns about cost and availability; energy security.
Comments	Lower level of concern to Ford reflects active and successful management towards targets.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Lower level of concern to Ford
More information	• Environment Progress and Goals • Operations • Environment: Case Studies • Environment Data: Operational Energy Use and CO_2 Emissions

Waste generation and management

Definition/Description	Includes Ford's operational waste generation, management and disposal.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Higher concern for stakeholders
More information	• Waste Management • Environment Data: Waste

Air emissions (other than GHGs)

Definition/Description	Includes VOC and ozone-depleting emissions from operations.
Comments	Lower level of concern to Ford reflects active and successful management towards targets.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Lower level of concern to Ford Higher concern for stakeholders
More information	• Non-CO_2 Tailpipe Emissions • Non-CO_2, Facilty-Related Emissions

Hazardous pollutants

Definition/Description	Hazardous substances in products, manufacturing and supply chain.
Comments	Increasing public interest.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Sustainable Materials • Non-CO_2 Tailpipe Emissions • Waste Management • Environment Data: Emissions (VOC and Other)

WORKPLACE

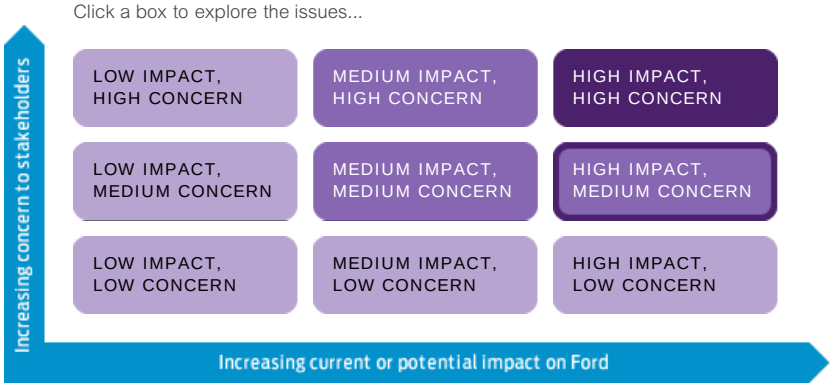
Diversity/equal opportunity

Definition/Description	Diversity of Ford Board and management; harassment programs and monitoring.
Comments	Relatively high concern to NGOs/stakeholders who see diversity as global strategic issue.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Diversity and Inclusion in the Workplace • Corporate Governance – Board of Directors • Code of Basic Working Conditions • Society Data: U.S. Employment of Minority-group Personnel and Women at Year-end • Supplier Diversity Development

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

20 material issues have been identified at this level

Click on an issue below for more details

SUSTAINABILITY VISION, GOVERNANCE AND MANAGEMENT

Sustainability vision, governance and management

Definition/Description	Includes governance structures, goals and indicators, business case, stakeholder engagement, reporting.
Comments	Governance added to vision and management, reflecting growing investor and NGO interest in integrating sustainability into business processes.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Letter from William Clay Ford, Jr. • Letter from Alan Mulally • Letter from Sue Cischke • Sustainability Governance • Sustainability Management • Climate Change Governance • Code of Basic Working Conditions • How We Manage Vehicle Safety • Environmental Management • Sustaining Ford

GOVERNANCE

Ethical business practices

Definition/Description	Concerns covered by codes of conduct, e.g., corruption and anti-competitive behavior.
Comments	Among stakeholders, of most concern to investors.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Ethical Business Practices • Corporate Governance – Board of Directors • Sustainability Governance

Human rights strategy

Definition/Description	Includes Ford's policies and practices related to human rights.
Comments	This issue has been newly categorized as a governance issue, reflecting its mainstreaming into Ford's business.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Lower level of concern to stakeholders
More information	• Human Rights in the Supply Chain: Ford's Global

	Working Conditions Program

PUBLIC POLICY

Global environmental regulation

Definition/Description	Trend toward greater regulation and the cost of compliance.
Comments	Continues to be of high importance to Ford.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Climate Change Risks and Opportunities • Climate Change Policy and Partnerships • Public Policy Positions

FORD FINANCIAL HEALTH

Alignment of products with demand

Definition/Description	Ford's realignment of production capacity to lower levels of demand and the shift from trucks and SUVs to cars; supply-base rationalization; managing downsizing.
Comments	Reduced in importance to stakeholders, still of highest concern to Ford.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Lower level of concern to stakeholders
More information	• Sustaining Ford • Delivering New Products

Manufacturing efficiency

Definition/Description	Includes reduced complexity of products, lean and flexible manufacturing, and flexible work rules.
Comments	Key element of Ford's ability to respond to changing markets; part of public discussion about aid to automakers.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Investing in Operations • Current Financial Health

Quality

Definition/Description	Product quality and customer service/customer relationship management.
Comments	Lower concern to stakeholders may reflect Ford's dramatically improved quality record.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Lower level of concern to stakeholders
More information	• Economy: Progress • Customer Satisfaction and Quality • Economy Data: Product, Quality and Service

FORD FUTURE COMPETITIVENESS

Emerging markets products and services strategy

Definition/Description	Ford's approach to emerging markets: infrastructure development; human rights as an issue in growth markets; Ford's impacts/contributions in emerging markets (other than products and services), including local sourcing, pollution, potential for partnerships.
Comments	With projected growth in the Company's Asia Pacific operations, would have increased in importance for the Company if it was not already at the highest level. Key drivers of the issue include congestion, shifting demographics, urbanization and social equity.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Lower level of concern to stakeholders
More information	• Mobility Solutions • Focus on Asia • 2010 Sales and Highlights • Case Study: Sustainable Growth in Asia

WATER

Water use

Definition/Description	Includes impacts on water sources; water management, cost of water and discharges to water.
Comments	Particular concern in areas of water scarcity; issue gaining a higher public profile.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Water • Water Use • Environment Data: Water Use

CLIMATE CHANGE

Cleaner vehicle technology

Definition/Description	Ford's development of low-carbon technologies, including hybrids, electric vehicles, clean diesel, fuel cells; also emerging technologies like nanotechnology.
Comments	Lower stakeholder interest, may reflect increased action from automakers in this area.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Lower level of concern to stakeholders
More information	• Ford's Sustainable Technologies and Alternative Fuels Plan • Vehicle • Delivering More Fuel-Efficient Vehicles • Products

OPERATIONS

Operational environmental management

Definition/Description	High-level environmental operational concerns, including environmental management, environmental compliance.
Comments	Environmental compliance a concern to communities. Increased importance to Ford reflects management focus on achieving environmental targets.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Increased in importance to Ford
More information	• Environmental Management • Operations • Greenhouse Gas Emissions Overview

GHG emissions – operations

Definition/Description	Includes cost of controlling GHG emissions.
Comments	Less of a concern than GHG emissions from vehicles, but rated high for Ford and NGOs/stakeholders.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Greenhouse Gas Emissions Overview • Environment Progress and Goals • Our Strategy: Blueprint for Sustainability • Environment Data: Operational Energy Use and CO_2 Emissions

Other operational environmental issues

Definition/Description	Includes spills, nuisances (noise), and pre- and post-production logistics.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Increased in importance to Ford and stakeholders
More information	• Operations

PRODUCT

Tailpipe emissions

Definition/Description	Air-quality impacts of vehicle emissions other than GHGs; trend toward greater regulation.
Comments	High concern to customers/NGOs/stakeholders; impact on Ford due to increased and inconsistent regulation.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Non-CO_2 Tailpipe Emissions • Environment Progress and Goals • Ford's Sustainable Technologies and Alternative Fuels

	Plan • Environment Data: Tailpipe Emissions

Environmentally preferred materials

Definition/Description	Cradle-to-cradle approach; use of renewable, recycled, recyclable materials.
Comments	Formerly “sustainable materials.”
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Sustainable Materials

Lifecycle assessment

Definition/Description	Includes the need for defensible lifecycle assessment processes.
Comments	New issue this year. Reflects growing interest in lifecycle assessment among consumers and other stakeholders, with a particular focus on GHG emissions and water.
Trend (from previous analysis)	NEW
More information	• Design for Lifecycle Sustainability • End of Life • Water • Lifecycle Vehicle CO_2 Emissions

WORKPLACE

Workplace health and safety

Definition/Description	Health and safety management systems; ergonomics.
Comments	Emerging issue is managing health and safety impacts of downsizing.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Same position
More information	• Workplace Health and Safety • Human Rights • Working Conditions in Ford Plants • Society Data: Workplace Safety

Employee morale and teamwork

Definition/Description	Includes issues of employee satisfaction, development, recruitment and retention as well as increasing employee interest in sustainability.
Comments	New sub-issues were added in this category including employee interest in working for a sustainable company and the need to engage employees in sustainability issues.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Increased in importance to stakeholders
More information	• Supporting a Great Place to Work • Fostering a Capable and Effective Workforce

Employees/labor practices/decent work

Definition/Description	Ford's employment practices, including wages, wage ratios, benefits, permanent v. temporary positions; training and education; turnover; impact of aging workforce.
Comments	High concern to communities and investors.
Trend (from previous analysis)	Increased in importance to Ford
More information	• Employees • Human Rights in the Supply Chain: Ford's Global Working Conditions Program • Restructuring Our Business

COMMUNITY ENGAGEMENT

Community engagement

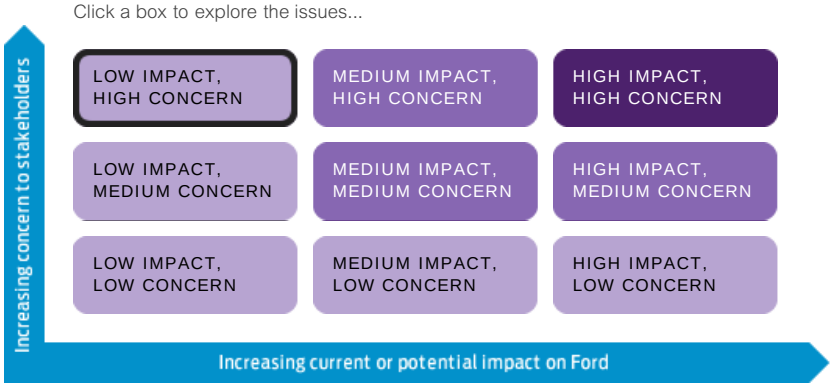
Definition/Description	License to operate, NGO relationships and specific community concerns like breast cancer, obesity, compliance.
Comments	Increasing concern to Ford, lower concern to to communities and NGOs in this analysis. However, community interest in specific issues of engagement like water increased in this analysis.

Trend (from previous analysis)	Increased in importance to Ford Lower level of concern for stakeholders
More information	• Communities

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



No material issues have been identified at this level

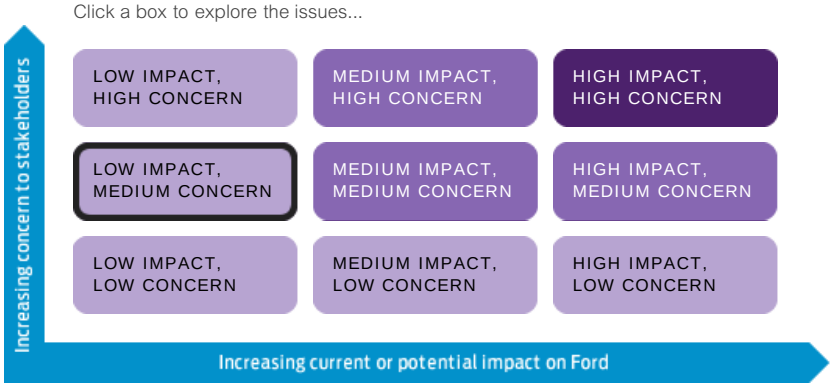
Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

Two material issues have been identified at this level

GOVERNANCE

- Shareholder concerns (resolutions)

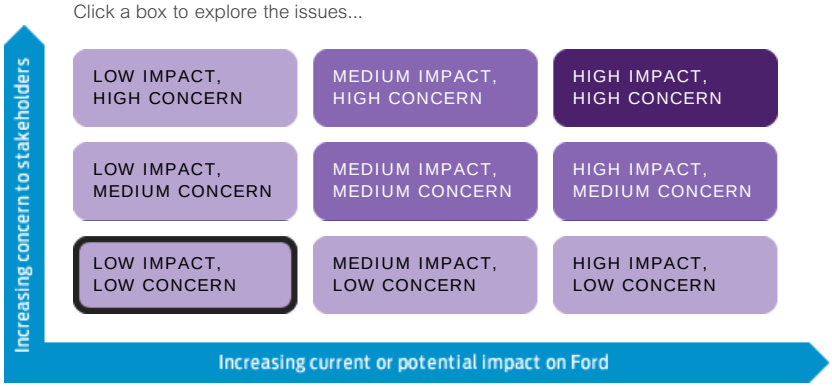
OPERATIONS

- Land and nature

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

Two material issues have been identified at this level

PUBLIC POLICY

- Health care policy

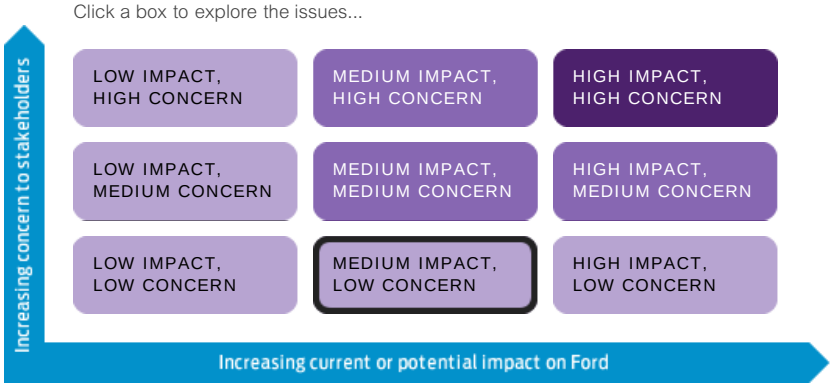
CLIMATE CHANGE

- Emissions trading/cost of carbon

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

Seven material issues have been identified at this level

FORD FINANCIAL HEALTH

- Dealer viability and competitiveness
- Supplier viability and competitiveness

PRODUCT

- Labeling
- Noise
- Customer privacy
- Marketing communications/demand creation/advertising

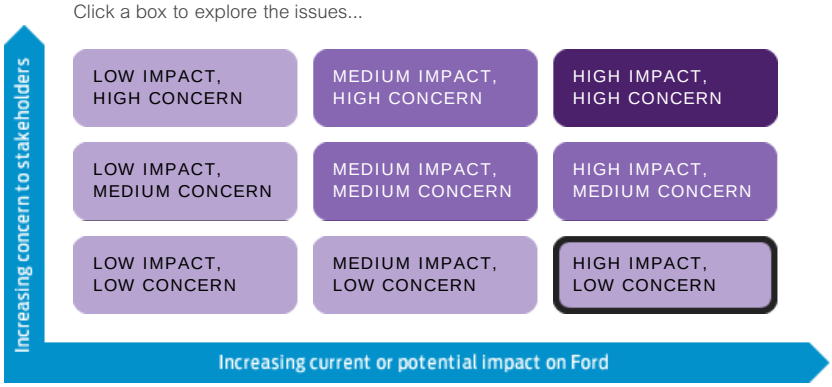
VEHICLE SAFETY

- Emerging market vehicle and road safety

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Materiality Matrix

Click a box to explore the issues...



Reporting Priorities

- Issues in this box set the agenda for our material issues section and printed summary
- Issues in these boxes set the agenda for the rest of the web report and future reporting
- Issues in these boxes are not currently covered in detail by reporting

Five material issues have been identified at this level

CLIMATE CHANGE STRATEGY

- Clean/alternative fuels
- Other climate change issues

PRODUCT

- End-of-life management
- Vehicle interior air quality
- Compliance

Climate Change

2010 HIGHLIGHTS...

- Offered four Ford vehicles that achieve 40 mpg or better
- Began producing the Transit Connect Electric, the first of five electrified vehicles
- Reduced CO_2 emissions from global operations by 5.6 percent on a per-vehicle basis since 2009
- Announced development of a solar energy system at the Michigan Assembly Plant

Ford is committed to doing our share to prevent or reduce the potential for environmental, economic and social harm due to climate change.

We have a comprehensive, science-based global strategy to reduce greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from our products and processes while working cooperatively with the public and private sectors to advance climate change solutions. We are taking a holistic approach to the issue, recognizing that it affects all parts of our business and is interconnected to other important issues, from water availability and energy security to human rights.

We believe our commitment to addressing the climate change issue in a comprehensive and strategic way is one of the factors that has helped to transform our Company's current and future products and prospects.

Our Commitment

Our climate change strategy is based on doing our share to stabilize carbon dioxide (CO_2) concentrations in the atmosphere at 450 ppm, the level generally accepted to avoid the most serious effects of climate change. Our stabilization commitment includes:

- Each new or significantly refreshed vehicle will be best in class, or among the best in class, for fuel economy
- From our global portfolio of products, we will reduce GHG emissions enough to contribute to climate stabilization – even taking into account sales growth
- We will reduce our facility CO_2 emissions by 30 percent by 2025 on a per-vehicle basis.

During 2010, we expanded the climate stabilization analysis that we had undertaken previously for the U.S. and Europe to the other regions in which we operate. This analysis defines the emission reductions needed to meet our stabilization commitment. For an in-depth look at the science behind our commitment, please see Ford's Science-Based CO_2 Targets.

Our technology migration plan – embodied in our blueprint for sustainability – maps the road we're taking to achieve our product goals.

Our Progress

We are on track to meet our commitments. We are making progress by adding advanced technology to all our products and offering high-value, attractive models that are smaller, lighter and more fuel efficient, encouraging customers to shift purchase behavior. We also continue to invest in energy-efficiency improvements at our facilities worldwide and, during 2010, explored carbon emissions in our supply chain through multi-stakeholder projects.

Among recent and upcoming actions, we:

- Reduced fleet-average CO_2 emissions from our 2010 model year U.S. and European new vehicles by 10.5 percent and 8.1 percent, respectively, compared to the 2006 model year.[1]
- Reduced CO_2 emissions from our global operations by 5.6 percent on a per-vehicle basis, compared to 2009.
- Announced three more engines with our patented EcoBoost fuel-saving technology. By 2013, we expect to be producing approximately 1.5 million EcoBoost engines globally, about 200,000 more than originally expected.

Perspectives on Sustainability

Mark Fulton and Bruce Kahn

Global Head of Investment Research and Senior Investment Analyst for Climate Change, DB Climate Change Advisors

READ MORE

Perspectives on Sustainability

Gerhard Schmidt

Chief Technical Officer, Vice President of Research and Advanced Engineering (Emeritus), Ford Motor Company

READ MORE

- Offered four models in North America that provide 40 miles per gallon or better – compared to 2009, when our most fuel-efficient vehicle achieved 35 miles per gallon.
- Offered 18 models in Europe that achieve a CO_2 emission level of 130 grams per kilometer, and two that achieve less than 100 grams per kilometer.
- Announced the development of a solar energy system – one of the largest in Michigan – that will help power the production of fuel-efficient small cars, including the Focus Electric, at our Michigan Assembly Plant.

Our Policies

Ford cannot achieve climate stabilization alone. Reducing emissions by the amount required calls for an integrated approach – a partnership of all stakeholders, including the automotive industry, the fuel industry, government and consumers. It can only be achieved by significantly and continuously reducing GHG emissions over a period of decades in all sectors of the economy. In the transportation sector, this means improving vehicle fuel economy, developing lower-carbon fuels and providing price signals to encourage consumers to purchase more fuel-efficient vehicles.

If there is a mismatch between available fuels, vehicles and consumers, climate stabilization goals will not be met. Accordingly, we are committed to advocating for effective and appropriate climate change policy. We are promoting comprehensive market-based policy approaches that will provide a coherent framework for GHG emission reductions, so that companies like ours can move forward in transforming their businesses with a clear understanding of our obligations.

In This Section

In this section of our Sustainability Report we provide an overview of GHG emissions, including data on the contribution of light-duty vehicles, lifecycle CO_2 emissions from a typical vehicle and Ford's own climate "footprint." We also discuss the risks and opportunities the climate change issue poses for Ford, our climate change strategy – including our blueprint for sustainability – and how we are addressing climate change public policy issues. An electrification case study explores how we are bringing electrified vehicles to market.

---

1. Please see Sue Cischke's letter for a discussion of our CO_2-reduction goal for North America and Europe.

Toolbox

Print report

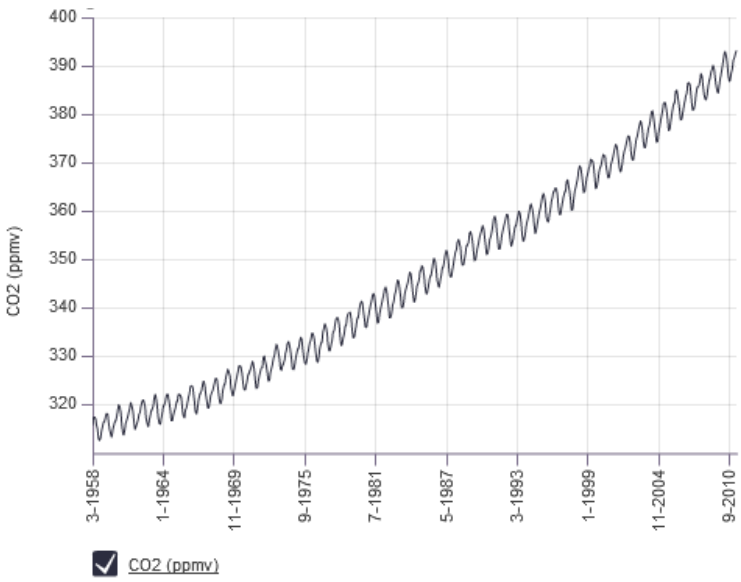
Download files

Greenhouse Gas Emissions Overview

Climate change is the result of an increase in heat-trapping (greenhouse) gases in the atmosphere. Carbon dioxide (CO_2) is the major long-lived greenhouse gas (GHG). The burning of fossil fuels (to provide electricity, heat and transportation, and to support industry and agriculture), as well as deforestation, leads to emissions of CO_2 and increased levels of atmospheric CO_2. The atmospheric concentration of CO_2 has increased from a preindustrial level of 270–280 parts per million (ppm) to a level of approximately 390 ppm in 2010 (see Figure 1).

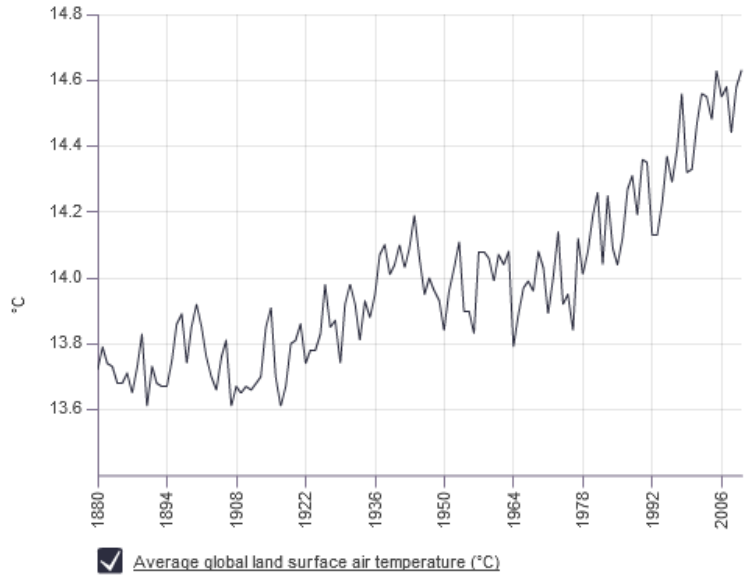
Global temperature records have been reported independently by scientists at the National Aeronautics and Space Administration (NASA) in the U.S., the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration in the U.S., the Climate Research Unit at the University of East Anglia in the U.K. and the Japanese Meteorological Agency. The records from these four independent groups are in good agreement and show a distinct warming trend over the past century. The past decade was the warmest decade in the instrumental temperature record. As shown in Figure 2, the warming trend is continuing, and 2010 was one of the warmest years on record. Independent measurements of rising sea level, increasing acidification of the oceans, loss of Arctic sea-ice, and the retreat of glaciers around the world are consistent with the impact of rising GHG concentrations and global temperature.

Figure 1: CO_2 concentration measured at the observatory in Mauna Loa, Hawaii



Data source: NOAA (2011)

Figure 2: Global temperature



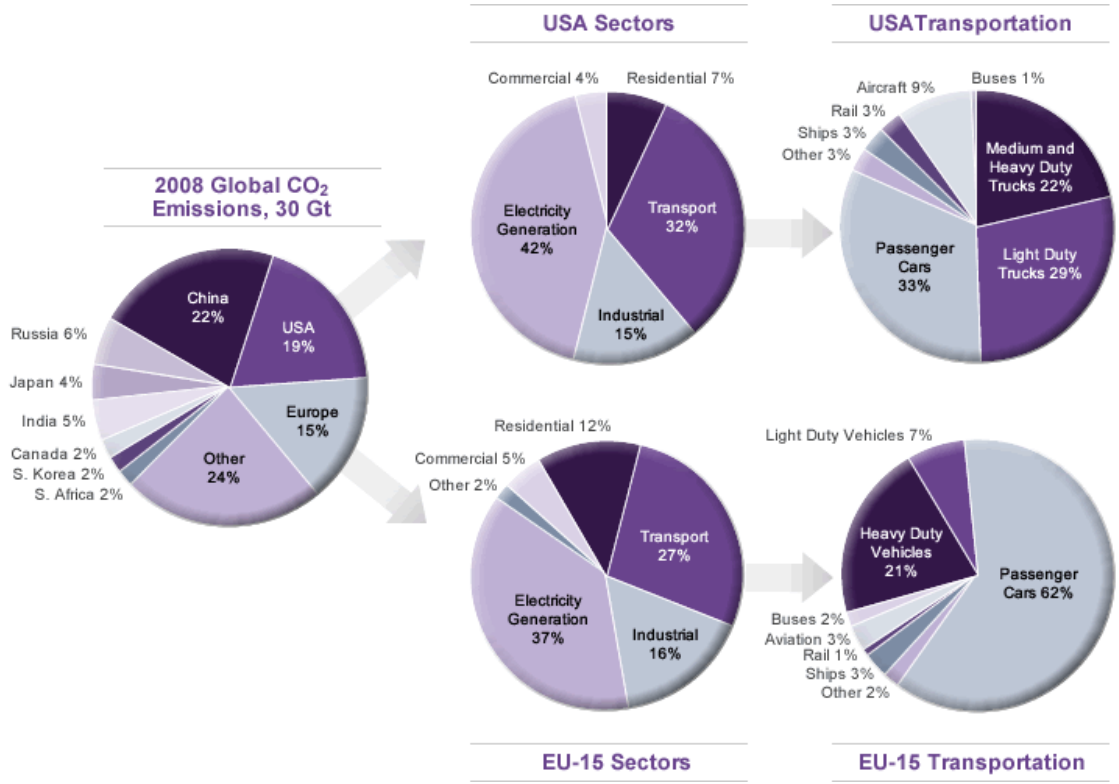
Data source: NASA (2011)

Global Emissions

Figure 3 (below) provides a breakdown of estimated 2008 fossil fuel CO_2 emissions by region. For the U.S. and Europe, the emissions are further broken down by sector and by mode in the transportation sector. The data were taken from reports published by the International Energy Agency, the European Environment Agency and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Globally, emissions from cars and light-duty trucks comprise about 11 percent of all fossil fuel CO_2 emissions. In the U.S., cars and light-duty trucks account for approximately 20 percent of fossil fuel CO_2 emissions, or approximately 4 percent of global fossil fuel CO_2 emissions. In Europe, passenger cars and light-duty trucks account for approximately 19 percent of fossil fuel CO_2 emissions, or about 3 percent of global fossil fuel CO_2 emissions.

Until recently, the U.S. was the largest CO_2 emitter. In 2007, however, emissions from China surpassed those from the U.S. It is expected that the gap between emissions from China and the U.S. will continue to widen in the future, although per-capita emissions of CO_2 in the U.S. are expected to remain higher (currently by approximately a factor of four) than those in China.

Figure 3: Regional distribution of fossil fuel CO_2 emissions in 2008



The top pie charts show a breakdown of U.S. emissions into end-use sectors and a breakdown of emissions from the U.S. transportation sector into different transportation modes. The bottom pie charts show comparable data from the EU.

Lifecycle Vehicle Emissions

The GHG emissions associated with Ford's activities include emissions from our facilities, from the transportation of our products and people, from the vehicles we produce once they are in use by customers and from our suppliers. In this report, we provide data on CO_2 emissions from our facilities and our U.S. and European new products. Additional information on our GHG footprint is found in the Lifecycle Vehicle CO_2 Emissions section.

For conventional gasoline- or diesel-powered vehicles, most of the lifecycle CO_2 emissions are released when the vehicles are driven, rather than when they are manufactured, maintained or recycled at end of life. As vehicle fuel efficiency improves and lower-carbon fuels are made available, we expect that the relative contribution of CO_2 emissions from the fuel-consumption phase will decrease (see Lifecycle Vehicle CO_2 Emissions). For Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs), Battery Electric Vehicles (BEVs) and hydrogen-powered Fuel Cell Vehicles (FCVs), most of the lifecycle CO_2 emissions are released during the production of the electricity or hydrogen that provides the energy for the vehicle. A systems perspective is required when considering the CO_2 emissions and energy use associated with light-duty vehicle technologies. Considering either the vehicle technology or the fuel technology in isolation is not sufficient. BEVs and FCVs are capable of achieving very low CO_2 emissions, but only when powered by low-CO_2 electricity or hydrogen. The use of energy-efficient vehicles such as BEVs or FCVs does not in itself lead to a reduction in CO_2 emissions; those vehicles need to be combined with low-CO_2 fuels to achieve low total CO_2 emissions.

The estimation of lifecycle CO_2 emissions associated with myriad possible future vehicle-fuel combinations is a complex task. Scientists at Ford are working to develop a detailed understanding of the lifecycle impacts of the different technologies. We anticipate this will be an ongoing effort and that we will discuss the results in future Sustainability Reports.

Snapshot of Greenhouse Gas Emissions from Ford Facilities and Ford-Produced Vehicles

During 2010, we updated our estimate of global GHG emissions from our facilities and Ford vehicles, using data from 2008, the most recently available. The estimate is shown in Figure 1, along with the estimates carried out in 2001 and 2006/7 for the years 1999 and 2005, respectively.

We estimate that our total CO_2 emissions are in the range of 350–400 million metric tonnes (Mmt) per year, varying over time with fluctuations in vehicle production and sales, on-road fleet size and vehicle miles traveled. The estimate includes emissions from our facilities, emissions from current year vehicles and emissions from all Ford vehicles on the road. Please note that while we can exercise a significant degree of ongoing control over our facility emissions, we have essentially no control over the emissions of vehicles once they are produced and on the road.

Our assessment of the emissions from Ford's facilities and Ford-made vehicles on the road decreased between 2005 and 2008 from approximately 400 to 350 million metric tonnes of CO_2, primarily due to better data availability for a key parameter.[1] Normalizing for the change in the key parameter, the emissions remained relatively stable at approximately 350 Mmt.

Outside the scope of this estimate, we are also in the process of understanding the GHG emissions from our key suppliers' facilities, as described in the Supply Chain section.

Figure 1. Estimate of CO_2 emissions from our facilities and Ford vehicles on the road in 2008, 2005 and 1999.

Chart | Table

Million metric tons CO_2 (approx.)

	1999	2005	2008
Facilities	9	8	5
New vehicles, World	35	37	29
Vehicles on the road, World	338	370	308
Total	**383**	**415**	**342**

New vehicles are those sold in the year of interest; vehicles on the road are those sold prior to the year of interest.

In detail, the updated 2010 snapshot of estimated CO_2[2] emissions shows that between 2005 and 2008:

- Emissions from our facilities improved by approximately 38 percent during this period. This reflects an approximately 16 percent improvement in the amount of CO_2 emitted per vehicle produced (i.e., our energy-efficiency index improved globally by about 16 percent from 2005 to 2008). It also reflects lower overall vehicle production. These estimates are fairly precise.[3] Facility GHG emissions, however, are a small percentage (about 2 percent) of the total.
- Emissions from current-year (2008[4]) vehicles on the road decreased by about 22 percent relative to the prior year, primarily reflecting a decline in vehicle sales. We have moderate confidence in the precision of the estimate for U.S. vehicles; the estimate for the rest of the world is less precise.[5] These emissions account for about 8 percent of the total.
- Emissions from all Ford vehicles on the road are estimated to be about 308 million metric tonnes of CO_2 per year, lower than in our previous analyses, primarily due to better data availability for a key parameter. This estimate, which accounts for about 90 percent of the total,

Related Links

This Report:

- Delivering More Fuel-Efficient Vehicles
- Supply Chain Greenhouse Gas Emissions

remains highly uncertain.[6]

1. Our estimate for the CO_2 emissions for the greater-than-one-year-old on-road fleet decreased from 370 to 308 Mmt between 2005 and 2008. This decrease primarily reflects better data availability for a key value in the calculation (the global Light Duty Vehicle fraction of road transportation petroleum use, which we now assume to be 0.6 as opposed to 0.7 in our previous analyses). Using the old data value of 0.7 for the 2008 global CO_2 estimate would increase the 308 Mmt value to 359 Mmt. Such changes in our assessment reflect the difficulties in assessing precisely the emissions from the global fleet of Ford vehicles.
2. CO_2 emissions account for substantially all of the GHG emissions from our facilities and vehicles.
3. This is calculated consistent with the World Resources Institute/World Business Council for Sustainable Development Greenhouse Gas Protocol; it includes direct (Scope 1) and indirect (Scope 2) emissions.
4. 2008 is the most recent year for which complete data is available.
5. Calculated using Ford U.S. Corporate Average Fuel Economy and global market share figures. This estimate is subject to considerable uncertainty as it incorporates multiple assumptions about how consumers use their vehicles (e.g. miles traveled overall and urban-highway breakdown) and about fuel economy values in markets outside of the U.S.
6. This is calculated based on our market share and a sector-based approach to determine the fractional contribution of LDVs to global total CO_2 emissions. This estimate is subject to considerable uncertainty, as it is based on multiple assumptions, including that all automakers' fleets have the same fuel economy and vehicle life span.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Supply Chain

We are currently evaluating climate change risks and opportunities across our supply chain and expanding our approach to enhance supplier environmental performance beyond more established supplier environmental performance expectations, such as robust environmental management systems (ISO 14001 certification) and responsible materials management. (See the Greenhouse Gas Emissions section for details of our participation in initial efforts to assess greenhouse gas emissions in our supply chain.)

Within the Aligned Business Framework agreement with our strategic suppliers, environmental leadership is integral to overall business performance metrics. Climate-change-related activities are highlighted as potential leadership opportunities. In addition, our requirement that suppliers implement robust environmental management systems will better enable them to understand, measure and report their emissions. We will also seek out opportunities to partner with suppliers to improve the greenhouse gas emissions performance of our products and processes, and improve energy efficiency throughout the vehicle lifecycle, including in the supply chain.

Related Links

This Report:

- Supply Chain Greenhouse Gas Emissions

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Beyond CO_2

We have a holistic view of climate change and have addressed non-carbon-dioxide (CO_2) long-term greenhouse gases such as hydrofluorocarbons (HFCs), perfluorocarbons (PFCs), nitrous oxide (N_2O) and sulfur hexafluoride (SF_6). Through our Restricted Substance Management Standard we have prohibited SF_6 in tires in magnesium casting and PFCs in open systems. We are continuing our scientific research to determine the relative contribution of a wide range of long-lived greenhouse gases to radiative forcing of climate change.

In 2010, we worked with an international team of climate and atmospheric scientists under the auspices of the World Meteorological Organization to assess the global warming potentials of long-lived greenhouse gases. Given the impressive reductions in the emission of criteria pollutants (hydrocarbons, NOx, particulate matter and carbon monoxide) enabled by improvements in engine and exhaust after-treatment technology, we believe that the contribution to climate change by these short-lived pollutants from light-duty vehicles will be of relatively minor importance in the future.[1] We have presented a technical assessment arguing that time horizons of 20 years, or longer, are needed in assessments of the contribution of road transport to radiative forcing of climate change.[2]

While carbon dioxide is by far the most important greenhouse gas associated with the use of motor vehicles, small amounts of other greenhouse gases are also emitted, notably methane (CH_4), N_2O and hydrofluorocarbon-134a (HFC-134a). Methane is formed in the engine and emitted into the atmosphere. We have assessed the contribution to climate change made by methane emissions from vehicles as about 0.3 to 0.4 percent of that of the CO_2 emissions from vehicles. We have assessed the contribution to climate change from N_2O emissions from vehicle tailpipes (not including potential emissions associated with fuel production) as about 1 to 3 percent of that of the tailpipe CO_2 emissions from vehicles. Finally, we have estimated that the radiative forcing contribution of HFC-134a leakage from an air-conditioner-equipped vehicle is approximately 3 to 5 percent of that of the CO_2 emitted by the vehicle.[3] When expressed in terms of "CO_2 equivalents," the contribution of vehicle emissions to radiative forcing of climate change is dominated by emissions of CO_2.

CFCs, HFCs, HFOs and the Montreal Protocol

The Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer (1987) regulates the emissions of ozone-depleting substances such as chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs). Ford has been a leader in conducting research on CFC replacements. In 2010 we were awarded a U.S. Environmental Protection Agency Montreal Protocol Award in recognition of our work in this area. In the 1980s and early 1990s all vehicle manufacturers used CFC-12 (CF2Cl2) as the refrigerant in air conditioning (AC) units. By the mid-1990s vehicle manufacturers switched to hydrofluorocarbon-134a (also known as HFC-134a or CF3CFH2). Hydrofluorocarbons contain only hydrogen, fluorine and carbon. Hydrofluorocarbons do not contain chlorine and hence do not contribute to the well-established chlorine-based stratospheric ozone depletion chemistry. HFC-134a has a shorter atmospheric lifetime and smaller global warming potential than CFC-12 (see Table 1).

The lifecycle emissions of CFC-12 from AC-equipped vehicles in 1990 was approximately 400 g per vehicle per year.[4] We estimate that lifecycle emissions of HFC-134a from vehicles manufactured in 2010 are approximately 100 g per vehicle per year.[5] Looking to the future, based on published assessments,[6] we believe that HFC-134a emissions from a typical light-duty vehicle manufactured in 2017 will be approximately 50 g per vehicle per year.

Regulations in the EU require us to use compounds with global warming potentials of 150 or less in the AC units of all new vehicles starting in 2011 and all registered vehicles starting in 2017. HFC-134a has a global warming potential of 1,370,[7] and the automotive industry will not be able to use this compound in the future in new vehicles in the EU. Hydrofluoroolefins (HFOs) are a class of compounds that are safe for the ozone layer and have very small global warming potential (typically <10). Based upon engineering, environmental and safety assessments, Ford has chosen the compound known as HFO-1234yf (also known as HFC-1234yf or CF3CF=CH2) for use in our European vehicles subject to the above-mentioned legislation timing. Research at Ford[8] has established that HFO-1234yf has a global warming potential of 4.

To place the emissions of CFC-12, HFC-134a and HFO-1234yf into perspective, we can compare their contribution to radiative forcing of climate change with that of CO_2 emitted by the tailpipe of the vehicle. Figure 1 shows this comparison for a typical car in the U.S. from 1990, 2010 and 2016. The CO_2 equivalent (CO_2eq) contributions from refrigerants in Figure 1 were calculated assuming a CFC-12 AC system in 1990, an HFC-134a system in 2010 and either an HFC-134a or an HFO-1234yf system in 2016. The CO_2eq values for CFC-12, HFC-134a and HFO-1234yf were calculated using the emission estimates given above and the global warming potentials given in Table 1. The tailpipe CO_2 values were calculated using the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration requirement fuel economies of 27.5 mpg in 1990 and 2010 and 37.8 mpg in 2016

Related Links

External Websites:

- Montreal Protocol

and assuming the car is driven 10,000 miles per year.

As seen in Figure 1, the emissions of CFC-12 from an AC-equipped car in 1990 had a climate impact that was actually greater than that of the CO_2 emitted from the tailpipe of the car. Replacement of CFC-12 with HFC-134a, together with improvements in the AC system, has led to a dramatic (approximately 30-fold) decrease in the climate impact of refrigerant emissions per vehicle for an AC-equipped vehicle (compare the two left-hand columns in Figure 1). Looking to the future, we anticipate a further – approximately factor of two – decrease in the impact of HFC-134a emissions on a per-vehicle basis (see the third column in Figure 1). Replacing HFC-134a with HFO-1234yf leads to a further decrease in the climate impact, and the AC refrigerant impact ceases to be discernible in the right-hand column in the figure.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency has proposed that HFCs such as HFC-134a should be added to, and regulated as part of, the Montreal Protocol. We do not support the inclusion of HFCs within the Montreal Protocol based upon three well-established scientific facts:

First, HFCs do not contribute to the depletion of stratospheric ozone. HFCs should therefore not be included in the *Montreal Protocol on Substances that Deplete the Ozone Layer*.

Second, as seen in Figure 1, replacing CFC-12 by HFC-134a has been a major step forward in environmental protection. Retaining the option to use HFC-134a in the future increases our ability to deliver cost-effective solutions for our customers.

Third, emissions of CO_2, CH_4 and N_2O, not HFCs, are the main driver of climate change. (HFCs are currently responsible for less than 1 percent of the radiative forcing by long-lived GHGs.13) Regulations focused on less than 1 percent of the problem are not very useful. We need to adopt a lifecycle perspective and focus on the most cost-effective options. More study, including an assessment of cost effectiveness, is required before enacting blanket restrictions on HFCs.

Figure 1: Annual in-use greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from typical AC-equipped cars in the U.S. in 1990, 2010 and 2016 using either CFC-12 (in 1990, left-hand bar), HFC-134a (2010 and 2016, middle bars), or HFO-1234yf (right-hand bar) refrigerants.

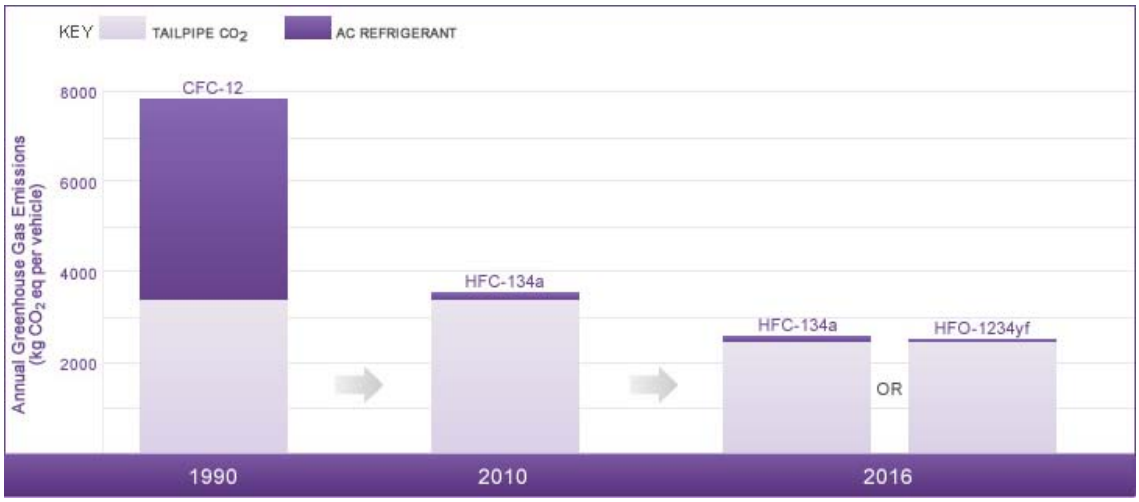


Table 1: Comparison of CFC-12, HFC-134a and HFO-1234yf

Compound	Chemical Formula	Safe for Ozone?	Atmospheric Lifetime[9]	Global Warming Potential[9]
CFC-12	CF_2Cl_2	No	100 years	10,900
HFC-134a	CF_3CFH_2	Yes	13.4 years	1,370
HFO-1234yf	$CF_3CF{=}CH_2$	Yes	11 days	4

1. T.J. Wallington, J.E. Anderson, S.A. Mueller, S. Winkler and J.M. Ginder, "Emissions Omissions," *Science* 327, 268, (2010).
2. T.J. Wallington, J.E. Anderson, S.A. Mueller, S. Winkler, J.M. Ginder and O.J. Nielsen, "Time Horizons for Transport Climate Impact Assessments", *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 45, 3169 (2011).
3. T.J. Wallington, J.L. Sullivan and M.D. Hurley, "Emissions of CO_2, CO, NOx, HC, PM, HFC-134a, N_2O and CH_4 from the Global Light Duty Vehicle Fleet," *Meteorol.* Z. 17, 109 (2008).
4. IPCC/TEAP, *Special Report: Safeguarding the Ozone Layer and the Climate System*, Cambridge University Press, 2005.
5. T.J. Wallington, J.L. Sullivan and M.D. Hurley, "Emissions of CO_2, CO, NOx, HC, PM, HFC-134a, N_2O and CH_4 from the Global Light Duty Vehicle Fleet," *Meteorol.* Z. 17, 109 (2008).
6. S. Papasavva, D.J. Luecken, R.L. Waterland, K.N. Taddonio and S.O. Andersen, "Estimated 2017 Refrigerant Emissions of 2,3,3,3-tetrafluoropropene (HFC-1234yf) in the United States Resulting from Automobile Air Conditioning," *Environ. Sci. Technol.* 43, 9252, 2009.

7. World Meteorological Organization, ***Scientific Assessment of Ozone Depletion: 2010***, Geneva, 2010.
8. O.J. Nielsen, M.S. Javadi, M.P. Sulbaek Andersen, M.D. Hurley, T.J. Wallington and R. Singh, "Atmospheric Chemistry of CF3CF=CH2: Kinetics and Mechanisms of Gas-Phase Reactions with Cl Atoms, OH radicals, and O_3", ***Chem. Phys. Lett.*** 439, 18 (2007).
9. Data source: WMO/UNEP, Scientific Assessment of Ozone Depletion: 2010, Geneva, 2010.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Lifecycle Vehicle CO_2 Emissions

Lifecycle assessment tracks emissions generated and materials consumed for a product system over its entire lifecycle, from cradle to grave, including material production, product manufacture, product use, product maintenance and disposal at end of life. For vehicles, this includes the environmental burdens associated with making materials (e.g., steel, aluminum, brass, copper, plastics, etc.), fabricating them into parts, assembling the parts into a vehicle, operating the vehicle over its entire lifetime, producing fuel for the vehicle, maintaining the vehicle and finally disposing of the vehicle at the end of its life. Lifecycle assessment is an essential tool when thinking about the environmental impacts of complex systems.

In our report last year, we presented the results of a lifecycle analysis for a representative midsize car and SUV in the U.S. We have used our Product Sustainability Index method to report the lifecycle carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions from the Ford Galaxy, S-MAX and Fiesta vehicles sold in Europe. Full reports on these vehicles are available online. At present, lifecycle CO_2 emissions from vehicles are dominated by CO_2 released during fuel consumption. Product disposal has a minor impact on airborne emissions and energy consumption relative to other phases of the product system. As vehicle fuel efficiency improves and lower-carbon fuels are made available, the relative contributions of CO_2 emissions from the fuel-consumption phase will likely decrease. We are working on lifecycle emission estimates for electrified vehicles (i.e., plug-in hybrids and Battery Electric Vehicles) and expect to describe the results in future reports.

Related Links

This Report:

- Quantifying Our Environmental Impacts

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Climate Change Risks and Opportunities

Over the past decade, concerns about climate change, the price of fuel and energy security – along with the global recession – have dramatically changed the automotive business. This creates substantial risks for automakers but also opportunities for innovation that enable growth and expansion. Below we discuss the general trends driving change in our markets and take a closer look at several key markets. We also discuss the physical and supply chain risks to our business posed by climate change.

Our Markets

There is little doubt that the climate change issue has fundamentally reshaped automotive markets around the world. The policy landscape is becoming more complex and interconnected with other market forces. The Climate Change Policy and Partnerships section of this report discusses regulatory developments in detail, but in brief, all of our major markets are increasingly shaped by government actions to regulate fuel economy and carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions, introduce low-carbon fuels and provide incentives to shift consumer and business behavior. Many governments are also actively involved in promoting research, development and purchase of new vehicle and battery technologies.

Concerns about fuel prices and price volatility continue to drive a long-term trend toward consumer interest in smaller and more fuel-efficient vehicles. In many markets, energy security concerns are also a driver of fuel economy regulation and alternative fuel development, as governments and consumers seek to rely as much as possible on domestic sources of transportation fuel and reduce imports of petroleum products.

Investors are showing greater concern about climate change as a material risk for many companies. A variety of voluntary public registries and information services (such as the Carbon Disclosure Project) are providing information on greenhouse gas emissions to investors, while in some countries companies are required to disclose information about their climate risks. Thus, providing climate-change-relevant information to investors and shaping our business strategy with climate change in mind are important elements of maintaining access to capital.

These market shifts are very significant to our Company. Everywhere we operate, the financial health of our Company depends on our ability to predict market shifts of all kinds and to be ready with the products and services our customers demand.

Our product globalization strategy is designed to help us respond to changing markets and regional preferences and the risks and opportunities presented by the climate change issue. We have created global platforms that offer superior fuel economy, safety, quality and customer features. We then tailor each global platform to national or regional preferences and requirements. Our pledge that all our vehicles will offer the best or among the best fuel economy in their segment, coupled with a technology migration plan that is based on the science of climate change, positions us to keep pace or get ahead of regulatory requirements. New technology is also cutting the time required to bring new vehicles to market, which helps us respond more effectively to the ever-increasing pace of change in our markets.

This approach has helped us take advantage of the market demand for more fuel-efficient vehicles and gain market share. However, the possibility that fuel prices could decline means there is also a risk that consumer preferences will shift back toward less fuel-efficient vehicles.

Please see the Economy section for further discussion of our changing markets and how we are responding to them, and the Our Strategy: Blueprint for Sustainability section for discussion of Ford's strategic response to the risks and opportunities posed by the climate change issue.

Regional Market Trends

North America

New regulations (discussed in the Climate Change Policy and Partnerships section) and concerns about fuel prices, energy security and the impacts of climate change are encouraging the sale of more fuel-efficient vehicles. Between 2005 and 2010, the car share of the U.S. market increased from 47.2 percent to 49.6 percent, while the truck share declined from 52.8 percent to 50.4 percent. Sales of small cars increased from 19 percent to 21.9 percent of all sales. Sales of hybrid electric vehicles declined in 2010 but began to rise again in early 2011 as the cost of fuel rose significantly.

Europe

Related Links

This Report:

- Climate Change Policy and Partnerships

In Europe, the long-term trend of high-priced fuel and increasing fuel efficiency has continued the market shift toward diesel-powered vehicles, which now make up more than half of all new vehicle sales. This trend is reinforced by sales incentives in some European countries designed to encourage new vehicle sales, with the aim of reducing carbon dioxide emissions from older, less-efficient vehicles. Some of these incentives are bound to upper limits of CO_2 emissions of 160 g/km and less, which has boosted sales of small cars. Other schemes are linked to regulatory emissions standards (e.g., Euro 4 and Euro 5). In addition, tough new CO_2 emission regulations have come into effect, which will continue to drive fuel-economy improvements in new automobiles. Automakers, including Ford, have begun to introduce and announce plans for hybrid electric, battery electric and plug-in hybrid electric vehicles for the European market.

Asia

The Chinese government is actively promoting vehicle electrification and supporting research in this area, based on its desire to support growth and development, balanced with the need for energy security and a cleaner environment. The Chinese government currently provides limited incentives to fleet purchasers of “new energy vehicles” (predominately plug-in electric) under local government control through a pilot program in 20 cities that applies to vehicles made by Chinese automakers. Both domestic and global automakers are considering the introduction of electric vehicles, and a range of micro, medium and full hybrids are currently available.

South America

In Brazil, our largest market in South America, the use of biofuels is widespread as a result of national policy and consumer preference. All gasoline in Brazil is blended with 20 to 25 percent ethanol, and pure ethanol is also widely used. Most new vehicles offered are flexible fuel. While fuel economy and CO_2 emissions are not currently regulated in Brazil, a voluntary fuel-economy labeling program is already in place, along with a star ranking program for light vehicles that favors low-emission, low-CO_2, ethanol, flexible-fuel and hybrid vehicles. Consumers tend to choose vehicles with small engines, and 85 percent of new vehicles purchased have flexible-fuel capabilities. Several hybrid vehicles are currently offered or are planned for introduction to Brazil.

Physical Risks

Global climate change raises the potential for shifting patterns of extreme weather and other risks to our facilities. For insurance purposes, we assess the risks each of our facilities faces (with input from third-party engineers) at least annually. This risk assessment is updated based on new data and takes into account the risk of exposure to hurricanes, tornadoes, other storms, flooding and earthquakes. As a result of this process, we believe we have a good understanding of the physical risks faced by our facilities and how those risks are changing over time.

Extreme weather has the potential to disrupt the production of natural gas, a fuel necessary for the manufacture of vehicles. Supply disruptions raise market rates and jeopardize the consistency of vehicle production. To minimize the risk of production interruptions, Ford has established firm delivery contracts with natural gas suppliers and installed propane tank farms at key manufacturing facilities as a source of backup fuel. Higher utility rates have prompted Ford to revisit and implement energy-efficiency actions that previously did not meet our internal rate of return.

Climate change also has the potential to affect the availability and quality of water. We are examining this issue as part of our water strategy.

Supply Chain Risks

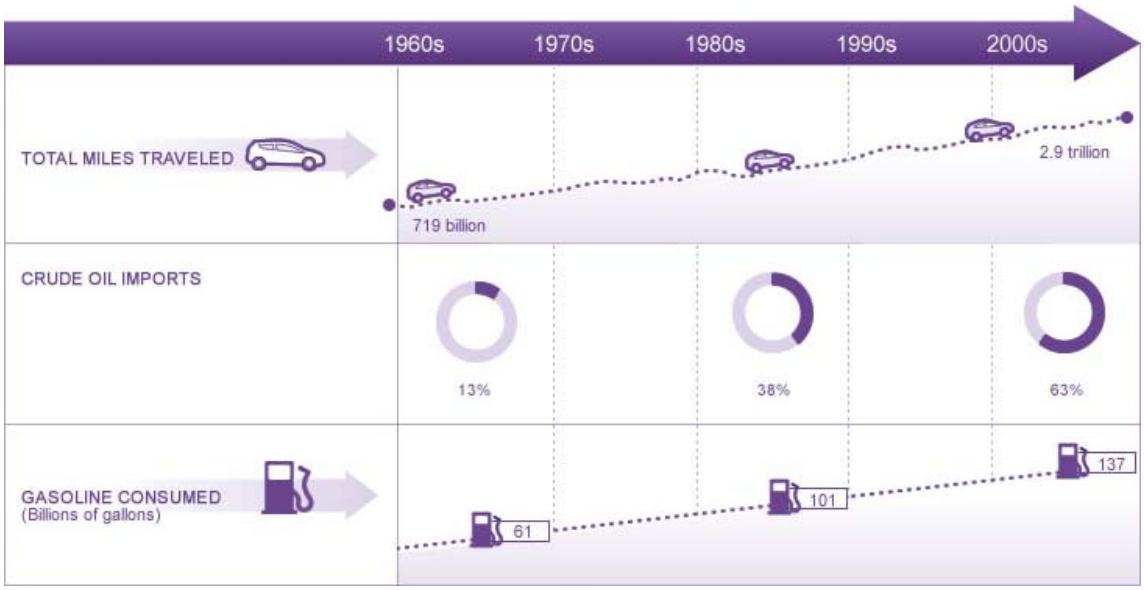
Our suppliers, which are located in more than 60 countries, are subject to market, regulatory and physical risks as a result of GHG regulation and the impacts of climate change. These risks could affect their competitiveness or ability to operate, creating the potential for disruptions to the flow of supplies to Ford. For example, suppliers may be subject to reporting requirements, fees or taxes, depending on where their operations are located. See the Supply Chain section for a discussion of actions we are taking to better understand the climate risks of our suppliers and promote a competitive supply chain.

U.S. Energy Security

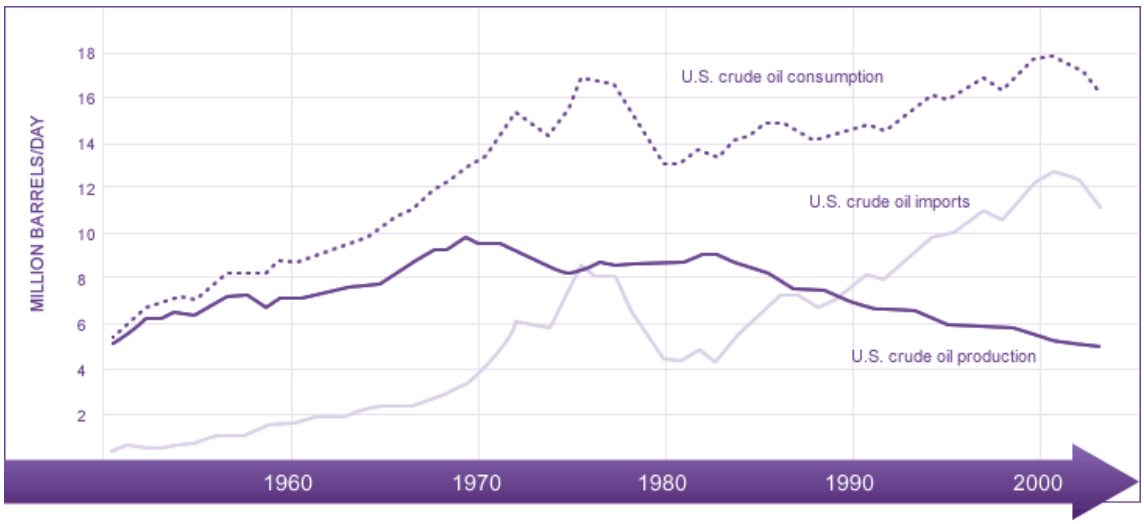
The following charts illustrate the primary issue underlying concerns about U.S. energy security – crude oil consumption is increasing, while domestic energy production is decreasing. Therefore, the U.S. is increasingly reliant on imported crude oil. The first chart shows the increase in the number of miles all U.S. drivers are traveling each year, the increasing percentage of crude oil imports and the increasing consumption of gasoline.

Since the 1970s, the fuel efficiency of new passenger cars more than doubled and fuel economy rates in trucks has increased by 53 percent. This increase is reflected in the chart below, which shows that miles traveled increased by a factor of four while gasoline consumption increased by a little over a factor of two.

The second chart shows the increase in U.S. demand for crude oil and the simultaneous decrease in U.S. crude oil production. Unlike the utility sector, which has a diverse energy portfolio, light-duty transportation is approximately 95 percent reliant on crude oil. This dominance of crude oil, coupled with the growing reliance on foreign countries for supply, is at the core of the U.S. energy security concerns. For example, during the first month after protests began in Libya, U.S. gasoline prices rose almost 15 percent, despite Libya supplying less than 2 percent of global oil and less than 0.5 percent of U.S. oil.



Crude Oil Consumption, Imports and U.S. Production



Our Strategy: Blueprint for Sustainability

To respond to the risks and opportunities posed by the climate change issue, our long-term strategy is to contribute to climate stabilization by:

- Continuously reducing the greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions and energy usage of our operations
- Developing the flexibility and capability to market lower-GHG-emission products, in line with evolving market conditions
- Working with industry partners, energy companies, consumer groups and policy makers to establish an effective and predictable market, policy and technological framework for reducing GHG emissions

Our product plans in all regions are aligned with our overall goal of contributing to climate stabilization. Our blueprint for sustainability, which spells out our technology and product strategy to meet this goal, is based on modeling of vehicle and fuel contributions to emission reductions and an analysis of market and regulatory trends (see figure below).

Product Sustainability Process

The blueprint's product strategy – called the Sustainable Technologies and Alternative Fuels Plan – details steps we are taking in the foreseeable future to develop and deploy vehicle and fuel technologies. The blueprint is supported by our sustainable mobility governance, which establishes structures and accountability for implementing the strategy.

We believe this strategy is already showing results by positioning our Company to take advantage of opportunities created by shifts in markets. We have implemented all of the near-term actions, and our commitment to outstanding fuel economy aligns well with consumer interest in fuel-sipping vehicles. During 2010, for example, our U.S. market share grew for the second year in a row, driven in part by the popularity of several of our vehicles that achieve best-in-class fuel economy.

For the longer term, we are preparing to provide regionally appropriate approaches based on global platforms to advanced vehicle technologies, including electric vehicles, biofuel vehicles and (as fuel and infrastructure become available) hydrogen fuel cell vehicles. In addition, we have conducted dialogues with stakeholders, exploring sustainable mobility projects to demonstrate mobility solutions that meet the needs of urban and rural communities by leveraging information technology to integrate private and public transportation options. Please see the Sustaining Ford section for more details.

Climate Change Governance

Because the climate change issue is so important to us at Ford, it is managed through governance systems at all levels of the Company. The Sustainability Committee of our Board of Directors regularly reviews Ford's actions related to climate change.

Substantive changes to our plans for addressing climate change – whether relating to our products, facilities or policies – are highlighted and agreed to at the highest levels of Ford's executive management through the Business Progress Review process. Related emerging issues are reviewed as needed in Special Attention Review meetings.

In addition, strategic product direction related to climate change goals is provided by a senior executive committee, made up of vice president and executive stakeholders, who guide the development of the vision, policy and business goals. (See Governance and Management Structures.)

Related executive planning teams are responsible for developing detailed and specific policy, product and technical analyses to meet objectives. These teams base their plans on scientific data and promote actions that will help achieve the Company's environmental ambitions, recognizing the need to use a holistic approach to effectively protect the environment. Metrics have been established and are reviewed regularly to ensure satisfactory progress. We have also developed strategic principles to guide our approach.

Climate Change Strategic Principles

Our approach to greenhouse gas (GHG) stabilization is aligned around the following key strategic principles:

1. Technical, economic and policy approaches to climate change need to recognize that all carbon dioxide (CO_2) molecules (or GHG equivalents) produced by human activities make the same contribution to the atmosphere's concentration of greenhouse gases. Once those molecules reach the atmosphere, they contribute to the greenhouse effect, regardless of the source. However, the cost of reducing those emissions varies significantly depending on their source, and we should attempt to achieve the most economically efficient solutions possible.
2. The transportation sector represents a closely interdependent system, characterized by the equation: "Vehicle + Fuel + Driver = GHG emissions." Each link in this chain depends on the others. For example, vehicle manufacturers can bring to market flexible-fuel vehicles, but successfully reducing GHG emissions with them will depend on fuel companies providing renewable biofuels, as well as consumer demand for the vehicles and fuels.
3. Future developments in technologies, ever-changing markets, consumer demand and political uncertainties require flexible solutions. The business strategies that Ford implements, and the public policies that we encourage, must have the flexibility to succeed in a range of potential scenarios.
4. Early affordable steps to reduce GHG emissions from our products and processes may delay the need for drastic and costly reductions later. Lack of agreement on long-term solutions cannot be used as an excuse to avoid near-term actions.

Ford's Science-Based CO_2 Targets

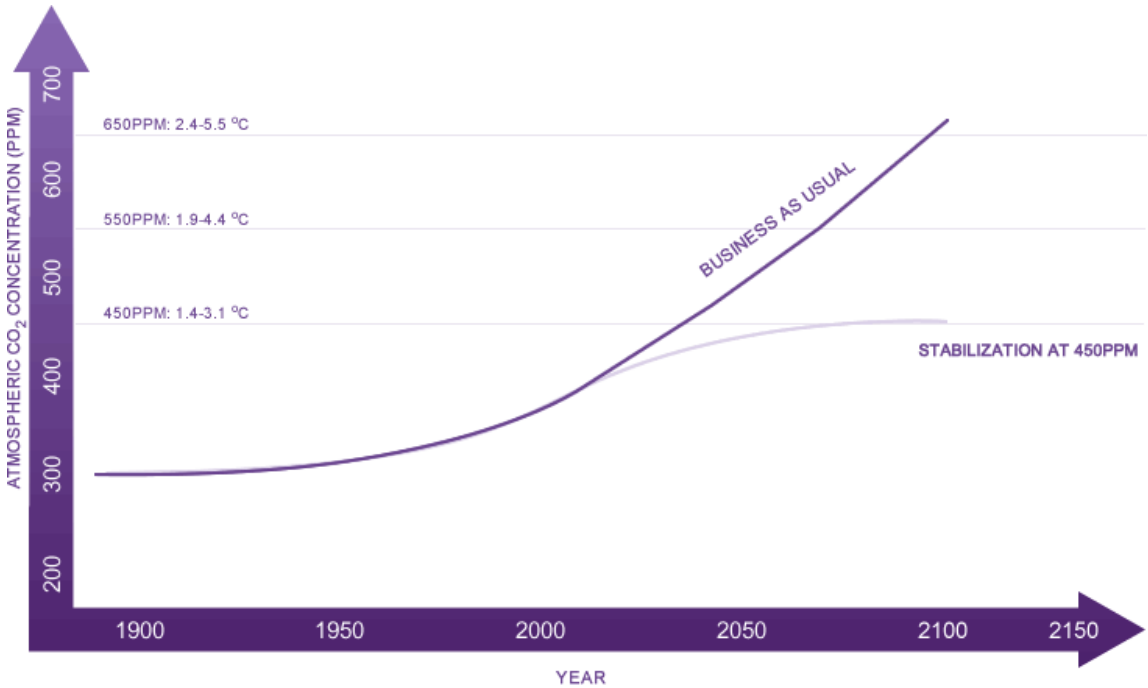
Throughout this report, we refer to Ford's climate goals as "science-based" – specifically, based on the science of climate stabilization. An advantage of this approach is that it gives us an objective, long-term goal focused on an environmental outcome – stabilization of carbon dioxide (CO_2) in the atmosphere. A disadvantage is that the goal can be difficult to explain and communicate. In this section, we delve into our science-based goal by discussing what stabilization means, how we use "glide paths" to align our product plans with emission reductions, and how our "black box" model works and how we use it in our planning.

The stabilization-based goal had its start in 2004, when Ford's internal Climate Change Task Force faced a dilemma. After an extensive study, it was clear to the cross-functional group of senior executives that several forces were converging to fundamentally change vehicle markets, especially in North America and Europe. Current and anticipated greenhouse gas and fuel economy regulation, rising fuel prices and growing consumer awareness of the climate change issue all pointed to a shift in sales toward cars rather than trucks and toward smaller and more fuel-efficient vehicles. We needed to rapidly reorient our product offerings.

But what should drive new product goals? As a practical matter, the Company needed to be able to meet new regulatory mandates. Beyond that imperative, we had taken to heart our responsibility to contribute to meeting the challenge of climate change. So, Task Force members decided to base product planning on the goal of climate stabilization, and they asked Ford's in-house scientists to devise a way to test scenarios for meeting that goal.

Our Stabilization Commitment

Ford researchers have played a leading role in scientific research to understand and quantify the contribution of vehicles to climate change. We have also worked with a variety of partners to understand current and projected manmade GHG emissions and the steps that can be taken to reduce them. Many scientists, businesses and governmental agencies have concluded that stabilizing the atmospheric concentration of CO_2 at approximately 450 parts per million (ppm) may help to forestall or substantially delay the most serious consequences of climate change (see chart below).



Ford has committed to doing our share to stabilize atmospheric CO_2 at 450 ppm. Using a science-based CO_2 model (see A Look Inside the "Black Box"), we have calculated the amount of light-duty vehicle (LDV) CO_2 emissions that are consistent with stabilizing the concentration of CO_2 in the atmosphere at this level. We then calculated the long-term, sustained reductions in the CO_2 emission rate (g/km) from new LDVs that would be needed to achieve 450 ppm atmospheric CO_2, based on projections of vehicle sales and scrappage. Plotting these emission levels over time yields the "CO_2 glide paths" that drive our technology plans.

We have calculated region-specific CO_2 glide paths for North America, Europe, Brazil and China. The glide paths take into account the effects of regional differences in vehicle size and fuel consumption, government regulations and biofuel availability. Although the initial (current) CO_2 emissions rate varies considerably by region, to provide the significant emission reductions needed, all regions need to move toward similar targets. For the light-duty vehicle sector to meet the 450 ppm CO_2 emissions limits, all automakers must reduce their LDV emissions by the same proportion as prescribed by the CO_2 glide paths. We have shared our thinking behind the development of these industry average targets with interested stakeholders and have received positive feedback. We believe that a science-based approach is the right way forward. Ford's sustainability plan is based on these science-based emissions targets. The reductions called for by the glide paths are more aggressive than our previously announced 30 percent reduction goal from 2006 to 2020.

We caution that while our product development plans are based upon delivering long-term reduction in CO_2 emissions from new vehicles similar to those shown for the industry-average glide paths, we anticipate that the year-over-year reductions will vary somewhat from the glide paths. In some years the reductions will be greater than those shown in the glide paths and in other years they will be less. That is because delivering on these targets will be dependent to some degree on market forces that we do not fully control (e.g., changes in energy prices and changes in the mix of vehicles demanded by the consumers in the markets in which we operate). Furthermore, our product strategy is based on multiple inputs, including regulatory requirements, competitive actions and technology plans.

We plan to annually review, and revise where necessary, the assumptions and input data in the CO_2 model. We anticipate that the model will evolve with better understanding over time, and we will report significant changes in future reports.

Climate change is a long-term challenge that demands long-term solutions. We believe a philosophy of continuous improvement implemented over the long term is the correct solution to this challenge. Following the CO_2 reductions called for in our glide path assessment is a significant challenge. It is a commitment that we do not undertake lightly. However, we believe that dramatic reductions in CO_2 emissions are required over the long term to forestall or substantially delay the most serious consequences of climate change, and we are committed to doing our part.

As illustrated in the table below, we have already made significant progress in improving the fuel economy, and hence reducing the CO_2 emissions, from our vehicles.

Nameplate Fuel Economy Improvement Summary

	2001 MY	2011 MY	% FE Improvement (Unadjusted Combined)
FOCUS			13.5[1]
ESCAPE			12.4[2]
EXPLORER			30.8[3]
F-150			12.4[4]

1. Wagon excluded.
2. Hybrids excluded.
3. Explorer Sport, Sport Trac and ethanol-fueled versions excluded.
4. Natural gas, alternative-fueled, bi-fueled and supercharged vehicles excluded.

In 2010, we applied the CO_2 glide path methodology to develop CO_2 targets for our commercial vehicles and facilities. We plan to review our glide path analysis, and update it as appropriate, to incorporate new developments in climate science, new forecasts for vehicle sales and future changes in the CO_2 intensity of fuels (e.g., increased use of biofuels, or oil from tar sands). Any significant changes to the glide path will be discussed in future Sustainability Reports.

To explore which vehicle and fuel technologies might be most cost-effective in the long-term stabilization of atmospheric CO_2 concentrations, we have worked with colleagues at Chalmers University in Gothenburg, Sweden. Specifically, they have assisted us in including a detailed description of light-duty vehicles in a model of global energy use for 2010 to 2100. Nine technology cost cases were considered. We found that variation in vehicle technology costs over reasonable ranges led to large differences in the vehicle technologies utilized to meet future CO_2 stabilization targets. We concluded that, given the large uncertainties in our current knowledge of future vehicle technology costs, it is too early to express any firm opinions about the future cost-effectiveness or optimality of different future fuel and vehicle powertrain technology combinations.[1] This conclusion is reflected in the portfolio of fuel and vehicle technologies that are included in our sustainability strategy. We are continuing to develop the global energy model

with researchers at Chalmers. We believe the model will provide valuable insights into cost-effective mobility choices in a future carbon-constrained world.

A Look Inside the "Black Box": The Science Behind Our Scientific Approach

In 2005, Ford's scientists began development of a carbon dioxide (CO_2) model. To create it, they modified the Sustainable Mobility Project model (developed by the International Energy Agency) and combined it with global CO_2 emission-reduction pathways for varying levels of atmospheric CO_2 stabilization (as described by the Model for the Assessment of Greenhouse-Gas-Induced Climate Change, developed by the National Center for Atmospheric Research). The scientists then calculated the CO_2 emission reductions required of new light-duty vehicles up to the year 2050 for a range of CO_2 stabilization levels and different regions of the world, using a simplifying assumption that the rates of CO_2 emission reductions should be the same across all sectors.

At the lower CO_2 stabilization levels, the required emission reductions are extremely challenging and cannot be accomplished using vehicle technology alone. Joint investigations with BP provided insight into how the best new vehicle technologies and low-carbon alternative fuels can jointly and realistically fulfill the low-CO_2 emission requirements. Ford's CO_2 model and other modeling tools were combined to explore assumption sensitivities around vehicle technologies, baseline fuels and biofuels.

The CO_2 model is not intended to provide "the answer," but rather a range of possible vehicle and fuel solutions that contribute to a pathway to CO_2 reductions and, eventually, climate stabilization. Our blueprint for sustainability – and the technology and product actions it spells out – is based on options developed through this modeling exercise.

The model and its results have been a centerpiece of discussions with a variety of stakeholders. Below are some of the questions that have been raised through these discussions, and the answers to them.

How does the model account for emissions growth or reduction in developing countries?

We recognize that developing countries generally have relatively low per-capita energy use but high rates of emissions growth, reflecting growing economies. The CO_2 model uses a science-based approach that allows for growth in developing countries, to derive CO_2 reduction targets for light-duty vehicles consistent with a 450 parts per million (ppm) CO_2 stabilization pathway.

Since fuel use is the dominant cause of CO_2 emissions, how does the model account for projected changes in the carbon footprint of automotive fuels?

Ford has studied multiple scenarios in which the auto industry and the energy industry work together to reduce overall well-to-wheels CO_2 emissions from the light-duty transportation sector. These joint strategy scenarios (see figure below) allow us to develop a least-cost vehicle technology roadmap. For the carbon footprint of fuels, we rely on the well-to-tank CO_2 emissions for different alternative fuels estimated by different region-based models, including the Greenhouse Gases, Regulated Emissions, and Energy Use in Transportation (GREET) model for North America, and the EUCAR/JRC/CONCAWE analysis for Europe.

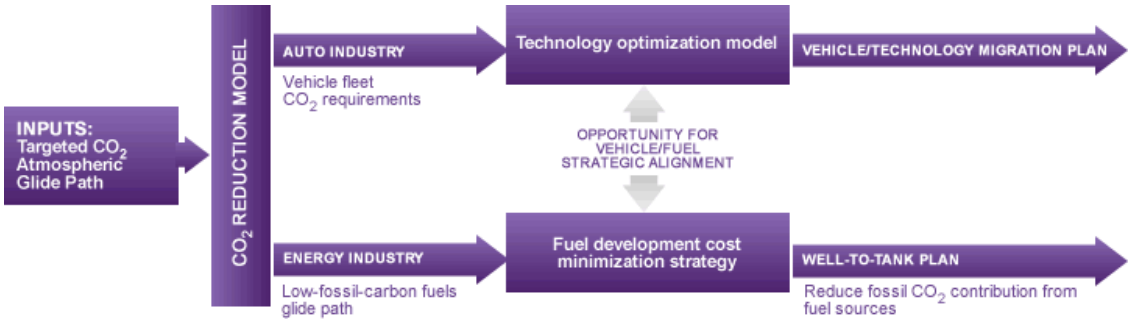
Are you continuing to test alternative scenarios?

In the long run, the roles of consumers, governments and fuel availability will be pivotal in dictating actual CO_2 emission reductions, and Ford continues to take them into consideration in fine-tuning a truly viable and sustainable CO_2 stabilization pathway.

How does the model consider the cost of technologies and alternative fuels?

In a separate study (and as discussed above), Ford and our partner Chalmers University have developed a global energy model that looks into minimal-cost scenarios across different sectors and explores assumption sensitivities around vehicle technologies, fuel technologies, connections between the different energy sectors, and biofuels. The model provides information on the combinations of options that will yield the necessary emissions reductions at an affordable cost to consumers. We have used this model to develop scenarios to assess the global lowest-cost vehicle and fuel technology solutions consistent with CO_2 stabilization.

Ford's Sustainability Framework and Technology Migration Development



1. M. Grahn, M.I. Williander, J.E. Anderson, S.A. Mueller, T.J. Wallington, "Fuel and Vehicle Technology Choices for Passenger Vehicles in Achieving Stringent CO_2 Targets: Connections between Transportation and Other Energy Sectors," ***Environ. Sci. Technol.*** 43, 3365 (2009).

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Ford's Sustainable Technologies and Alternative Fuels Plan

IN THIS SECTION

Overview of Our Plan

To meet our science-based climate stabilization goal, we are implementing our plan to significantly improve the fuel economy of our global product portfolio and enable the use of alternative fuels.

READ MORE

A Portfolio Approach

Ford is taking a portfolio approach to developing sustainable technologies and alternative fuel options. Our goal is to provide consumers with a range of different options that improve fuel economy and overall sustainability while still meeting individual driving needs.

READ MORE

Improving Fuel Economy

This section outlines our plans for improving the fuel economy of traditional gasoline and diesel engines. These actions include implementing advanced engine and powertrain technologies, improving aerodynamics and reducing weight.

READ MORE

Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains

Our plans for migrating to alternative fuels and powertrains include implementing vehicles that run on renewable biofuels, increasing advanced clean diesel technologies, increasing our hybrid vehicle applications and introducing battery electric vehicles and plug-in hybrids. We are also working to advance hydrogen fuel cell vehicle technologies.

READ MORE

Ford's Green Partnerships with Federal and State Governments

Ford is working with federal and state governments to advance the development and commercialization of technologies that improve fuel efficiency and increase the use of alternative fuels and powertrains.

READ MORE

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Overview of Our Plan

Our sustainable technologies and alternative fuels plan, mapped out in 2007, is our route to improving the fuel economy and cutting the CO_2 emissions of our products around the world. We have completed the near-term actions and are currently implementing the mid-term actions.

✓ indicates stage completed

2007 NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	2011 MID TERM Full implementation of known technology	2020–2030 LONG TERM Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources
✓ Significant number of vehicles with EcoBoost engines	■ EcoBoost engines available in nearly all vehicles	■ Increased percentage of internal combustion engines using renewable fuels
✓ Electric power steering	■ Electric power steering – high volume	■ Volume expansion of hybrid technologies
✓ Dual-clutch and six-speed transmissions replace four- and five-speeds	■ Six-speed transmissions – high volume	■ Cotninued leverage of plug-in hybrid and battery electric vehicles
✓ Flexible-fuel vehicles	■ Weight reduction of 250–750 lbs.	■ Introduction of fuel cell vehicles
✓ Additional hybrid applications	■ Engine displacement reduction facilitated by weight reductions	■ Clean electric/hydrogen fuels
✓ Increased unibody applications	■ Additional aerodynamics improvements	■ Continued weight reduction through use of advanced materials
✓ Introduction of additional small vehicles	■ Increased use of hybrids	
✓ Battery management systems	■ Introduction of battery electric and plug-in hybrid vehicles	
✓ Aerodynamics improvements	■ Vehicle capability to fully leverage available renewable fuels	
✓ Stop/start systems (micro hybrids)	■ Diesel use as market demands	
✓ CNG/LPG prep engines available in select markets	■ Increased application of stop/start	

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

A Portfolio Approach

In the very early years of our industry, automotive engineers experimented with a variety of methods for powering vehicles, including electricity and biofuels. The internal combustion engine using petroleum-based gasoline and diesel rose to the top fairly quickly, and has been the standard vehicle power source for the past 100 years. Reminiscent of those early years, we are now in a period of intense experimentation and adoption of new vehicle technologies and fuels. This time, however, there may be no single winner in the race for the vehicle of the future.

That is why Ford is taking a "portfolio approach" to developing sustainable technologies and alternative fuel options. Our goal is to provide diversity in fueling options, in order to meet customers' differing needs, while improving vehicle energy efficiency and long-term sustainability. We are thus providing customers with a range of affordable, fuel-efficient vehicles, advanced powertrains and alternative-fueled vehicle options.

We also believe that traditional gasoline- and diesel-powered vehicles with internal combustion engines will continue to be a major part of the mix for quite some time. So we are working to improve the fuel efficiency of the engines and transmissions of our current vehicles, along with every vehicle subsystem. For example, we are introducing fuel-saving technologies like our EcoBoost™ engines and efficient six-speed transmissions across a wide range of our traditional gasoline vehicle lineup.

Most importantly, we are developing global vehicle platforms that are compatible with a wide range of fuels and powertrain technologies. This allows us to offer a portfolio of options to our customers, target options to regions where they make the most sense and evolve our vehicles as technologies and markets develop. Global platforms that have "plug-and-play" compatibility with a wide range of technologies will also allow us to make the range of fuel and powertrain options available more affordably. For example, in the next three years we will be introducing an all-electric Ford Focus, a next-generation hybrid electric Ford C-MAX, and the C-MAX Energi plug-in hybrid – all built on our global C-platform.

Also, we currently produce 17 flexible-fuel vehicle models across our global markets that can run on either regular gasoline or E85 (a blend of 85 percent ethanol and 15 percent gasoline). Though biofuels are not available in every market, they are widely available in the U.S. and South America, and in some parts of Europe, so it makes sense for us to provide this option to customers who can take advantage of it. In addition, biofuel availability is expected to increase globally. In Europe, the EU's Renewable Energy Directive mandates that 10 percent of energy in the transportation sector must come from renewable fuels by 2020. In the U.S., the Renewable Fuel Standard requires annual increases in the volume of renewable fuels, reaching 36 billion gallons by 2022. Ford's flexible-fuel vehicles, which are provided at no or low additional cost, allow consumers to choose fuels based on availability and price.

We are also making engines that can be converted to run on compressed natural gas (CNG) and liquefied petroleum gas (LPG) available on select vehicle models. And, we are working with qualified vehicle modifiers to ensure that conversion to those fuels meets our quality, reliability and durability requirements. For example, we recently announced that the new Ford Transit Connect, which went on sale in the U.S. in early 2010, is available with a CNG/LPG conversion-ready engine package. Our F-Series trucks and E-Series vans are also available with a propane-ready engine. In Europe, we offer CNG and LPG conversions of various models in markets with a dedicated infrastructure, such as Italy, Germany and France.

CNG and LPG are particularly good options for fleet customers, such as taxi companies and delivery services, that use a central refueling system. In addition, CNG and LPG are widely available as vehicle fuels throughout South America and Europe. We are delivering CNG/LPG-ready engines to provide another lower-carbon option to those customers for whom this option makes sense.

As noted above, we are also developing a range of electrification technologies, including all-electric, hybrid electric and plug-in hybrid electric vehicles. Our vehicle electrification strategy is based on providing customers with a variety of vehicle choices to meet their driving needs. To read more about this strategy, please see Electrification: A Closer Look. All-electric and plug-in hybrid vehicles may initially make the most sense for urban drivers and fleet users who have daily commutes under 40 miles. However, as battery and recharging options continue to advance, we expect these vehicles to work for a wider range of our customers.

In the longer term, hydrogen may emerge as viable alternative fuel. Hydrogen has the potential to diversify our energy resources and lower lifecycle greenhouse gas emissions, if low-carbon hydrogen production becomes feasible. To prepare for this, we are developing technology to power vehicles with hydrogen fuel cells. In addition, we are working to pair hydrogen fuel cell technology with vehicle electrification technologies to maximize the sustainability benefits of both technologies.

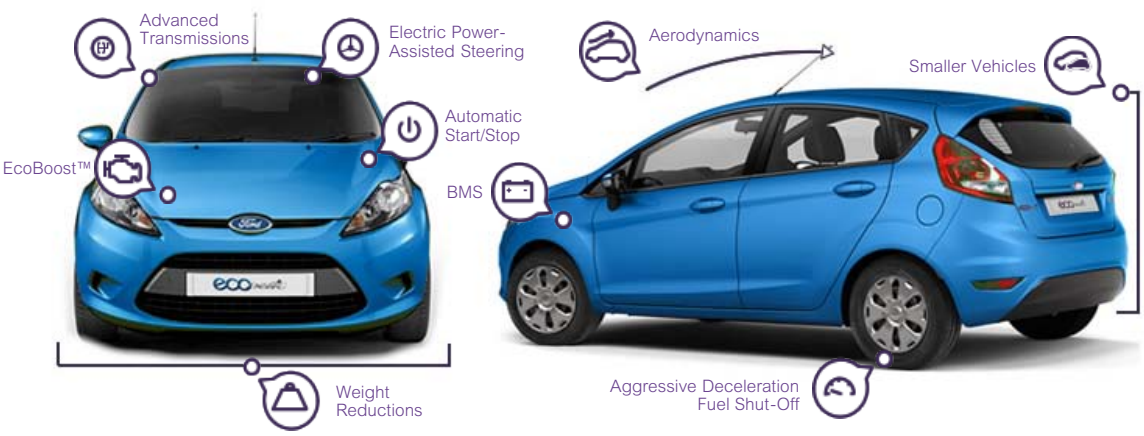
Related Links

This Report:

- Electrification: A Closer Look

This section describes our current actions and future plans to develop a wide range of energy-efficient technologies, alternative fuels and advanced powertrain technologies that will give our customers near-, mid- and longer-term options for more sustainable vehicles.

Improving Fuel Economy



This section outlines our plans for improving the fuel economy of traditional gas and diesel engines. These actions include implementing advanced engine and transmission technologies, weight reductions and aerodynamic improvements, as well as increasing the efficiency of vehicle sub-systems.

For more information about each of our fuel efficiency technologies please click on the icons in the graphic above.

EcoBoost™

✓ indicates stage completed

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	**MID TERM** Full implementation of known technology	**LONG TERM** Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources	
✓ Significant number of vehicles with EcoBoost engines	■ EcoBoost engines available in nearly all vehicle nameplates	■ Increase percentage of internal-combustion engines dependent on renewable fuels	

The centerpiece of our near-term fuel-economy improvement efforts is the EcoBoost engine, which uses turbocharging and direct injection along with reduced displacement to deliver significant fuel-efficiency gains without sacrificing engine power or vehicle performance. EcoBoost engines help to improve vehicle fuel economy 10 to 20 percent and reduce carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions up to 15 percent compared to larger-displacement engines.

EcoBoost offers better value than many other advanced fuel-efficiency technologies. Due to its affordability relative to competing powertrain options, and its compatibility with most of the gas-powered vehicles we produce, we are able to migrate EcoBoost's fuel-economy benefits throughout our product lineup more quickly and to a greater number of our customers. Our rapid deployment of EcoBoost in high volumes across a wide array of our vehicle nameplates is also helping us make a dramatic step forward in CO_2 emission reductions.

EcoBoost was first introduced in North America as a 3.5L V6 engine on the 2010 Lincoln MKS, Lincoln MKT, Ford Taurus SHO and Ford Flex. This engine provides similar performance to a normally aspirated V8 engine, but with the fuel economy of a V6. Thanks largely to EcoBoost technology, the V6 Ford Taurus SHO and Lincoln MKT deliver unsurpassed fuel economy in their respective segments.

EcoBoost has thus far proven to be a great success. For example, EcoBoost is influencing many consumers to consider and buy Ford vehicles who were not previously Ford customers. In other words, it is increasing Ford's "conquest rate" – i.e., the number of customers who are switching from other manufacturers to buy Ford vehicles. The Taurus SHO with EcoBoost now has the highest conquest rate in its segment, and the Flex EcoBoost has a more than 65 percent conquest

rate after two years on sale. EcoBoost is proving especially attractive to 35- to 55-year-old males, an important demographic that has been less likely to purchase Ford vehicles in the past.

In addition to these commercial successes, the EcoBoost engine has received multiple awards, including the "Breakthrough" award from *Popular Mechanics* and a "10 Best Engines" award from *Ward's*.

We continue to expand the application of EcoBoost technology to more engine types and vehicles. In 2010 and 2011, for example:

- We introduced the 3.5L V6 EcoBoost on the Ford F-150. The F-150 with EcoBoost is the most fuel-efficient pickup truck in its class, with a rating from the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency of 16 mpg city and 22 mpg highway.[1] The new F-150 also has best-in-class torque, payload and towing capacity.
- We also introduced a 2.0L EcoBoost engine, which is the first in the EcoBoost lineup to go truly global.
    - In the U.S., we will be introducing the 2.0L I-4 EcoBoost on the 2012 Ford Edge and the all-new 2012 Ford Explorer and 2012 Ford Focus. These are the first four-cylinder EcoBoost engines available in the U.S. The Edge and Explorer with the 2.0L I-4 EcoBoost are expected to deliver best-in-class fuel economy, with the performance feel of a traditional V6. The Explorer will feature fuel economy at least 20 percent better than the current model. We are also introducing the first high-performance vehicle with an EcoBoost engine – the Ford Focus ST, a special high-performance version of the Focus.
    - In Europe, we introduced the Ford S-MAX and Galaxy with a 2.0L EcoBoost option.
    - In China, we launched the 2.0L EcoBoost engine on the Ford Mondeo.
    - In 2011, we will introduce the 2.0L EcoBoost on the Mondeo followed by the Falcon in 2012 in Australia.
- We debuted a 1.6L I-4 EcoBoost on the 2011 Ford C-MAX in Europe. This engine is also now available in the all-new Ford Focus European version, and we plan to offer it in the 2013 Ford C-MAX, which will be available in the U.S.
- We revealed a 1.0L three-cylinder EcoBoost engine at the Paris Auto Show in 2010. This engine delivers the power of a 1.6L I-4 with better fuel economy. We plan to introduce it for use in Europe and other global markets.

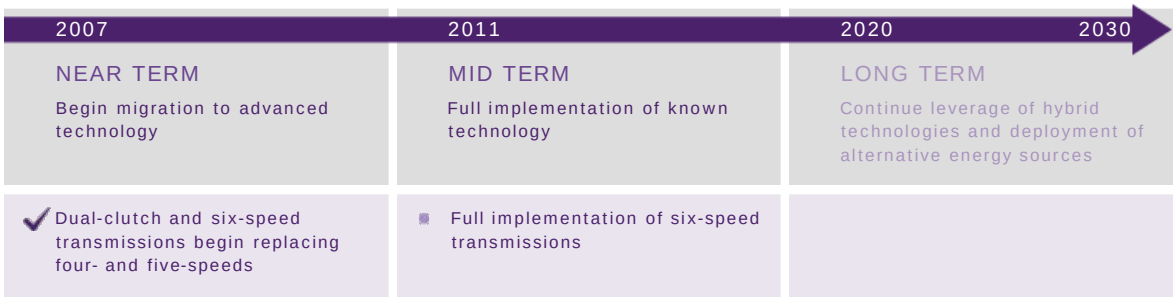
These EcoBoost engines illustrate Ford's plans to use smaller-displacement, power-boosted engines to deliver improved fuel economy and performance throughout our vehicle lineup.

By 2013, Ford plans to offer EcoBoost engines on 85 to 90 percent of our North American and European nameplates and continue to migrate them to our other regions.

1. The F-150's fuel efficiency is compared to other high-volume pickup trucks, not including low-volume special fuel-economy models.

Advanced Transmissions

✓ indicates stage completed



To further improve the fuel economy of our vehicles, we are implementing a dual-clutch transmission system called PowerShift. PowerShift combines manual and automatic transmission technologies to deliver the fuel efficiency of a manual with the driving ease of an automatic. It uses six speeds instead of the four or five on most automatics, which further increases fuel efficiency. PowerShift technology increases fuel efficiency by up to 9 percent compared to traditional four-speed automatic transmissions, depending on the application.

A "wet clutch" version of this technology has already been implemented in Europe on the Ford Focus, C-MAX, Kuga, S-MAX, Galaxy and Mondeo, in combination with a 2.0L Duratorq® TDCi diesel. The wet clutch version is also the standard transmission for the new 2.0L EcoBoost™ engine on the Ford Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy.

A "dry clutch" version was introduced in North America in April 2010 on the all-new Ford Fiesta and subsequently on the new Ford Focus in November 2010. The dry clutch version gets even better gas mileage. Unlike wet clutch systems, the dry PowerShift transmission does not use an oil pump, making the system more efficient with the same weight as a traditional four-speed automatic transmission.

We are also introducing conventional six-speed transmissions to replace less-efficient four- and five-speed transmissions in a range of vehicles, including the new Super Duty® with 6.2L and 6.7L engines and all of the Ford Mustang, F-150 and new Explorer powertrain options. Six-speed transmissions improve fuel economy by up to 5 percent compared to typical four- and five-speed gearboxes; they also provide better acceleration, smoother shifting and a quieter driving experience. By the end of 2012, 98 percent of Ford's North American transmissions will be advanced six-speed gearboxes. And by 2013, we plan to offer advanced six-speed transmissions – both PowerShift and conventional six-speed technology – on 100 percent of our new, non-hybrid vehicles in Europe and North America and many new vehicles in other regions.

In the near term we are improving the performance of our PowerShift and conventional transmissions by further optimizing their operation with EcoBoost engines and reducing parasitic losses, such as mechanical friction and unnecessary hydraulic and fluid pumping, to achieve higher operating efficiency. In the longer term we will be researching advanced transmission concepts to support further engine downsizing and electrification.

Electric Power-Assisted Steering (EPAS)

✔ indicates stage completed

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	**MID TERM** Full implementation of known technology	**LONG TERM** Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources	
✔ Electric power steering	■ Full implementation of electric power steering		

We are phasing in electric power-assisted steering technology, which typically will reduce fuel consumption and decrease carbon dioxide emissions by up to 3.5 percent over traditional hydraulic systems, depending on the vehicle and powertrain application. On the 1.4L Duratorq® diesel Ford Fiesta, for example, which is available in Europe, EPAS provides a 3–4 percent improvement in fuel efficiency compared with a hydraulic-based power steering system. By combining EPAS with aerodynamic improvements, we improved the mileage of this vehicle by approximately 8 percent compared to the previous model year. In addition, EPAS supports other fuel-saving activities we plan to introduce. For example, "automatic start/stop" technology can be introduced without degrading steering assist to the driver. (For details on this technology, see Automatic Start/Stop.)

In 2010 and 2011, we added EPAS to the all-new Ford Explorer, Ford F-150, Ford Mustang and Lincoln MKZ hybrid in North America, as well as the new Ford C-MAX and Focus in North America and Europe. This adds to our existing lineup of vehicles with EPAS – the Ford Fusion, Flex, Taurus and Escape and the Lincoln MKS and MKT in North America, as well as the Ford Fiesta and Ka in Europe. Ultimately, we will introduce EPAS into all of our passenger cars and light-duty vehicles.

Automatic Start/Stop

✔ indicates stage completed

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	**MID TERM** Full implementation of known technology	**LONG TERM** Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources	
✔ Start/stop systems (micro hybrids)	■ Increased application of start/stop systems		

We have developed a "start/stop" technology that shuts down the engine when the vehicle is stopped and automatically restarts it before the accelerator pedal is pressed to resume driving. This technology maintains the same vehicle functionality as a vehicle without the technology, but it improves city driving fuel economy by up to 6 percent. The gain can be as high as 10 percent for some drivers, depending on vehicle size and usage. The technology can also reduce tailpipe emissions to zero while the vehicle is stationary, for example when waiting at a stoplight.

Start/stop technology includes sensors to monitor functions such as cabin temperature, power supply state and steering input, so that vehicle functioning remains exactly the same to the driver as when the engine remains on continuously. If the system senses that a vehicle function has been reduced and will negatively impact the driver's experience, the engine will restart automatically.

Start/stop technology is already being used in our hybrid vehicles and will eventually provide a cost-effective way to improve fuel efficiency on a large volume of non-hybrid vehicles. In the U.S., we are planning to introduce the technology into non-hybrid vehicles in 2012. When it debuts in the U.S. it will be available on automatic transmission vehicles, including those with fuel-efficient six-speed automatic transmissions. In Europe, automatic start/stop is already standard on the

Ford Ka and certain versions of the Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy. It is launching in 2011 on the Ford Focus, C-MAX and Grand C-MAX. By 2016, 90 percent of our vehicle nameplates globally will be available with start/stop technology.

Weight Reductions

✓ indicates stage completed

2007	2011	2020 – 2030
NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	**MID TERM** Full implementation of known technology	**LONG TERM** Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources
✓ Increased unibody applications	■ Weight reductions of 250–750 lbs	■ Continue weight reductions using advanced materials

We are also working to improve fuel economy by decreasing the weight of our vehicles – in particular by increasing our use of unibody vehicle designs, lighter-weight components and lighter-weight materials.

Unibody vehicle designs reduce weight by eliminating the need for the body-on-frame design used in truck-based products. Unibody-based crossover vehicles provide many of the benefits of truck-based SUVs, such as roominess, all-wheel drive and higher stance, with significantly reduced total vehicle weight. The all-new 2011 Ford Explorer uses a lightweight unibody design, as do the current Ford Edge and Lincoln MKX crossovers.

EcoBoost™ engine technology allows us to use a smaller, lighter-weight engine system while delivering more power and better fuel economy. Similarly, the dual-clutch PowerShift system weighs up to 30 pounds less than the four-speed automatic transmission it is replacing.

The lighter-weight materials we are using include advanced high-strength steel, aluminum, magnesium, natural fibers and nano-based materials. These “lightweighting” efforts can reduce the weight of our vehicles by 250 to 750 pounds, without compromising vehicle size, safety, performance or customer-desired features. The following are examples of our use of lighter-weight materials:

- The 2010 Lincoln MKT crossover has an advanced lightweight magnesium and aluminum liftgate.
- We use an aluminum hood on the Ford F-150 and high-strength, lighter-weight steels in more than 50 percent of the F-150 cab.
- The 2011 Ford Explorer makes extensive use of high-strength steels. Nearly half of the vehicle’s structure – including the A-pillars, rocker panels and front beams – are comprised of high-strength steels, such as boron.
- In the 2012 Ford Focus, more than 55 percent of the vehicle shell is made from high-strength steel and more than 26 percent of the vehicle’s structure is formed from ultra-high-strength boron steels. The Focus combines these high-strength steels with innovative manufacturing methods to further reduce weight. For example, the vehicle’s B-pillar reinforcement, a key structural part, is made from ultra-high-strength boron steel that has been produced using an innovative tailor-rolling process. The process allows the thickness of the steel sheet to be varied along its length, so the component has increased strength in the areas that are subjected to the greatest loads. The tailor-rolled B-pillar has eight different gauge thicknesses, to improve side-impact crash performance while saving more than three pounds per vehicle.
- We are also expanding our use of aluminum engine parts and all-aluminum engines. The 2011 Mustang, for example, has an aluminum engine. Combined with other fuel-efficiency improvements, this lighter-weight engine delivers class-leading fuel economy at 19 mpg city/30 mpg highway with a six-speed automatic transmission – a 25 percent improvement over the 2010 model.

Please see the Environment section for further information on materials-based weight reductions.

Battery Management Systems (BMS)

✓ indicates stage completed

2007	2011	2020 – 2030
NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	**MID TERM** Full implementation of known technology	**LONG TERM** Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources
✓ Introduction of battery management systems		

Electrical systems are another area in which we are making progress. By reducing vehicle electrical loads and increasing the efficiency of the vehicle's electrical power generation systems, we can improve fuel efficiency. Our battery management systems, for example, control the power supply system (in particular the alternator) to maximize the overall efficiency of the electrical system and reduce its negative impacts on fuel economy. This is accomplished by maximizing electricity generation during the most fuel-efficient situations, such as vehicle deceleration. In less fuel-efficient situations, the alternator's electricity generation is minimized to conserve fuel. BMS has already been launched in Europe on the Ford Focus and Mondeo and in the U.S. beginning with the 2011 Ford Edge, Explorer and F-150, the 2011 Lincoln MKX, and the 2012 Ford Focus. We have also introduced more-efficient alternators, which improve fuel economy.

Agressive Deceleration Fuel Shut-Off

✓ indicates stage completed

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	**MID TERM** Full implementation of known technology	**LONG TERM** Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources	
✓ Begin implementing ADFSO	■ ADFSO at high volume		

We are deploying Aggressive Deceleration Fuel Shut-Off technology to improve fuel efficiency. ADFSO allows fuel supply to the engine to be shut off during vehicle deceleration and then automatically restarted when needed for acceleration or when the vehicle's speed approaches zero. This new system builds on the Deceleration Fuel Shut-Off technology available in our existing vehicles by extending the fuel shut-off feature to lower speeds and more types of common driving conditions, without compromising driving performance or non-carbon dioxide emission reductions.

This improved fuel shut-off will increase fuel economy by an average of 1 percent. An additional benefit of the ADFSO technology is increased deceleration rates, which should extend brake life and improve speed control on undulating roads.

Starting in 2008 this technology was implemented on the Ford Flex, F-150, Expedition and Escape and the Lincoln MKS and Navigator. We are continuing to implement it as we bring out new vehicles. For example, the 2011 Ford Edge, Ford Explorer and Lincoln MKX use ADFSO. The ADFSO technology will be a standard feature in all of our North American vehicles by 2015, and we will continue to expand implementation globally.

Aerodynamics

✓ indicates stage completed

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	**MID TERM** Full implementation of known technology	**LONG TERM** Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources	
✓ Aerodynamic improvements	■ Additional aerodynamic improvements		

We are optimizing vehicle aerodynamics to improve the fuel economy of our global product lineup. Using a systems engineering approach that integrates aerodynamics in an interdisciplinary and collaborative design and development processes with other fuel-economy technologies, we maximize the fuel efficiency of every vehicle we develop. During the development process, we use advanced computer simulations and optimization methods coupled with wind-tunnel testing to create vehicle designs that deliver up to 5 percent better fuel economy. In addition, we are developing simulation systems that allow us to replicate on-the-road driving conditions during the virtual design phase, to further improve the real-world benefits of aerodynamic improvements.

Using these approaches, we made significant improvements in aerodynamics in 2010. For example:

- In North America, we improved the fuel efficiency of Ford's midsize family sedans, including the 2010 Ford Fusion and Lincoln MKZ, by reducing aerodynamic drag by 5 percent. We accomplished this by further streamlining the exterior design and lowering the vehicles' ride height. These aerodynamic improvements were a key enabler for the Ford Fusion Hybrid's 41 mpg rating, which makes it the most fuel-efficient midsize sedan available in North America.[1]
- We have also reduced the aerodynamic drag of the 2010 Mustang by 4 percent for the V6 model and 7 percent for the V8 model. These aerodynamic improvements resulted in a 0.5

mpg and 1 mpg improvement in fuel economy at 70 mph cruising speeds, for the V6 and V8 models respectively.

- We improved the fuel economy of the 2011 Ford Edge and Lincoln MKX compared to the 2010 models in part through aerodynamic improvements, including underbody shielding, tire spoilers and optimized grille openings that reduce excess airflow to the engine compartment, thus reducing drag. The 2011 Edge and MKX have best-in-class fuel economy in their segments.
- In the 2011 Ford Explorer, we improved fuel economy by almost 1 mpg at highway speeds by coordinating the design of the front-mounted air dam and the rear roof-mounted spoiler.

For 2011, we are continuing to build on these improvements. For example, aerodynamic improvements helped the 2011 Ford Fiesta SFE achieve a U.S. Environmental Protection Agency-rated 40 mpg. Also in 2011, we introduced an "active grille shutter" technology that reduces aerodynamic drag by up to 6 percent, thereby increasing fuel economy and reducing carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions. When fully closed, the reduction in drag means that the active grille shutter can reduce CO_2 emissions by 2 percent. This technology was implemented first on our European vehicles; in the U.S. the 2012 Ford Focus is the first vehicle to use it. Through that technology and other design improvements, we have significantly reduced the drag coefficient on the all-new 2012 Focus four-door to 0.297 from the current model's 0.320. Optimized aerodynamics also helps reduce wind noise in the Focus.

1. Midsize sedan segment based on the R.L. Polk segment definition.

Smaller Vehicles

✓ indicates stage completed

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM Begin migration to advanced technology	**MID TERM** Full implementation of known technology	**LONG TERM** Continue leverage of hybrid technologies and deployment of alternative energy sources	
✓ Introduction of additional small vehicles	■ Engine displacement reductions facilitated by weight savings		

Smaller vehicles provide consumers with another way to get better fuel economy. We are launching more small cars to provide more fuel-efficient options. For example:

- We are introducing subcompact vehicles commonly referred to as "B-cars." These include the all-new Ford Fiesta, which was introduced in Europe in 2008, the Asia Pacific region in 2009 and the Americas in 2010.
- We are introducing a wide range of new vehicles in the U.S. and other markets based on our global "C-platform," or compact sedan. At the 2011 North American Auto Show we showcased 10 new vehicles based on this C-platform, most of which will be available in the U.S. in the next few years. In 2011 we are introducing the next-generation global Ford Focus to North America. This vehicle includes the first in a series of powertrain technology developments that will give our C-car segment offerings a combination of power, performance and unsurpassed fuel economy. For example, the Focus will be equipped with a responsive, fuel-efficient, 2.0L I-4 engine with twin independent variable camshaft timing and direct injection, plus a dual-clutch PowerShift transmission. We will also offer a battery electric version called the Focus Electric. In addition, we are introducing the Ford C-MAX in the U.S., a multi-activity vehicle based on our C-platform. This vehicle will also ultimately include a hybrid and plug-in hybrid version.
- We brought the European Transit Connect small commercial van to North America. This vehicle fills an unmet need in the U.S. market by offering the large cargo space that small business owners need in a fuel-efficient, maneuverable, durable and flexible vehicle package.

We also loaded these smaller vehicles with features and options commonly found on larger or luxury vehicles to make them attractive, thus encouraging customers to choose more fuel-efficient cars and trucks.

All of these smaller vehicles illustrate Ford's actions to provide consumers with a wider range of fuel-efficient options, as well as our efforts to leverage the best of our global products to offer new choices to customers in all of our regions worldwide.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains

IN THIS SECTION


Advanced Clean Diesel


HEVs


BEVs


PHEVs


Renewable Biofueled Vehicles


FCVs

At Ford, our plans for migrating to alternative fuels and powertrains include implementing vehicles that run on renewable biofuels, increasing advanced clean diesel technologies, increasing our hybrid vehicle applications and introducing battery electric vehicles and plug-in hybrids. We are also working to advance hydrogen-powered vehicle technologies.

For more information on our plans regarding each of these alternative fuels and powertrain technologies, please click on the Ford vehicles above.

Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains

IN THIS SECTION


Advanced Clean Diesel


HEVs


BEVs


PHEVs


Renewable Biofueled Vehicles


FCVs

Advanced Clean Diesel

Ford Fiesta ECOnetic

Modern diesels are 30–40 percent more fuel efficient than gasoline vehicles. Ford offers a range of advanced diesels in Europe under the ECOnetic label. In the U.S., Ford introduced a new diesel engine on the 2011 F-Series Super Duty® truck that has 20 percent better fuel economy than the outgoing model.

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM	MID TERM	LONG TERM	
Begin migration to advanced technology	Full implementation of known technology	Continue deploying advanced powertrains and alternative fuels and energy sources	

Advanced Clean Diesel

Modern diesels offer some significant advantages over traditional gasoline engines. They consume 30 to 40 percent less fuel, and on a well-to-wheels basis they emit 15 to 30 percent less carbon dioxide (CO_2).[1] In addition, direct-injection diesel engines provide exceptional power and torque, resulting in better driving performance and towing capabilities.

In Europe, diesel-powered vehicles account for more than 50 percent of new vehicle sales and make up approximately 30 percent of the total vehicle fleet on the road. Ford continues to improve its strong lineup of fuel-efficient and clean diesel vehicles in Europe. For example, we continue to introduce ECOnetic versions of Ford models that deliver improved fuel economy and emissions. The ECOnetic lineup currently includes versions of the Ford Fiesta, Focus, Mondeo and Transit. Several of the ECOnetic models use diesel engines, which meet the stringent Euro 5 emissions standards and emit less than 100 g/km of CO_2. For example, the Fiesta ECOnetic has fuel economy of 3.7 liters/100 km and emits just 98 g/km of CO_2. This vehicle is powered by a specially calibrated version of the 95-horsepower PowerShift 1.6L Duratorq TDCi, combined with a coated diesel particulate (soot) filter.

In the North American medium-duty truck market, diesel engines account for more than 50 percent of sales. In response to this demand, Ford introduced an all-new 2011 F-Series Super Duty® truck with a state-of-the-art diesel engine, new six-speed transmission and urea/selective catalytic reduction after-treatment system. The 6.7L Power Stroke® V8 diesel is cleaner and has 20 percent better fuel economy, 14 percent more power and 23 percent more torque relative to the outgoing model.

This new diesel engine also meets the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's and the California Air Resources Board's strict 2010 heavy-duty truck emission regulations, which require 80 percent lower NOx emissions than the 2007 regulations. The new Super Duty uses a range of advanced technologies to meet the new regulations. For example, its 6.7L Power Stroke engine employs an innovative exhaust gas recirculation system with two independent cooling loops, which enable optimal combustion phasing for fuel economy while reducing NOx emissions from the engine into the after-treatment system. In addition, the after-treatment system has three key parts, including:

- a diesel oxidation catalyst that converts and oxidizes hydrocarbons into water and carbon dioxide;

- a selective catalytic reduction that uses an ammonia and water solution to convert the NOx in the exhaust stream into water and inert nitrogen; and
- a diesel particulate filter that traps any remaining soot and periodically burns it away when sensors detect that the trap is full.

The engine will also use a high-precision, common-rail fuel-injection system featuring piezo-electric injectors. This system uses a stack of more than 300 wafer-thin ceramic platelets to control the fuel injector nozzle, allowing it to operate faster than other electro-mechanical fuel injectors, decrease fuel consumption and reduce emissions.

The 2011 Super Duty is Ford's first vehicle in North America that is B20 compatible, meaning it can run on fuel composed of 20 percent biodiesel and 80 percent ultra-low-sulfur diesel. Biodiesel is a renewable fuel made from soybean oil and other fats. We went through extensive testing to ensure that this new truck would meet performance and durability requirements when fueled with B20, including running durability cycles on multiple blends of diesel and biodiesel fuels to ensure the robustness of the system. Previously, Ford Super Duty products in North America were approved to use B5 fuel, which is composed of 5 percent biodiesel and 95 percent petroleum diesel. In Europe, our vehicles are also compatible with B5, and we are working with European fuel standards organizations to establish fuel-quality standards for biodiesel blends greater than B5. The use of biodiesel helps to reduce dependence on foreign oil and reduces lifecycle CO_2 emissions. For more information on biofuels, please see the Renewable Biofueled Vehicles section.

---

1. Figures based on J.L. Sullivan, R.E. Baker, B.A. Boyer, R.H. Hammerle, T.E. Kenney, L. Muniz, and T.J. Wallington, 2004, "CO_2 Emission Benefit of Diesel (versus Gasoline) Powered Vehicles," *Environmental Science and Technology*, 38: 3217-3223.

Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains

IN THIS SECTION


Advanced Clean Diesel


HEVs


BEVs


PHEVs


Renewable Biofueled Vehicles


FCVs

Hybrid Electric Vehicles (HEVs)

Ford Fusion

HEVs are powered by a traditional internal combustion engine and battery power to deliver improved fuel economy. Ford is the largest domestic manufacturer of hybrid vehicles in the U.S. and has announced plans to introduce hybrids in Europe by 2013.

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM	MID TERM	LONG TERM	
Begin migration to advanced technology	Full implementation of known technology	Continue deploying advanced powertrains and alternative fuels and energy sources	

Hybrid Electric Vehicles (HEVs)

Ford is currently the largest domestic producer of hybrid vehicles, with more than 160,000 on the road as of March 2011. Ford introduced its first hybrid in 2004, the Ford Escape Hybrid, which was also the world's first hybrid SUV. We followed up with the Mercury Mariner Hybrid in 2005. In early 2009 we further expanded our hybrid vehicle lineup by introducing the Ford Fusion and Mercury Milan Hybrids. All of these vehicles are full parallel hybrids, meaning they can run exclusively on battery power, exclusively on gas power or on a combination of both to deliver the best overall fuel efficiency. We are currently increasing our hybrid volume, targeting a cost reduction of more than 30 percent in our 2012 next-generation hybrid systems and preparing for hybrid capability across our highest-volume global product platforms.

The Ford Fusion Hybrid has a U.S. Environmental Protection Agency fuel economy rating of 41/36 mpg city/highway, making it the most fuel-efficient midsize sedan in the U.S.[1] The Fusion Hybrid's fuel economy significantly exceeds that of its nearest midsize sedan competitor, and it can go more than 700 miles on a single tank of fuel. It includes an innovative new SmartGauge™ with EcoGuide instrument cluster that coaches hybrid drivers to maximize fuel efficiency.

In 2010, we launched the Lincoln MKZ Hybrid, which is the most fuel-efficient luxury sedan in America and is available at the same price as the gas model MKZ. In 2011, we announced the introduction of a hybrid version of the Ford C-MAX multi-activity vehicle. This will be one of three electrified vehicle options based on our C-platform. The others are the Focus Electric (a battery electric vehicle, or BEV), the C-MAX Energi (a plug-in hybrid, or PHEV) and the C-MAX Hybrid. The hybrid variant of the C-MAX will build on the fuel economy leadership of the Ford Fusion Hybrid, already the most fuel-efficient mid-sized sedan in America. This vehicle will use the Company's powersplit hybrid architecture, with improved fuel efficiency and a lighter, smaller lithium-ion battery system. The C-MAX Hybrid and C-MAX Energi, along with another still-to-be-announced HEV, will be introduced in North America by 2012 and in Europe by 2013.

Our next-generation hybrids will also have a suite of driver information systems to help drivers maximize fuel efficiency. They will feature an enhanced version of the MyFord Touch™ driver interface system that can be configured to show different levels of information, including fuel and battery power levels, as well as average and instant miles per gallon.

1. Midsize sedan segment based on the R.L. Polk segment definition.

Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains

IN THIS SECTION

Advanced Clean Diesel | HEVs | BEVs | PHEVs | Renewable Biofueled Vehicles | FCVs

Battery Electric Vehicles (BEVs)

Transit Connect Electric

BEVs use no gasoline; they are powered by a high-voltage electric motor and battery pack. In 2010, Ford introduced its first BEV, the Transit Connect Electric. In 2011, Ford will introduce the Focus Electric with a planned range of 100 miles on a charge and half the recharge time of our competitors' BEVs.

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM	MID TERM	LONG TERM	
Begin migration to advanced technology	Full implementation of known technology	Continue deploying advanced powertrains and alternative fuels and energy sources	

Battery Electric Vehicles (BEVs)

Ford has announced an expanded, comprehensive electric vehicle strategy aligned with growing public interest in advanced technologies that reduce the use of gasoline and diesel. Our approach to electrification tackles commercial issues such as battery cost, standards development and infrastructure deployment. In addition, strategic partnerships are an important part of this new approach. We are working with partners to develop appropriate battery cells, collaborate on government policy and define the infrastructure needed to speed the commercialization and acceptance of electric vehicles. To read more about our approach, please see Electrification: A Closer Look.

Battery electric vehicles do not have an internal combustion engine and do not use any on-board gasoline. Instead, they use a high-voltage electric motor, which gets its power from a high-voltage battery pack charged by plugging into a standard 110-volt or 220-volt outlet in the U.S., or a 230-volt outlet in Europe.

In 2010 we introduced a BEV version of the Ford Transit Connect light commercial van, for use by small business owners and fleet customers in the U.S. This vehicle is produced in partnership with Azure Dynamics, a world leader in the development and production of hybrid electric and battery electric commercial vehicles.

In late 2011 we will launch an all-electric passenger sedan, the Ford Focus Electric, based on the all-new Focus. This car has a target driving range of 100 miles on a single charge of its lithium-ion high-voltage battery. We are targeting 19 initial markets with this vehicle. We will be ready to expand to new markets and ramp up to higher volumes as the infrastructure develops and customer demand grows.

A full recharge of the Focus Electric is expected to take three to four hours at home with the 240-volt charge station – half the charging time required by competitors' battery electric vehicles. As fast-charge technology standards are developed, Ford's Focus Electric will be designed to take advantage of this capability.

The Focus Electric, as well as Ford's other electrified vehicles including HEVs and PHEVs, will use lithium-ion batteries. These batteries provide better performance, require less space and weigh less than the nickel metal hydride batteries used in current hybrid electric vehicles. The Focus

Electric's advanced lithium-ion battery system was engineered by Ford in cooperation with the supplier LG Chem. It uses an advanced, active liquid cooling and heating system to precondition and regulate the temperature, which helps to maximize battery life and fuel-free driving range.

The Focus Electric will include an enhanced version of MyFord Touch™ – Ford's new driver interface technology – that will give drivers information to help maximize driving range, plan the most eco-friendly route and manage the battery recharge process.

Drivers will also be able to manage their Focus Electric remotely using the Ford-developed MyFord Mobile app. This system enables customers to get instant vehicle status information, perform key functions remotely, monitor the car's state of charge and current range, get alerts when it requires charging, remotely program charge settings and download vehicle data for analysis from a smartphone or secure Ford website. For more information on the Focus Electric driver information systems and mobile controls, please see Living the Electric Lifestyle.

The Focus Electric will also work with Value Charging (powered by Microsoft®), a home energy management system that works exclusively with Ford electric vehicles to help customers reduce their electricity costs by taking advantage of off-peak or other reduced rates from their utility, without a complicated set-up process. For more information on this technology, please see Electrification: A Closer Look.

We are also introducing all-electric vehicles in Europe. We will launch the Ford Transit Connect Electric in Europe in 2011 followed by the Ford Focus Electric in 2012. In preparation for these launches, Ford is participating in BEV test trials in the UK and Germany with Transit Connect Electrics as well as early Focus Electrics, to test the technology's suitability in real-world situations.

Ford is actively working to help develop standards to ensure that plug-in and charge stations work for all BEVs and to ensure that the technology is reliable and durable for customers. In North America, the Society of Automotive Engineers, with Ford's participation, successfully aligned all major original equipment manufacturers on a standard charge connector and communication protocol, enabling all plug-in vehicles to use common charge points. This will be a key enabler for adoption in North America; the same connector is under consideration in Europe and China.

Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains

IN THIS SECTION


Advanced Clean Diesel


HEVs


BEVs


PHEVs


Renewable Biofueled Vehicles


FCVs

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs)

Ford Escape

PHEVs are powered by a gas-powered engine and a high-capacity electric battery that can be charged from an electric outlet. Ford will introduce its first PHEV, the C-MAX Energi, in the U.S. in 2012 and in Europe in 2013.

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM	MID TERM	LONG TERM	
Begin migration to advanced technology	Full implementation of known technology	Continue deploying advanced powertrains and alternative fuels and energy sources	

Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicles (PHEVs)

PHEVs are similar to HEVs in that they are equipped with both an electric battery and a gas-powered engine. Unlike today's hybrids, however, PHEVs are equipped with a high-capacity battery that can be charged from a private household or public electric outlet. In addition, while regular HEVs maintain a roughly constant battery charge, plug-in hybrids discharge the battery while driving to provide additional fuel savings. PHEVs have the potential to reduce tailpipe emissions to near zero when running on battery power. However, the vehicle's overall lifecycle emissions depend on the electrical power source and the performance characteristics of the vehicle. PHEVs could be significantly less expensive for consumers to operate because they allow drivers to travel on grid-based electricity stored in batteries instead of more costly gasoline.

The success of PHEVs in the real world depends on cooperation between automakers, utilities, the government and drivers. Therefore, Ford is working with a range of partners – including technology partners, the utility industry and the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) – to help make a smooth transition to electrified vehicles. In 2007, Ford began a collaborative project with Southern California Edison to advance the commercialization of PHEVs. In 2008, Ford expanded this program with the DOE and other partners to identify a sustainable pathway toward accelerated, successful mass production of these vehicles. The project now includes 11 additional partners: the Electric Power Research Institute, the New York State Energy Research and Development Authority, the New York Power Authority, American Electric Power, ConEdison of New York, DTE Energy, National Grid, Progress Energy, Southern Company-Alabama Power, Pepco Holdings and Hydro Quebec.

Ford was awarded $10 million by the DOE to support this program, which includes a three-year demonstration project with a vehicle fleet deployed by the DOE and the energy partners to collect real-world battery performance data and evaluate PHEV and grid performance in different geographical locations. The project aims to help the companies understand critical implementation issues, including the vehicle-utility interface, the impact of plug-ins on utility operations and emissions, and the value to users, utility companies and vehicle manufacturers.

In 2010, Ford completed the deployment of 20 vehicles with the DOE and its utility partners and continued to collect in-field vehicle performance data. To date, the fleet has logged more than 300,000 miles. The collected data is being analyzed by engineers in Ford's Sustainable Mobility Technology group in conjunction with the DOE, Idaho National Laboratories and Argonne National

Laboratories. The results of these analyses continue to drive future PHEV product offerings from Ford as well as aid utility companies in their expectations for when plug-in vehicles hit the market.

For more information on some of the key learnings generated by this collaboration thus far, please see Electrification: A Closer Look.

The demonstration vehicles used in this project (Ford Escape Plug-In Hybrids) have two distinct operational modes: charge depletion and charge sustaining. In charge-depletion mode, which is used when the high-voltage battery is above a predetermined state of charge, the vehicle draws the majority of the power required for operation from the battery. During normal driving, this usually translates into full-electric operation when the vehicle is traveling less than roughly 40 mph. When the power demand of the driver exceeds the power output capacity of the high-voltage battery, the gasoline engine automatically starts up to provide the difference. However, even when the engine is used to supplement power while in charge-depletion mode, the battery still provides the vast majority of the power required to propel the vehicle, giving the driver a sense that the engine is merely idling, even at highway speeds.

In charge-sustaining mode, which is used when the high-voltage battery is below a predetermined state of charge, the vehicle relies mainly on the engine to meet the driver's power demand. The high-voltage battery is charged during braking events and discharged during acceleration events to improve the overall fuel economy of the vehicle – similar to the operation of today's conventional hybrids.

Initial field data show significant improvements in fuel economy when these vehicles are operated in charge-depleting mode. The data also show that in city environments, a fully charged Escape Plug-in Hybrid is capable of an all-electric range in excess of 25 miles, when driven below 40 mph and if aggressive acceleration events are avoided.

We recently announced plans to introduce the Ford C-MAX Energi, our first production PHEV, which will be a variant of the Ford C-MAX multi-activity vehicle. The C-MAX Energi will be designed to deliver a more than 500-mile driving range with battery and engine power. It will launch in the U.S. in 2012 and in Europe in 2013.

The C-MAX Energi will include a wide range of technology to help drivers maximize fuel efficiency, driving range and charging efficiency. Like the Focus Electric, the C-MAX Energi will have an enhanced version of MyFord Touch™ – Ford's new driver interface technology – that will give drivers information to help maximize driving range, plan the most eco-friendly route and manage the battery recharge process. Drivers will also be able to manage their C-MAX Energi remotely using the Ford-developed MyFord Mobile app. The C-MAX Energi will also work with Value Charging by Microsoft®, a home energy management product that will help customers determine when and how to most efficiently and affordably recharge BEVs and PHEVs. For more information on these technologies, please see Living the Electric Lifestyle.

Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains

IN THIS SECTION


Advanced Clean Diesel


HEVs


BEVs


PHEVs


Renewable Biofueled Vehicles


FCVs

Renewable Biofueled Vehicles

Ford Galaxy

Biofuels offer a relatively affordable way to reduce carbon dioxide emissions. Ford is a market leader in biofueled vehicles with more than 5.5 million E85-capable vehicles and 17 E85 models globally.

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM	MID TERM	LONG TERM	
Begin migration to advanced technology	Full implementation of known technology	Continue deploying advanced powertrains and alternative fuels and energy sources	

Renewable Biofueled Vehicles

Current Generation Biofuels

Ford has a long history of developing vehicles that run on renewable biofuels. Our founder, Henry Ford, was a strong proponent of biofuels, and we produced our first flexible-fuel vehicle approximately 100 years ago; the Ford Model T was capable of running on gasoline or ethanol.

Biofuels are an important component of our sustainability strategy for three reasons. First, biofuels can help to address economic, social and environmental sustainability, which includes helping us meet our carbon dioxide (CO_2) reduction targets. Second, the use of biofuels requires relatively modest and affordable modifications to existing vehicle and fueling technology, which makes them a viable near-term option. Third, biofuels offer synergies with our other strategies. For example, the high octane of ethanol is a potential enabler for the introduction of higher compression ratio engines and higher engine boost technologies that improve the efficiency and torque of our future downsized engines.

Given the current trends of increasing biofuel production, increasing investment in advanced biofuels, increasing vehicle efficiencies and the introduction of vehicles that do not use liquid fuels (such as electric and natural gas vehicles) we believe that the use of biofuels may increase from their current level of 2–3 percent globally to 10–30 percent of global liquid transportation fuel over the next few decades. Although Ford is a vehicle manufacturer and not a fuel provider, it is important for us to understand the physical and chemical properties of biofuels (such as their octane ratings), their sustainability attributes (such as lifecycle greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, water use and energy consumption, etc.) and their performance in our vehicles. We are conducting research and development to ensure that our vehicles will be able to exploit the full benefits of biofuels. Our current work focuses on the two biofuels that are available at a commercial scale: ethanol and biodiesel.

The U.S. and Brazil are the world's largest producers of ethanol, which is made from the fermentation of sugars. In the U.S. the sugar is derived via the hydrolysis of corn starch, while in Brazil the sugar is obtained directly from sugar cane. Ethanol is typically used in blends with gasoline. Blends are identified using the volumetric content of ethanol, which is specified numerically after the letter "E" for ethanol. For example, E10 is 10 percent by volume ethanol and 90 percent petroleum gasoline, while E85 is up to 85 percent by volume ethanol. Most automotive

fuel supplied in the U.S. is E10. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) has recently issued a waiver permitting E15 to be sold in the U.S. for use in 2001 or newer model year vehicles. Our position regarding E15 is discussed in a separate section below.

An important benefit of ethanol is its higher octane, which can improve the efficiency and torque of today's high-efficiency internal combustion gas engines. In 2010 we developed a fundamental molecular approach to calculating the octane boost provided by ethanol blended into gasoline that is more accurate than previous measurement approaches.[1] The octane number of a fuel is a critical fuel property that describes its resistance to "knock," which results from early or uncontrolled fuel ignition. To avoid "knocking," the compression ratios designed into engines are limited by the lowest expected octane number of available fuels. However, engines operate at higher thermal efficiency when they can be operated at higher compression ratios using appropriate higher-octane fuel. The increased availability of ethanol in the future provides an opportunity for fuel providers to deliver fuels with higher octane and automakers to provide higher compression ratio – and therefore more-efficient – engines. High-octane ethanol blends offer a win-win-win opportunity in which the increased availability of ethanol could enable increased engine efficiency, resulting in fuel savings for our customers, improved energy security and reduced CO_2 emissions. However, ethanol also may damage engines that are not designed to operate on higher concentrations of the fuel, which poses a concern for older vehicles. Our research into ethanol fuels and octane calculations will help us take the best advantage of higher-octane ethanol fuel blends in the future.

Biodiesel is a biofuel alternative to petroleum diesel made from the transesterification of vegetable oils obtained from oil seeds, including soy, canola, palm and rapeseed, or from animal fat. Biodiesel is distinct from "renewable diesel," which is made by hydrotreating vegetable oils or animal fats. In the U.S., most biodiesel is currently made from soybean oil. Biodiesel is typically used in blends with petroleum diesel, where the volumetric content of biodiesel is specified numerically after the letter "B" for biodiesel. In the U.S. and Europe all of our diesel vehicles can run on B5, a blend containing 5 percent biodiesel. We have worked with fuel standards organizations to allow the use of biodiesel blends of greater than B5 in our future products. For example, our 2011 F-Series Super Duty® trucks with a new 6.7L diesel engine are compatible with B20. In addition, the gasoline version of these vehicles will be compatible with gasoline, E85 or any ethanol-gasoline blend between E0 and E85.

Ford has taken a leadership position on biofuels. Since 1997, we have offered flexible-fuel vehicles (FFVs) capable of running on gasoline or E85 ethanol. In the U.S., we met our commitment to double our FFV production from 2006 to 2010. To date, we have introduced more than 5.5 million E85-capable vehicles globally, including more than 2.3 million in North America and nearly 2 million in Brazil. In the U.S., we have produced more than 1 million FFVs over the last three years alone. In Europe, Ford is a market leader and pioneer in ethanol-powered FFVs, with more than 70,000 vehicles delivered to customers since 2001. Ford FFV models are available in many European markets, with Sweden, Germany, Spain and France showing the strongest demand.

Ford currently offers 17 vehicle models in the U.S., Europe and South America that can run on E85. These include the Ford Crown Victoria, Expedition, Fusion, Escape, Econoline, Super Duty and F-150 and the Lincoln Town Car and Navigator in North America; the Ford Focus, Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy in Europe; and the Ford Fiesta, EcoSport, Focus, Ka and Courier in Brazil. In 2009 in Europe we launched a tri-fuel version of the Ford Mondeo, capable of running on gasoline, E85 or propane (LPG).

E15 in the United States

Over the last year, the EPA approved the use of E15 ethanol blends in 2001 and newer model year vehicles. While Ford supports the use of renewable fuels to meet the challenges of energy security and climate change and has committed to expand our lineup of vehicles capable of operating on E85, we do not support approving the use of E15 in older vehicles unless concerns with the use of E15 in the legacy fleet are addressed.

The entire legacy fleet of non-FFVs consists of vehicles designed to operate on E0 to E10 (or only E0 for very old vehicles). We are concerned that vehicles will not continue to meet customer expectations for quality, durability and performance, nor legal requirements relating to emissions and on-board diagnostics, if the vehicles are operated on a fuel they were not designed to use. The Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers and the Association of International Automobile Manufacturers are among many parties seeking review of the E15 waiver in the D.C. Circuit Court of Appeals. Ford is a member of the Alliance. Our ultimate goal is to ensure that we exceed customer expectations, and we will continue to work with our customers and dealerships to address any potential concerns.

One opportunity with the introduction of increased ethanol blends is to increase the octane rating of the new fuel. As discussed above, ethanol has an octane rating greater than today's gasoline, so when the fuels are mixed, the resulting fuel blend should have higher octane than the base gasoline. And as the octane rating of a fuel increases, it reduces the tendency for "engine knock." Many of today's advanced engines are programmed to improve the efficiency of the engine just short of the point where the consumer would experience engine knock. For such engines, an increase in the octane rating of the fuel could result in improved vehicle efficiency. Further improvement to engine efficiency (through increased compression ratio and downsizing) could be achieved if manufacturers knew how and when the minimum octane ratings of fuels would increase in the future. Given that vehicles' efficiency and performance depends on the fuel it uses, the two should be considered systematically. Coordinated efforts among the involved industries (oil, biofuel, auto) and regulatory agencies are needed to ensure that maximum benefit is gained from our future fuels and vehicles.

Future Biofuels

The biofuels currently available at a commercial scale (e.g., ethanol and biodiesel) have advantages relative to their petroleum-derived counterparts. They can be made from locally available raw materials, providing support for rural communities and reducing the need for foreign-supplied oil, while increasing national energy security. They also reduce lifetime (or well-to-wheels) CO_2 emissions compared to conventional petroleum-based fuels. However, important issues remain regarding biofuels' energy density, the best way to use these fuels to reduce GHG emissions, their ability to meet fuel needs without impacting food supplies and their potential impact on land-use decisions. (These issues are discussed in more detail later in the Biofuel Challenges section.)

Meanwhile, Ford is working to support and promote the next generation of biofuels, including cellulosic biofuels. These are primarily fuels made from plant cellulose – stalks, leaves and woody matter – instead of from sugars, starches or oil seeds. Cellulosic biofuels will have many advantages. They should minimize possible market competition between food and fuel. They would allow the more complete use of crops such as corn and soybeans by using additional parts of these crops, including stems and leaves, for fuel production. In addition, cellulosic biofuels can be made from "energy crops," such as switchgrass and wood, that require less fertilizer and less energy-intensive farming methods. This would further reduce the total CO_2 footprint of the resulting biofuels. We are also investigating the potential for algae-based biofuels to provide another feedstock for future biofuels. Given the challenges associated with developing and scaling up new production technologies, it is our assessment that next-generation biofuels will be available at scale in the marketplace in the next 10–15 years, if the necessary technical breakthroughs in production efficiencies are made.

The United States Renewable Fuel Standard and the Future of Biofuels

The Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007 expanded the Renewable Fuel Standard (RFS) by requiring a significant increase in the use of biofuels – to a total of 36 billion gallons per year by 2022. This law also requires that, beginning in 2010, a certain portion of biofuels must be "advanced" and/or cellulosic-based fuels. Ethanol blended into gasoline is expected to supply the majority of this biofuel mandate and could displace nearly 20 percent of U.S. gasoline demand by 2022.[2] The use of biodiesel in the U.S. is also likely to increase in the coming years. However, it will not likely increase to the same levels as ethanol, because the RFS mandates lower volumes of biomass-based diesel and because a relatively small percentage of light-duty passenger vehicles in the U.S. use diesel.

Using low-level ethanol blends such as E10 (which is the situation today), would achieve approximately 40 percent of the RFS-mandated biofuel use by 2022. Therefore, meeting the full RFS biofuel requirement will require much greater use of E85 in FFVs and/or the development of vehicles that can use "mid-level blends" of ethanol and gasoline (i.e., between E10 and E85). The expanded use of E85 in FFVs would require a corresponding increase in the E85 fueling infrastructure in the next 10 to 20 years. An approach using mid-level blends would require that all new vehicles be designed for higher ethanol capability, and the existing fueling infrastructure would need to be improved for higher ethanol compatibility. For any of these approaches to be successful, the new fuels will have to provide enough value to the consumer to compel them to buy ethanol-blend fuels. Regardless of the specific strategy used, coordinated efforts will be required between automakers, fuel suppliers, consumers and the government to meet the RFS mandate while ensuring the compatibility of vehicles and ethanol-blended fuel. Without alignment between vehicles, fuels and infrastructure, a mismatch will occur, and it will be difficult to meet the RFS mandate successfully.

Biofuel Infrastructure

To increase their benefits for reducing GHG emissions and improving energy security, biofuels must become more widely used. This requires the availability of both biofuels and vehicles capable of using biofuels. In the U.S., the E85 refueling infrastructure remains inadequate. Out of more than 160,000 refueling stations in the U.S., approximately 2,300 (or less than 2 percent) offer E85. For consumers to have a true transportation fuel choice, increased access to biofuels is necessary.

Biofuel Challenges

Much of the interest in biofuels results from their potential to lessen the environmental impacts of transportation fuels while contributing to energy independence. Biofuels are typically made from domestic and renewable resources, they provide an economic boost to rural communities, and they help to reduce greenhouse gas emissions because the plants from which they are made absorb CO_2 while they are growing. But are biofuels the best solution to our growing fuel-related environmental, economic and political problems? The issues are complex. We believe biofuels are an important part of the equation for addressing climate change and energy security. We recognize, however, that major advances need to be made in production processes, source materials and fuel types to achieve the full promise of biofuels.

Challenges relating to today's biofuels include the following:

Energy Density

The energy density of ethanol is approximately two-thirds that of gasoline.[3] This means there is approximately one-third less available energy in a gallon of ethanol than in a gallon of gasoline.

As a result, drivers using fuels containing higher amounts of ethanol will have to refuel more frequently. Ethanol does have improved qualities, such as higher octane, that can be leveraged to recover much of the lost energy content. Biodiesel has approximately the same energy density as conventional petroleum-based diesel.

Lifecycle Greenhouse Gas Emissions

The plants used to produce biofuel feedstocks capture as much carbon dioxide during their growth as they release when burned. However, current farming and production processes utilize fossil fuels in the production of ethanol and biodiesel, so the production of these biofuels results in a release of some fossil-fuel-based GHG emissions on a complete lifecycle basis. In addition, nitrous oxide (N_2O) emissions resulting from biofuel production need to be carefully considered for all types of biofuel feedstocks and farming techniques on a full lifecycle basis, including the appropriate allocation of emissions to co-products (such as animal feed) derived from biofuel production. Government and academic studies suggest that current E85 using ethanol from corn results in 20 to 30 percent fewer lifecycle GHG emissions than today's gasoline, on an energy-equivalent basis. In addition, GHG emissions related to petroleum can vary greatly depending on the source. Producing crude oil from tar sands, for example, results in a greater release of GHGs than producing crude oil from conventional sources. The use of renewable energy sources in the production of ethanol and biodiesel production can reduce their lifecycle GHG emissions further. We believe that developing cellulosic or biomass-based biofuels with next-generation processes will significantly decrease the GHG emissions associated with biofuels, perhaps by up to 90 percent.[4]

Competition with the Food Supply

Another concern about current corn- and soybean-based biofuels is that they compete in the marketplace with food supplies and are often cited as one of the factors that increase food prices. In the U.S., demand for corn used directly for human food (including high-fructose corn syrup) consumes less than 10 percent of the total corn supply. Approximately 42 percent of U.S. corn is used for animal feed. In 2009, about 32 percent of the corn harvest in the U.S. was used to produce ethanol. Ethanol production removes only the starch from the corn kernel – the remaining portion is a highly valued feed product (called distiller grains) and a good source of energy and protein for livestock and poultry. This mitigates the competition between ethanol production and food production. In addition, the growth of the energy crop market has encouraged improvements in farming productivity (e.g., bushels per acre) that may not have occurred otherwise, further reducing the impact of biofuels on corn availability. If next-generation biofuels can efficiently utilize biomass such as plant stalks, woodchips or grasses and be grown on marginal land with little irrigation, then competition with food crops should be minimized. In 2011, Ford researchers published a technical assessment of the contribution of biofuel production to the increase in food prices in 2008.[5] We agree with the majority of external studies that find that biofuel production has a small, or modest, impact on commodity food prices.

Land-Use Conversion for Biofuel Production

Recent studies have looked at the overall CO_2 and N_2O impacts of "direct" land-use changes associated with biofuels – i.e., converting natural ecosystems to farmland for the production of crops to make biofuels. Additional studies have considered an "indirect" land-use change scenario in which the use of farmland for biofuels in one region indirectly leads to the conversion of natural ecosystems to farmland in another region due to crop market feedbacks (either replacing the grain in the marketplace or due to increased prices). This is a complex and important issue. Converting natural lands to croplands can lead to the release of carbon stored in above- and below-ground biomass. Releasing this carbon in the form of CO_2 during land conversion to energy crop farming creates a carbon "debt," which may take a very long time to repay through the greenhouse gas benefits of the subsequent biofuel use. The use of degraded pastures or abandoned farmland, by contrast, rather than natural ecosystems, would incur minimal carbon debt, because there is limited CO_2 storage in these previously altered ecosystems.

At Ford, we are following the debates about biofuels closely. As we proceed, we need to consider how biofuels are derived and carefully review issues such as the potential net greenhouse gas benefits; political, economic, social and environmental concerns related to biofuel and petroleum use; and the management of land, food and water resources. We agree with the general consensus among scholars and industry experts that the current generation of biofuels have modest environmental benefits and are a first step toward cleaner transportation and energy independence. We are actively investigating the potential of next-generation biofuels that have greater environmental, energy security and economic benefits. We believe that improvements in the efficiency of farming technologies and biomass production processes, and the development of advanced biofuels, will significantly increase the benefits and long-term sustainability of biofuels. Even with these improvements, solving our climate change and energy security problems will require a multifaceted set of solutions, including new fuels, improvements in vehicle efficiency and changes in consumer driving patterns and practices.

---

1. J. E. Anderson, U. Kramer, T. J. Wallington, "Octane Numbers of Ethanol- and Methanol-Gasoline Blends Estimated from Molar Concentrations," ***Energy and Fuels***, 24, 6576 (2010).
2. J.E. Anderson, R.E. Baker, P.J. Hardigan, J.M. Ginder, T.J. Wallington. Society of Automotive Engineers Technical Paper 2009-01-2770. ***Energy Independence and Security Act of 2007: Implications for the U.S. Light-Duty Vehicle Fleet***.
3. J.B. Heywood, ***Internal Combustion Engine Fundamentals***, McGraw-Hill, New York 1988.
4. ***Ethanol: The Complete Energy Lifecycle Picture***, Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy, U.S. Department of Energy, March 2007.
5. S.A. Mueller, J.E. Anderson, and T.J. Wallington, "Biofuel Production and Food Prices," ***Biomass and Bioenergy***, 35(5) 1623-1632 (2011).

Migration to Alternative Fuels and Powertrains

IN THIS SECTION


Advanced Clean Diesel


HEVs


BEVs


PHEVs


Renewable Biofueled Vehicles


FCVs

Hydrogen Fuel Cell Vehicles (FCVs)

Ford Focus

FCVs are powered by an electric motor fueled by hydrogen burned in a fuel cell system. They emit just water vapor, without other tailpipe pollutants. Ford began testing a fleet of Focus FCVs in 2004 and continues to research and develop technologies necessary to commercialize FCVs.

2007	2011	2020	2030
NEAR TERM	MID TERM	LONG TERM	
Begin migration to advanced technology	Full implementation of known technology	Continue deploying advanced powertrains and alternative fuels and energy sources	

Hydrogen Fuel Cell Vehicles (FCVs)

Hydrogen fuel cell vehicles are similar to battery electric vehicles (BEVs) in that they use a high-voltage electric motor to propel the vehicle. Unlike BEVs, however, FCVs are equipped with a hydrogen fuel tank and a fuel cell system that generates electric power to drive the electric motor. So FCVs use on-board hydrogen stored in the fuel tank, while BEVs are powered by electric energy stored in the high-voltage battery. As a result, FCVs provide many of the environmental benefits of a battery electric vehicle but have a longer driving range.

The fuel cell system runs the vehicle by converting hydrogen and oxygen into energy through an electro-chemical reaction. It emits just water vapor, without other tailpipe pollutants. Therefore, FCVs are considered to be zero-emission vehicles. FCVs can also be hybridized with a high-voltage battery, to improve vehicle performance and better optimize the cost and robustness of the fuel cell system. In fact, all of our efforts to improve high-voltage electronics, electric motors, regenerative braking and hybrid battery technology on BEVs, hybrid electric vehicles and plug-in hybrids can be applicable to FCVs, if and when these vehicles become commercially viable.

We believe that hydrogen-powered fuel cell vehicles may be an important long-term solution for improving energy security and diversifying our energy sources, as well as for reducing greenhouse gas emissions, if hydrogen fuel emerges as a viable low-carbon energy carrier. Therefore, Ford has committed to significant hydrogen fuel cell research and development.

Technology Demonstration

Ford has been working on fuel cell vehicle development and technology demonstration for more than a decade. We developed the first research prototype FCV in 1999. In 2004, we introduced a technology demonstration fleet of FCVs using the Ford Focus as a base vehicle. The Focus FCV uses a Ballard fuel cell technology, called HyWay1. It is one of the industry's first hybridized fuel cell vehicles, meaning it has a battery system as well as a fuel cell system.

From 2004 to 2009, Ford participated in a technology demonstration program partially funded by the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE), as well as other demonstration programs in Canada and Europe. A total of 30 Ford Focus FCVs have been in operation in these programs. These vehicles have been tested to demonstrate durability and reliability; for example, they were subjected to driving tests at sub-zero temperatures and high altitudes to prove vehicle performance under a

range of customer-encountered driving environments. By 2009, these vehicles had accumulated more than a million driving miles without significant technical problems, thereby demonstrating the reliability of fuel cell powertrain systems in real-world driving conditions. The data collected from this fleet is critical for the further development of fuel cell technology. Based on the knowledge gained, we have completed the development and laboratory validation of our new fuel cell technology, called HyWay2/3. This new technology improves the robustness and "freeze start" capability of the fuel cell propulsion system.

Challenges of Commercialization

Even with the advances we have made in hydrogen technology over the past 10 years, we still have challenges to overcome before hydrogen FCVs can compete in the market with current vehicle technology. The cost and durability of the fuel cell system are the most significant challenges. For example, extensive DOE analysis has not yet revealed an automotive fuel cell technology that meets the DOE's targets for real-world commercialization, or that maintains proper performance throughout the targeted lifetime while staying within the targeted cost. There are also still significant challenges related to the cost and availability of hydrogen fuel and on-board hydrogen storage technology. To overcome these challenges and make fuel cell vehicle technology commercially viable, we believe further scientific breakthroughs and continued engineering refinements are required.

Research and Development

Given these significant challenges to commercialization, we believe that further investment in demonstrating hydrogen FCVs and integrating current FCV technology into existing vehicles are not high-value investments for Ford. Therefore, Ford has reprioritized its resources to concentrate on core fuel cell research that will help increase the commercialization potential of FCVs. For example, we are focusing on materials development and basic scientific research to solve cost and durability challenges.

Our materials research is focused on the membrane electrode assembly (MEA) and bipolar plates, which make up key cost and/or durability elements of the fuel cell stack. For example, we are working to develop a new fuel cell catalyst that will significantly reduce the use of precious metals, such as platinum, and we are exploring alternatives to expensive components, such as developing low-cost corrosion-resistant bipolar plates. Simultaneously, we are working to increase the power density of the individual fuel cell stack. This could potentially reduce the use of the expensive materials and components in the stack. MEA research is also crucial to our ability to optimize fuel cell stack operating conditions and reduce system complexity. We are working on the fuel cell stack research and development with our alliance partners: Daimler AG and the Automotive Fuel Cell Cooperation (AFCC), a Vancouver-based company owned by Ford, Daimler and Ballard.

We are also working to optimize the overall propulsion system architecture to take advantage of advances in fuel cell materials and lessons learned from our demonstration FCV fleet. By developing advanced computational modeling that will help us understand the mechanisms underlying ideal fuel cell functioning and anticipate failure modes under real-world usage, we are able to propose operating strategies and system architectures that minimize fuel cell propulsion system costs. These modeling tools support our fuel cell materials and system research.

On-board hydrogen storage is another critical challenge to the commercial viability of hydrogen FCVs. Current demonstration vehicles use compressed gaseous hydrogen storage. However, the high-pressure tanks required for this storage use expensive materials such as carbon fiber reinforcement. In addition, the current tanks are large and difficult to package in a vehicle without unacceptable losses in passenger or cargo space. Therefore, we are pursuing research on materials-based on-board hydrogen storage technology, including complex hydride and novel hydrogen sorbent technologies, which may ultimately achieve higher energy density and lower cost.

Hydrogen Refueling Infrastructure

Producing and distributing hydrogen fuel is another important hurdle on the road to implementing hydrogen-powered FCVs and hydrogen-powered internal combustion engines (H_2ICEs), which Ford led the automotive industry in developing commercially. The GHG reduction benefits of hydrogen fuel depend on what procedures and feedstocks are used to produce the hydrogen. Currently, the most state-of-the-art procedure is a distributed natural gas steam reforming process. However, when FCVs are run on hydrogen reformed from natural gas using this process, they do not provide significant environmental benefits on a well-to-wheels basis (due to GHG emissions from the natural gas reformation process). It would be necessary to employ carbon sequestration technologies in hydrogen production from fossil fuels or increase the use of renewable energy sources, to enable the hydrogen for hydrogen-fueled FCVs to provide significant environmental benefits.

Even if the challenges of producing hydrogen can be overcome, there is still no widespread hydrogen fueling system. Therefore, new infrastructure must be invested in, designed and executed throughout the country to make hydrogen-powered vehicles commercially attractive to Ford customers.

Working alone, Ford will not be able to overcome all of the challenges hydrogen vehicles face. That is why Ford is collaborating with a wide range of partners on the development of hydrogen vehicles, fuels and fueling systems. In addition to our work with the AFCC and Daimler described above, we are working with:

- The Freedom CAR and Fuel Partnership: a partnership between Ford, General Motors, Chrysler, five energy providers and the DOE to develop fuel cell technology, vehicles and hydrogen fuels that will provide freedom from imported oil and carbon-based fuel emissions; and
- The Clean Energy Partnership Berlin: a consortium of 13 corporate partners and the German government that is working to demonstrate the suitability of hydrogen as a fuel for everyday use.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Ford's Green Partnerships with Federal and State Governments

The 2007 Energy Independence and Security Act (EISA) continued the effort to transition interactions between automakers and the government on fuel economy standards from an adversarial relationship to a partnership. The EISA authorized tough standards for new vehicle fuel economy while creating the Section 136 Advanced Technology Vehicle Manufacturing Incentive Program. Section 136 authorized the U.S. Department of Energy (DOE) to make direct loans to eligible applicants for projects that re-equip, expand or establish manufacturing facilities in the U.S. to produce advanced technology vehicles or qualifying components, and also for engineering integration costs associated with such projects. This federal, $25 billion loan program sought to help automakers invest in the future and implement a new fuel economy mandate estimated by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration to cost $114 billion.

In June 2009, Ford, Nissan and Tesla were the first companies selected to participate in the Section 136 program after each demonstrated that they had top "green" technologies and met a stringent financial viability test required by the loan program. All three manufacturers offered advanced technology that could "move the needle" on better fuel economy and reduce oil imports.

This government-industry partnership should not be confused with emergency taxpayer assistance provided as part of the Troubled Asset Relief Program (TARP). In contrast to TARP, these loans were awarded based on merit and the potential of the programs to deliver significant fuel economy improvements. Also, the borrowers had to be deemed financially viable, and the funds will be fully repaid with interest. Ford's loan was fully collateralized.

This DOE loan program is an example of how successful government-industry partnerships can work to achieve public policy goals. The DOE provided low-cost loans to help re-tool U.S. manufacturing facilities for the production of fuel-efficient, advanced-technology vehicles that will result in higher fuel economy and lower emissions, while saving consumers money at the pump and reducing our dependence on foreign oil. U.S. taxpayers will make money on these loans as they are repaid.

Ford is investing billions of dollars in advanced technology vehicles in the U.S. over the duration of the approved loan application, and the loans will help Ford achieve its ambitious goals for fuel-efficient vehicles and technologies. Ford expects to receive funding of up to $5.9 billion through these DOE loans. We will use this funding in part to redesign 11 Ford facilities in the U.S. that make more fuel-efficient vehicles, including the Michigan, Louisville, Chicago and Kansas City Assembly Plants.

An outstanding example of how Section 136 partnership funds are being used is the production of the Ford Focus at the Michigan Assembly Plant (MAP). MAP is being transformed from a large SUV factory into a modern, flexible small-car plant that will produce the global Ford Focus. The new Focus will be one of up to 10 unique models to be built from Ford's new C-car platform, which is expected to generate total sales in all regions of 2 million units annually by 2012. The Focus is also one of four Ford vehicles that achieves more than 40 mpg. We began production of the all-new Focus at MAP in 2011. In addition, we will produce three of our new electrified vehicle offerings at MAP. In 2011, we will begin producing the Focus Electric, and in 2012 we will begin producing our next-generation C-MAX Hybrid and the C-MAX Energi, our first commercially available plug-in hybrid. The C-MAX vehicles are also based on our new C-platform. For more information about MAP please see: Case Study: Michigan Assembly Plant.

The new Focus exceeds Section 136's Advanced Technology Vehicle requirements by combining key technologies to achieve class-leading fuel economy, including: an advanced combustion engine, six-speed transmission, deceleration fuel shut-off, electric power-assisted steering, improved aerodynamics and lightweight materials.

Ford is investing approximately $550 million to introduce the North American market to Ford's global C-platform, which underpins the Focus and C-MAX vehicles. This investment will support more than 4,000 high-tech manufacturing and engineering jobs, not to mention more than 10,000 supplier jobs and 175,000 dealership positions.

In 2010 – and also with the support of DOE's Section 136 loan funds – we invested $400 million in our Chicago Assembly Plant to ready it for production of the all-new 2011 Ford Explorer. The 2011 Explorer has best-in-class fuel economy for its segment and offers up to 30 percent better fuel economy than the previous Explorer model. It will offer our 2.0L I-4 EcoBoost™ engine, which delivers superior power and fuel economy. This redesign includes investment in advanced quality control and flexible manufacturing systems, and also resulted in Ford adding 1,200 new jobs at the plant. The plant will also continue production of the Ford Taurus and Lincoln MKS sedans. Our reinvestment in and redesign of the Chicago Assembly Plant to produce more fuel-efficient vehicles is especially symbolic, as this is Ford's oldest assembly plant still in operation in North America. It formerly produced the Ford Model T and Model A vehicles and produced military

Related Links

This Report:

- Michigan Assembly Plant
- EcoBoost™

vehicles during World War II.

We are also investing $600 million to transform our Louisville Assembly Plant into a state-of-the-art facility, which will be our most-flexible high-volume plant in the world. When this plant reopens in 2011, it will produce our next-generation Ford Escape. This investment will result in 1,800 incremental jobs.

Finally, the DOE partnership is helping to fund our $400 million investment in our Kansas City Assembly Plant, to ready the plant for production of a new vehicle, yet to be announced. This plant previously built the Ford Escape, which will shift production to the Louisville Assembly Plant. The $400 million investment will pay for installing a new body shop, new tooling and other upgrades. The Kansas City plant will continue to produce the Ford F-150 on a separate production line.

Ford's sustainability commitments have received state government support as well. Working in close partnership with the state of Michigan, Ford received incentives and tax credits totaling $188 million to help in the continuous transformation of MAP. In addition to building the next-generation hybrid in Michigan, these incentives enabled Ford to bring advanced lithium-ion battery system design, development and assembly in-house.

Ford also received a $2 million grant from the state of Michigan to install a large, stationary battery-based energy storage facility with 750 kw capacity and 2 MWh of storage. This facility supports the state's "smart-grid" development initiatives as well as Ford's efforts to develop battery technology and secondary uses for vehicle batteries. As part of this facility, Ford is demonstrating the possibility for using vehicle batteries as stationary power storage devices after their useful life as vehicle power sources is over. Ford is participating in this project in partnership with DTE Energy, a Michigan-based energy provider. DTE Energy has installed a 500 kw solar photovoltaic (PV) electricity generation system at the demonstration facility, which will produce some of the energy to be stored in Ford's stationary battery storage facility. It is the largest PV array in Michigan. The solar PV system was funded by DTE Energy to support Ford's sustainability efforts and to help the state of Michigan meet its renewable energy production requirements. As part of this project, Ford developed 10 electric vehicle charging stations, which demonstrate advanced battery charging technologies and associated integration with renewable energy and other smart-grid advances.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Progress and Performance

Vehicle + Fuel + Driver = GHG emissions

How is Ford doing in its quest to reduce greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions? Based on analyses of lifecycle vehicle carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions, approximately 80 to 90 percent of GHGs are emitted while the vehicle is in use, rather than during its manufacture or disposal. The in-use emissions depend on three major factors:

1. The fuel economy of the vehicles, which in turn depends on many characteristics of the vehicles themselves (such as their weight, powertrain and aerodynamics).
2. The well-to-wheels greenhouse gas profile[1] of the fuels used in the vehicles.
3. How the vehicles are used and maintained by their drivers.

Our shorthand for this is "Vehicle + Fuel + Driver = GHG emissions." This section reviews our progress in reducing these emissions, as well as our progress reducing emissions from our facilities, our logistics and our supply chain.

1. In other words, emissions resulting from making, distributing and using the fuel.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Vehicle

Vehicle + Fuel + Driver = GHG emissions

ON THIS PAGE

Our Approach

To meet our climate change commitments, we are focused in the near term on implementing the most cost-effective fuel-efficiency technologies across a large volume of our vehicles, as well as on introducing new products that offer improved fuel efficiency without compromising style or performance. We are concentrating on affordable and near-term sustainable technology solutions that can be used not for hundreds or thousands of cars – but for millions of cars, because that is how Ford can truly make a difference.

For example, we are introducing a wide variety of new engine and transmission technologies, as well as electrical system improvements, weight reductions and aerodynamic improvements that will deliver significant fuel-economy benefits for millions of drivers in the near term. Between 2008 and 2013, we will introduce 60 new or significantly upgraded engines, transmissions and transaxles globally to help us improve fuel economy and reduce carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions across our global fleet.

We are continuing to implement the EcoBoost™ engine, a key technology in our fuel-efficiency strategy, which uses gasoline turbocharged direct-injection technology. EcoBoost delivers 10 to 20 percent better fuel economy, 15 percent fewer CO_2 emissions and superior driving performance compared to larger-displacement engines. Because EcoBoost is affordable and can be applied to existing gasoline engines, we can implement it across our vehicle fleet, bringing fuel-efficiency benefits to a wide range of our customers. We are on track to equip as much as 80 percent of our global lineup and 90 percent of our North American lineup with EcoBoost engines by 2013. That's about 1.5 million engines. For more information on the EcoBoost and our other near-, mid- and long-term fuel economy improvement technologies, please see our Sustainable Technologies and Alternative Fuels Plan.

back to top

Results

In the U.S., we continue to improve the fuel economy of our new and refreshed vehicles. For example, the Ford Focus, Fusion and Mustang and Lincoln MKZ car vehicle lines, as well as the Ford F-series, Escape and Edge truck and crossover lines, all improved their fuel economy from the 2010 to the 2011 model years. As seen in the graphic below, Ford's 2011 model year U.S. vehicles rank better than the industry fuel economy average in six of 13 categories, worse in one and the same in six.

For the 2010 model year, our fleet CO_2 emissions increased slightly by about 1 percent relative to the 2009 model year, but improved 11 percent compared to the 2006 model year. Preliminary data for the 2011 model year project that the Corporate Average Fuel Economy (CAFE) values for the car and truck fleets will be about the same as the car and truck fleet averages for the 2010 model year. On an overall fleet basis, preliminary estimates indicate a 2011 CAFE improvement of 2.9 percent compared to 2010.

The reason the overall fleet average can improve while the individually calculated car and truck fleet averages remain about the same is that there have been changes to the vehicles included in the car and truck categories. New 2011 model year fleet changes include small, front-wheel-drive SUVs moving to the car fleet and medium-duty passenger vehicles being added to the light-duty truck fleet. For the car fleet, the movement of the front-wheel-drive Escape, Mariner, Edge and MKX to the car fleet largely offsets the car fleet improvements that would otherwise be seen due

Related Links

This Report:
- Our Strategy: Blueprint for Sustainability
- Product Sustainability Index

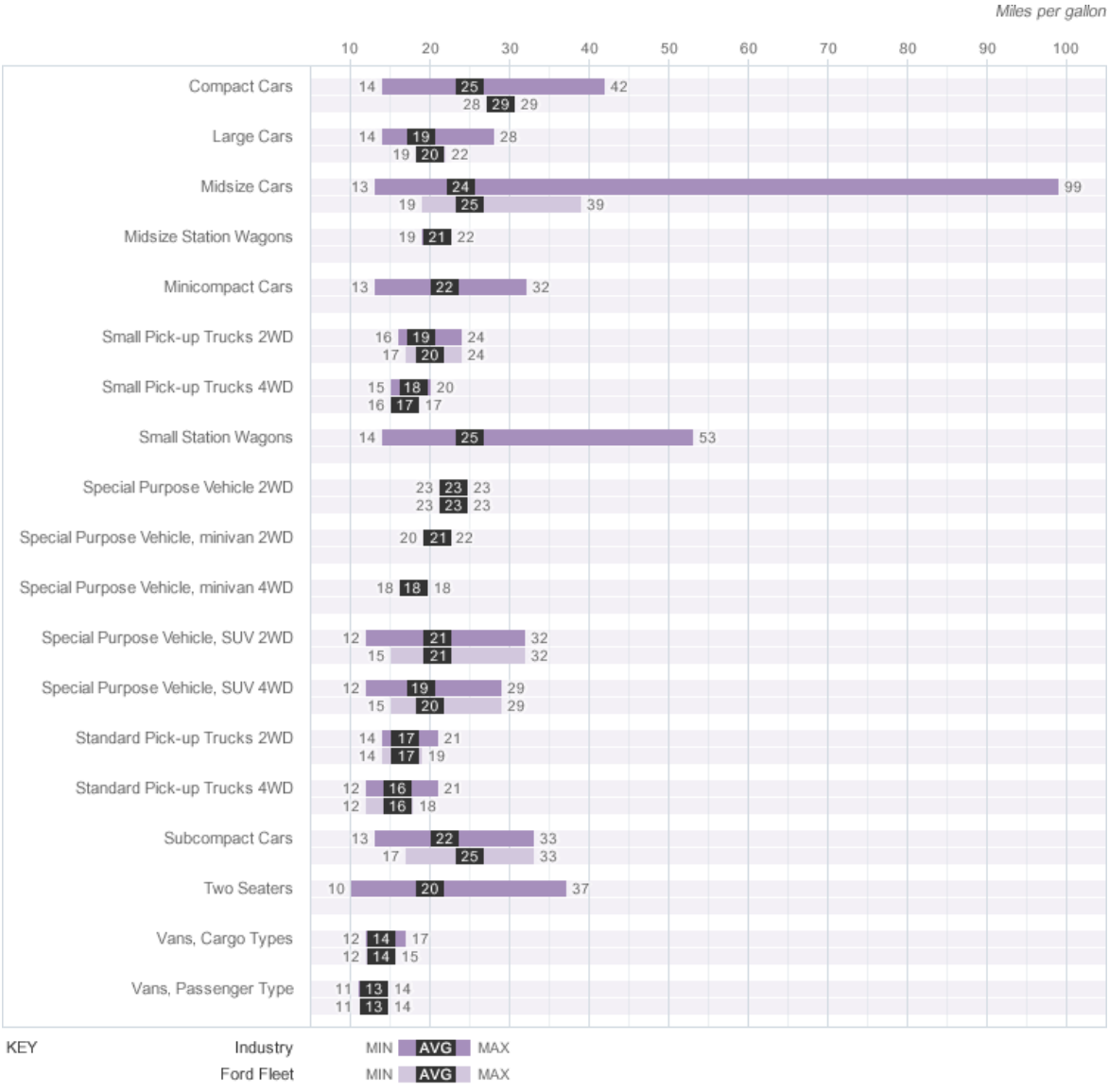
Vehicle Websites:
- Ford Fusion Hybrid
- Lincoln MKZ Hybrid
- Ford Fiesta
- Transit Connect

to the introduction of the Fiesta. For the light-duty truck fleet, the movement of the front-wheel-drive Escape, Mariner, Edge and MKX to the car fleet largely offsets the truck fleet improvements that would be seen due to increased fuel efficiency of the new F-150 and Explorer. So although our overall fleet fuel economy continues an improving trend, moving the more fuel-efficient crossover vehicles from the truck to the car category reduces the average fuel efficiency of both categories.

In Europe, we have reduced the average CO_2 emissions of 2010 model year vehicles by 8.1 percent compared to the 2006 model year.[1] We have achieved this through the introduction of a variety of innovations, such as advanced common rail diesel engines available across the European model range – including the ECOnetic range of low-CO_2 vehicles – and the use of lightweight materials.

Fuel Economy of U.S. Ford Vehicles by Segment

Chart | Table



Miles per gallon

	Industry			Ford		
	Minimum	Average	Maximum	Minimum	Average	Maximum
Compact Cars	14	25	42	28	29	29
Large Cars	14	19	28	19	20	22
Midsize Cars	13	24	99	19	25	39
Midsize Station Wagons	19	21	22	-	-	-
Minicompact Cars	13	22	32	-	-	-
Small Pick-up Trucks 2WD	16	19	24	17	20	24
Small Pick-up Trucks 4WD	15	18	20	16	17	17
Small Station Wagons	14	25	53	-	-	-
Special Purpose Vehicle 2WD	23	23	23	23	23	23

Special Purpose Vehicle, minivan 2WD	20	21	22	-	-	-
Special Purpose Vehicle, minivan 4WD	18	18	18	-	-	-
Special Purpose Vehicle, SUV 2WD	12	21	32	15	21	32
Special Purpose Vehicle, SUV 4WD	12	19	29	15	20	29
Standard Pick-up Trucks 2WD	14	17	21	14	17	19
Standard Pick-up Trucks 4WD	12	16	21	12	16	18
Subcompact Cars	13	22	33	17	25	33
Two Seaters	10	20	37	-	-	-
Vans, Cargo Types	12	14	17	12	14	15
Vans, Passenger Type	11	13	14	11	13	14
Total	**10**	**21**	**99**	**11**	**21**	**39**

As of May 2011, many of our vehicles meet the commitment to be best in class or among the leaders in their segment for fuel economy. For example:[2]

- The 2011 Ford Edge has unsurpassed highway fuel economy among midsize crossover vehicles with V6 engines, with an EPA-estimated 19 mpg city and 27 mpg highway. The 2011 Edge also has unsurpassed horsepower in its segment.
- The 2011 Lincoln MKX has best-in-class fuel economy among luxury midsize crossover vehicles, with an EPA-estimated 19 mpg city and 26 mpg highway.
- The 2011 Ford Explorer has best-in-class fuel economy in the large utility segment, with an EPA-estimated 17 mpg city and 25 mpg highway, 25 percent better than the previous Explorer model. The Explorer with the 2.0L, I-4 EcoBoost™ engine, which will be available later in 2011, improves fuel economy by 30 percent over the previous model.
- The 2011 Ford F-150 delivers best-in-class fuel economy among full-size pickup trucks, with its 3.7L V6 4X2 option. The F-150 with a 3.5L V6 EcoBoost engine has unsurpassed fuel economy with 16 mpg city, 22 mpg highway; the 3.7L V6 has unsurpassed fuel economy with an EPA-rated 23 mpg highway; and the 5.0L V8 has unsurpassed fuel economy with an EPA-rated 21 mpg highway. The 2011 F-150 also has best-in-class torque and towing and maximum payload.[3]
- The Ford C-MAX with the 1.6L I-4 EcoBoost engine, which will be introduced in North America in the near future, is projected to have best-in-class fuel economy in the seven-passenger C-car segment.
- The 2012 Ford Focus SE with the SFE package is among the leaders in its segment for fuel economy, with an EPA-estimated 40 mpg highway, a 15 percent improvement over the previous model.
- In India, the 2010 Ford Figo with the 1.4L TDCi engine has best-in-class fuel economy for its segment at 20 km/L. Also, the Ford Endeavour 4X2 automatic with Duratorq® engine is among the leaders for fuel economy in the premium SUV segment, at 10.7 km/L.
- The 2011 Ford Fiesta SE with the SFE package, which was introduced in North America in 2010, delivers best-in-class fuel economy for its segment with an EPA-estimated 40 mpg on the highway, topping both the Honda Fit and the Toyota Yaris. The Fiesta uses the combination of a Ti-VCT 1.6L engine, PowerShift dual-clutch transmission and other fuel-economy technologies to accomplish this best-in-class performance.
- The 2011 Ford Mustang coupe with a new Ti-VCT 3.7L V6 engine and six-speed automatic transmission gets an EPA-estimated 31 mpg on the highway. This vehicle delivers superior performance – including 305 horsepower – and better fuel economy than any other V6-powered sports coupe in the world.
- The 2011 Mustang GT, featuring a new 5.0L V8, delivers up to 26 mpg on the highway – better than any competitor – as well as 412 total horsepower and 390 lb.-ft. of torque.
- The 2011 Ford Super Duty® truck with a 6.7L Power Stroke® V8 turbocharged diesel leads its class in fuel economy, towing and hauling. This engine also has significantly lower tailpipe emissions than previous models.[4]
- The 2011 Ford Escape Hybrid leads its segment with an EPA-estimated 34 mpg city.
- The 2011 Ford Ranger with an I-4 engine and manual transmission leads its segment with an EPA-rated 27 mpg highway.
- The 2011 Ford Fusion Hybrid has best-in-class fuel economy for midsize sedans, with an EPA-estimated 41 mpg city and 34 mpg highway.[5]
- The 2011 Ford Fiesta ECOnetic with 1.6L Duratorq TDCi diesel engine is one of the most fuel-efficient five-seat family cars in Europe, and it emits only 98 g/km of CO_2.
- The new Ford Mondeo ECOnetic features a specially calibrated 115 PS (85 kW) version of the 1.6L Duratorq TDCi engine equipped with a standard diesel particulate filter. Due to a combination of changes compared to the standard Mondeo, the second-generation Mondeo ECOnetic is delivering a combined fuel consumption of just 4.3 L/100km (65.6 mpg UK),[6] which translates into average CO_2 emissions of 114 g/km – an important tax break point in some European markets.
- The new Ford Focus ECOnetic, which will be launched in Europe in 2012, is expected to use less than 3.5 liters of fuel per 100 kilometers (equal to 80 mpg UK)[6] and have CO_2 emissions below 95 g/km – better than all compact cars currently on the market in Europe.

Some examples of our vehicles by region are below.

back to top

North America

In North America, we continued to introduce new vehicles that use the technologies identified in our technology blueprint and offer outstanding fuel economy and reduce CO_2 emissions. For example, during 2010 and early 2011, we:

- Continued to introduce new vehicles with best-in-class fuel economy, including the 2011 Ford Edge, Explorer and F-150 and the Lincoln MKX, all of which have unsurpassed fuel economy in their respective segments.[7] Please see best-in-class list above for more vehicles with outstanding fuel economy.
- Introduced the Ford Fiesta, our global compact car, which uses the PowerShift dual-clutch transmission and other fuel-economy technologies to accomplish best-in-class fuel economy.[7]
- Began production of the Transit Connect Electric, the first of five electrified vehicles planned for North America by 2012. Ford is electrifying platforms – versus single vehicles – to offer customers the most choice. Three vehicles will be introduced based on the Ford Focus C-car platform: the Focus Electric, the C-MAX Energi plug-in hybrid and C-MAX Hybrid, followed by another next-generation hybrid sedan. (See the electrification case study for details.)
- Continued to expand the use of our EcoBoost engines, which significantly improve the fuel economy of gasoline engines. We will equip as much as 90 percent of our North American lineup with EcoBoost engines by 2013.

back to top

Europe

Ford already offers one of the broadest low-CO_2 vehicle portfolios in Europe. In 2008, we began launching our ECOnetic line of vehicles. These ultra-low-CO_2 versions of select Ford diesel vehicles leverage several advanced fuel-saving technologies. The ECOnetic name was chosen because it links ecologically sensitive technology to our “energy in motion” design philosophy, which combines driving quality and emotional styling. Our ECOnetic cars use a combination of the latest common-rail diesel powertrains and other carefully selected features engineered to reduce CO_2 emissions to a minimum. These include: high-strength steels and other lightweight materials; electric power-assisted steering; an aerodynamics kit, including lowered ride height and aerodynamic details such as wheel covers and wheel deflectors; low-rolling-resistance tires; and our Auto Start/Stop and Active Grill Shutter.

With the new generations of the Ford Mondeo ECOnetic in 2011 and the new Ford Focus ECOnetic in 2012, we will extend the availability of best-in-class or among-best-in-class, extremely low-CO_2 vehicles, which now include the following:

- The Ford Fiesta 1.6L 95 PS TDCi, available since January 2009, with a fuel economy of 3.7l/100km (63.6 mpg (UK))[6], emitting only 98 g/km of CO_2.
- The new Ford Focus ECOnetic, which debuted at the Amsterdam Motorshow in April 2011 and will be launched in 2012, is expected to use less than 3.5 liters of fuel per 100km (equal to 80 mpg UK) and CO_2 emissions below 95 g/km – better than all compact cars currently on the market in Europe.
- The new Mondeo ECOnetic with a specially calibrated 115 PS (85 kW) version of the 1.6L Ford Duratorq TDCi engine equipped with a standard cDPF. Due to a combination of changes compared to the standard Mondeo, the second-generation Mondeo ECOnetic is delivering a combined fuel consumption of just 4.3 l/100km (65.6 mpg UK), which translates into average CO_2 emissions of 114 g/km – an important tax break point in some European markets.

The following table highlights the fuel economy and CO_2 improvements of the ECOnetic models introduced thus far.

Model	Fuel Economy[8] L/100km	CO_2 Emissions
2012 Ford Focus ECOnetic, with 1.6L Duratorq TDCi diesel engine	<3.5	<95 g/km
2011 Ford Mondeo ECOnetic, with 1.6L Duratorq TDCi diesel engine	4.3	114 kg/km
2011 Ford Fiesta ECOnetic, with 1.6L Duratorq TDCi diesel engine	3.7	98 kg/km

After the successful introduction of the new EcoBoost gasoline engine family in the U.S., Ford launched 2.0L and 1.6L EcoBoost engines in Europe in 2010. These turbocharged, direct-injection gasoline engines will deliver up to 20 percent better fuel economy and fewer CO_2 emissions compared to conventional gasoline engines.

In addition, our global electric vehicle plan is extending to Europe with five full electric or hybrid vehicles. Specifically, Ford will launch two zero-emission full battery electric vehicles, including the Transit Connect Electric light commercial vehicle in 2011 followed by the Ford Focus Electric in 2012. The Ford C-MAX Hybrid and C-MAX Energi plug-in hybrid will launch in 2013, together with another hybrid model.

Ford of Europe's innovative Product Sustainability Index (PSI) shows how the vision of sustainability can be made operational. By combining comprehensive sustainability criteria into the earliest stages of the product development process, Ford's PSI provides a groundbreaking design-for-sustainability tool. Designers can use it to assess the lifecycle CO_2 emissions of a vehicle, and consumers can use it to understand a vehicle's footprint.

back to top

Asia Pacific and Africa

In our Asia Pacific and Africa region, we are focusing our near-term fuel-efficiency efforts on the systematic implementation of advanced diesel and EcoBoost engines, as well as advanced transmission technology. In China we currently offer the Ford Mondeo with an EcoBoost engine and PowerShift transmission. This product is best in its segment for fuel economy in the China market. We have also launched the Ford Fiesta with a Ti-VCT engine and six-speed automatic transmission across most of our Asia Pacific and Africa markets, making it among the leaders in its segment for fuel economy.

In India, we introduced the Ford Figo in March 2010, which has two engine options: a best-in-class, fuel-efficient 1.4L TDCi diesel and a very competitive 1.2L gasoline engine. The Figo introduction is highly significant to our success in India, as our studies show fuel economy to be the most important criteria in purchase consideration in that country.

In Australia, we will launch an EcoBoost version of the Ford Mondeo in 2011 and of the Ford Falcon in early 2012. Also in Australia, Ford's next-generation EcoLPi liquid-injection LPG system for the Falcon will go on sale in mid-2011, providing customers with the most advanced LPG technology on the market.

back to top

South America

In South America, we are improving fuel economy by introducing some of the efficient engine and transmission technologies currently used in North America, and by using technologies specifically relevant to the widespread use of biofuels in Brazil. For example, we have implemented improved engine compression ratios – or the ratio in which the air and fuel mixture is compressed in the engine combustion chamber – on flexible-fuel vehicles in Brazil. This optimizes fuel efficiency in vehicles using biofuels, which have a higher octane rating than petroleum-based gasoline. We have also improved the gearing ratios, aerodynamics and rolling resistance of our South American models, further increasing fuel economy. We introduced a new, more-efficient "Sigma" engine on the 2010 South American Focus, which also will be extended to other vehicles. This engine will improve efficiency compared to current engines through reduced internal friction and improved electronic throttle controls. For the 2012 model year and beyond, we are planning to introduce even more fuel-efficient twin independent variable cam timing engines and direct-injection engines, Battery Management Systems, smart alternator systems, dual-clutch automatic transmissions and improved aerodynamics.

back to top

1. These data do not include Volvo.
2. The vehicles listed here are best in class for fuel economy based on U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) segments, unless otherwise noted. Alternative segments are used where EPA segments do not provide a detailed breakdown of vehicle types. For example, the EPA only uses one category for SUVs, and it includes crossovers, compact SUVs and large SUVs.
3. F-150 fuel efficiency is compared to other high-volume pickup trucks, not including low-volume special fuel-economy models.
4. Based on a Ford drive-cycle test of comparably equipped 2011 Ford and 2010/11 competitive models. The class is Full-Size Pickups over 8,500 lbs. gross vehicle weight rating.
5. Midsize sedan segment based on the R.L. Polk segment definition.
6. This fuel economy number was calculated according to the European Fuel Economy Directive EU 93/116/EEC, which uses European drive cycles. They differ from fuel economy calculations developed in the U.S. or other regions of the world. The fuel economy figures in mpg are based on the UK imperial gallon, which is 1.2 times the U.S. gallon.
7. Based on adjusted city/highway fuel economy label values from the 2011 MY EPA Fuel Economy Guide.
8. These fuel economy numbers are calculated according to the European Fuel Economy Directive EU 93/116/EEC, which uses European drive cycles. They differ from fuel economy calculations developed in the U.S. or other regions of the world.

Fuel

Vehicle + **Fuel** + Driver = GHG emissions

To reduce the lifecycle greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions to the levels required for carbon dioxide (CO_2) stabilization requires the development of fuels with lower fossil carbon content.[1] Such fuels could then augment improvements in the fuel economy of our vehicles.

Electrification

Electrification addresses both energy security and climate change concerns, because electricity can be made from a wide variety of fuels, including domestic sources and renewable energy. Electrification also offers flexibility in tailoring lower-carbon solutions based on locally available fuels and technology options like carbon capture and storage.

Ford foresees a future that includes a variety of electrified vehicles, something we call "Power of Choice." We are electrifying existing, traditional vehicle lines rather than creating unique electrified vehicle models. This way, our customers can choose from a variety of vehicle powertrains, including hybrid electric vehicles, plug-in hybrids, and full battery electric vehicles. Our comprehensive electrification strategy touches all aspects of the electrification ownership experience, seeking to make it engaging, empowering and easy to live with. Ford is working with partners such as Best Buy, Microsoft and MapQuest to help transition customers easily to a new form of transportation.

In late 2010, Ford delivered the initial units of its first all-electric vehicle – the Transit Connect Electric. Full production of the Transit Connect Electric will ramp up in the U.S. in 2011. Also in 2011, the Ford Focus Electric, Ford's global, all-electric car, will be sold in 19 initial U.S. markets, then expand to Europe. In 2012, we will launch our next generation of hybrids, which will include the C-MAX Hybrid, the plug-in C-MAX Energi hybrid and another hybrid, all of which will use next-generation lithium-ion batteries. In Europe, we plan to deliver the same five full-electric or hybrid vehicles by 2013.

In early 2011, we announced an innovative charging station for the Focus Electric, developed jointly with Leviton, which allows the Ford Focus Electric to charge in just over three hours when using a 240V charge station installed in the customer's garage – half the time that it takes our competitors to charge up.

By 2020, we expect that 10 to 25 percent of Ford's global sales will be composed of electrified vehicles. This includes battery electric, hybrid and plug-in hybrid vehicles, with the majority coming from hybrid vehicles, and plug-in hybrids seeing the most significant share increase.

Expanding electrification holds tremendous promise, but a range of implementation challenges must be considered. These challenges relate to cost, battery technology, the development of charging infrastructure, the interface with utilities and how to ensure that potential emissions-reduction benefits are realized. Ford is working with municipalities and electric utility partners to address many of these challenges.

Please see the Electrification section for a full discussion of electrification issues and our approach to bringing electric vehicles to market.

Biofuels

Biofuel use is expanding globally, with bioethanol made from corn, beets or sugar cane substituting for gasoline, and biodiesel derived from plant oils substituting for diesel fuel. In the U.S. in 2007, federal legislation expanded the Renewable Fuel Standard (RFS), mandating a significant increase in the use of biofuels by 2022.

While current corn-based bioethanol production in the U.S. is estimated to provide a modest (~20 percent) reduction in vehicle GHG emissions on a well-to-wheels basis, next-generation biofuels such as lignocellulosic bioethanol could offer up to a 90 percent GHG reduction benefit.[2] Building a substantial fleet of flexible-fuel vehicles (FFVs) provides a bridge to the widespread use of lower-carbon biofuels in the future.

Ford has a long history of developing vehicles that run on renewable biofuels. We produced the first flexible-fuel vehicle approximately 100 years ago: a Model T capable of running on gasoline or ethanol. Ford offers 23 models in North America, South America, Europe and Asia that can run on ethanol blends greater than E10 (i.e., containing 10 percent ethanol and 90 percent gasoline). Ford has manufactured more than five million FFVs, including 3 million in the U.S. and nearly 2 million in Brazil.

Related Links

This Report:
- Electrification: A Closer Look

In Europe, Ford is a market leader and pioneer in bioethanol-powered FFVs, with more than 70,000 vehicles delivered to customers since 2001. Ford FFV models are now available in many European markets that offer a dedicated fuel infrastructure.

In certain Asian markets, Ford offers models that are capable of operating on E20.

In the U.S., we met our commitment to doubling the number of FFVs in our lineup by 2010, and we are continuing to produce substantial numbers of E85 flexible fuel vehicles.

Alternative fuels pose a classic chicken-and-egg problem – automakers can produce a range of products capable of running on fuels with varying carbon content, but the benefits are only realized if energy providers bring the fuels to market and consumers demand both the vehicle and the fuel. Since 2006, Ford has produced more than 1.5 million flexible fuel vehicles. Yet today, less than 2 percent of refueling stations in the U.S. offer E85. And the policy shift to increase ethanol blends rather than increase E85 availability creates questions about the potential growth and viability of E85. Furthermore, the development and production of FFVs increases engineering workload and vehicle cost. This investment into FFVs becomes increasingly difficult to justify, particularly if fuel availability is not developing.

The lack of progress on E85 has increased the focus on mid-level ethanol blends. The potential introduction of such blends creates an opportunity to increase the octane rating of the new fuel. Ethanol has an octane rating greater than today's gasoline, so that when the fuels are mixed, the resulting fuel blend should have higher octane than base gasoline. Many of today's advanced engines currently on the road are programmed to improve the efficiency of the engine just short of the point where the consumer would experience engine knock. For such engines, an increase in the octane rating of the fuel would result in improved vehicle efficiency. Further improvement to engine efficiency (through increased compression ratio and downsizing) could be achieved if manufacturers knew the octane rating of the fuel will be increased.

In the long term, we believe that next-generation biofuels made from a variety of feedstocks, including agricultural wastes (particularly lignocellulosic material) will be an important part of the GHG emission-reduction equation and will help address concerns about current-generation biofuels, including the potential competition between food and fuel crops and the conversion of natural lands to fuel production. These issues are explored in more detail in the Sustainable Technologies and Alternative Fuels Plan. To learn about Ford's perspective on biofuels public policy issues, please see Climate Change Policy and Partnerships.

---

1. Of course, there is not only a need to reduce the fossil carbon content of the fuel itself, but to reduce any fossil-based CO_2 emitted during feed-stock excavation, fuel production and distribution.
2. *Ethanol: The Complete Lifecycle Picture*, Office of Energy Efficiency and Renewable Energy, U.S. Department of Energy, March 2007.

Driver

Vehicle + Fuel + Driver = GHG emissions

Paradoxically, the "driver" portion of the GHG emissions equation holds the potential for substantial emission reductions at minimal cost, but it is often overlooked. Ultimately, drivers decide which vehicles and fuels they will purchase and how those vehicles will be driven. While our major focus is on the vehicles we make, we have also reached out to drivers around the world to promote the practice of "eco-driving." We do this by providing training, information and vehicle technology that helps drivers learn how to drive using the least fuel possible.

Information Technology

Ford's in-vehicle technology system – MyFord Touch™ – offers an array of real-time information on fuel-economy performance that can coach drivers to get more miles to the gallon and save on fuel costs. In addition, MyFord Touch's map-based navigation system offers an Eco-Route option that quickly calculates the most fuel-efficient route a driver can take to get from A to B. Ford testing shows that Eco-Route can help achieve fuel economy gains of up to 15 percent. This technology will be available across our full range of vehicles, from affordable small cars to high-end luxury vehicles. It debuted on the 2011 Ford Edge and Lincoln MKX crossovers, followed by the 2011 Ford Explorer and 2012 Ford Focus in North America. By 2015, approximately 80 percent of Ford's North American models will offer MyFord Touch, with similar percentages predicted for the world market. (MyFord Touch with SYNC® will be launched in Europe in 2012, initially on the Ford Focus.)

SmartGauge™ with EcoGuide is a dashboard display in the Ford Fusion and Lincoln MKZ Hybrids that gives drivers information to help them maximize fuel efficiency. The system provides information on current fuel economy, fuel economy history, odometer reading, engine coolant temperature, fuel level, battery charge status, electric vehicle mode, tachometer, engine output power, battery output power, power to wheels, engine pull-up threshold and accessory power consumption. Drivers can use the system to track their long-term fuel economy progress and illustrate it either with a traditional chart or using an innovative display of "growing leaves and vines." The more efficient a customer is, the more lush the leaves and vines, creating a visual reward for the driver's efforts. In addition, the real-time system feedback allows drivers to assess and modify their driving habits to achieve maximum fuel economy.

The EcoMode system that was first presented in the Ford Focus ECOnetic in Europe in 2009 has been made available in a wider range of vehicles. This system monitors the key parameters for optimal fuel consumption that drivers can affect by changing their driving behavior, including gear shifting, anticipation (i.e., driving as consistently and smoothly as possible) and motorway driving (i.e., driving with the most efficient speed on highways and country roads). In addition, the system considers the percentage of cold-engine short trips. Through this monitoring process, Ford EcoMode generates a driver profile with a scoring system for these driving parameters and offers information on how to improve fuel economy over time. This process can be translated into driver advice that can help make the best use of the vehicle's technology. The system will be implemented in more European Ford models in the future and in the North American 2012 Ford Focus.

Eco-Driving Information and Training

Ford has demonstrated that drivers who practice "eco-driving" can improve their fuel economy by an average of 24 percent. Eco-driving tips are available to the public on Ford's website, and online training is available through the Ford Driving Skills for Life (FDSFL) program. In addition, a web-based eco-driving program has been available to all U.S. salaried Ford employees since 2006.

Ford began work on the eco-driving concept in 2000, when we first offered an eco-driving program through our German dealerships, in partnership with the German Federation of Driving Instructor Associations and the German Road Safety Council. That program trains drivers in conservation-minded driving and vehicle maintenance habits. It uses specially trained and certified instructors to run programs for several target groups, including fleet drivers and customers. By the end of 2009, more than 16,000 German drivers had been "eco-trained" under real-world conditions.

In 2010 Ford's eco-driving training concept was recognized as a model for driver training with a "Good Practice Energy Efficiency" award from dena, the official German Energy Agency. The recognition was for the one-hour "compact course" version of the training. All of the Ford eco-driving program details, measurements and consumer surveys were analyzed and evaluated to ensure they meet dena's stringent criteria for good practice. Ford is the only automaker to receive

Related Links

Corporate.ford.com:
- Eco-Driving

Ford Websites:
- Driving Skills for Life

this recognition for its driver training programs, which benefits both the driver and the environment.

In Asia Pacific and Africa, Ford launched the FDSFL driver training program in 2008 with a "train-the-trainers" workshop in Bangkok, Thailand. At the workshop, Ford professionals from Germany trained two to three representatives from the Philippines, Vietnam, Thailand and Indonesia. The FDSFL program was customized to address the higher average age of beginner drivers in the region, as well as the unique driving environments within each market. It places equal emphasis on safe driving and eco-driving, as customers in the region are interested in both.

In 2009 and 2010, we held "train-the-trainers" workshops in Shanghai, China, and Chennai, India, and continued with the successful roll-out of the program to China, Taiwan, India and South Africa. Australia and Malaysia will launch FDSFL programs in 2011, bringing to 10 the number of Asia Pacific and Africa markets that offer the safe driver program. More than 33,000 licensed drivers have participated in FDSFL from its launch through 2010.

Ford is also helping drivers achieve efficient driving habits through Ford UK's "Econo-Check" program. Through the program, Ford technicians install a monitoring device that collects a week's worth of data on a driver's habits. The driving data is analyzed, looking for factors that affect fuel economy – for example, acceleration, point of gear shifting, engine speed and engine coolant temperature. Ford then provides the driver with a personalized recommendation on how they can alter their driving style for maximum efficiency. The modest fee for the service also includes a check-up of the vehicle itself to identify items that could affect fuel economy.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Facilities

IN THIS SECTION

Related Links

External Websites:

- EPA Energy Star
- The Climate Registry
- Chicago Climate Exchange
- E.U. Emissions Trading Scheme

Ford has been a leader in facilities-related greenhouse gas (GHG) and energy-use reductions, public reporting of our GHG emissions, and participation in GHG reduction and trading programs.

In 2010, we adopted a goal to reduce our facility carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions by 30 percent by 2025 on a per-vehicle basis. This CO_2 goal, which is also based on our stabilization commitment, complements our longstanding facility energy use reduction targets.

GHG Reporting Initiatives

- We were the first automaker to join The Climate Registry (TCR), a voluntary carbon disclosure project that links several state-sponsored GHG emissions-reporting efforts, including the California Climate Action Registry and the Eastern Climate Registry. As TCR members, we must demonstrate environmental stewardship by voluntarily committing to measure, independently verify and publicly report GHG emissions on an annual basis using the TCR's General Reporting Protocol.
- We were the first automaker to participate in GHG reporting initiatives in China, Australia, the Philippines and Mexico. Ford's first report was used as the template for subsequent reporting in Mexico's program.
- We voluntarily report GHG emissions in the U.S. and Canada.
- We were the first, and remain the only, automaker participating in the Chicago Climate Exchange (CCX), North America's first GHG emissions-reduction and trading program.
- Since 2005, GHG emissions from our European manufacturing facilities have been regulated through the EU Emission Trading Scheme. These regulations apply to five Ford facilities in the UK, Belgium and Spain.
- The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) issued a final rule on September 22, 2009, establishing a national GHG reporting system. Facilities with production processes that fall into certain industrial source categories, or that contain boilers and process heaters and emit 25,000 or more metric tons per year of GHGs, are required to submit annual GHG emission reports to the EPA. Facilities subject to the rule were required to begin collecting data as of January 1, 2010, and to submit an annual report for calendar year 2010 by September 30, 2011. Many of our facilities in the U.S. will be required to submit reports. Our proactive approach and early action on GHG reporting globally has prepared us for this new requirement.
- The World Resources Institute GHG Protocol is planning to use Ford's China and South America GHG reports in their forthcoming training programs.

Our participation in these reporting, emissions-reduction and trading schemes has played an important role in accelerating our facilities' GHG emissions reduction activities.

Performance

Ford reduced its 2010 **global energy consumption** by 40 percent compared to 2000 and energy consumption per vehicle produced by 5.6 percent compared to 2009. In 2010, overall global energy consumption increased by 6.6 percent compared to 2009, due primarily to a 13 percent increase in production volume. In 2010, Ford improved energy efficiency in its North American operations by 14.4 percent indexed against our 2006 baseline year. This energy efficiency index is adjusted for typical variances in production and weather and is tracked against the baseline year to measure cumulative improvements in energy efficiency.

We reduced our total **facilities-related CO_2 emissions** by approximately 49 percent, or 4.8 million metric tons, from 2000 to 2010. During this same period, we reduced facilities-related CO_2 emissions per vehicle by 30 percent. While total CO_2 emissions increased by 13 percent from 2009 to 2010 due to increased production, per-vehicle emissions decreased by 5.6 percent. We set – and exceeded – a target to reduce our North American facility GHG emissions by 6 percent between 2000 and 2010 as part of our Chicago Climate Exchange commitment. This program ends in 2011. The Company has also committed to reduce U.S. facility emissions by 10 percent

per vehicle produced between 2002 and 2012, as part of an Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers program.

Please see the environment data section for more detail.

The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) again recognized Ford's energy-efficiency achievements by awarding us the 2011 Energy Star Partner of the Year Sustained Excellence Award, which recognizes Ford's continued leadership and commitment to protecting the environment through energy efficiency. This is Ford's sixth consecutive year winning this prestigious award. The Energy Star Partner of the Year award requires organizations to demonstrate proficiency through the management of projects and programs, data collection and analysis, and communication actions, including community outreach and active participation in Energy Star industry forums. The Sustained Excellence level is achieved by illustrating notably consistent actions and continued improvements. Among the achievements recognized by the award is a 40 percent improvement in the energy efficiency of Ford's U.S. facilities since 2000, equivalent to the amount of energy consumed by 110,000 homes.

Energy Management Initiatives

Ford has achieved these efficiency improvements and energy use reductions by using a variety of initiatives, as described in this section. We regularly look for new technologies, approaches to the identification and definition of potential projects, funding mechanisms and means to implement plant energy-efficiency projects.

Since 2007, we have been using a **utility metering and monitoring system** to collect electricity and natural gas consumption data for all Ford plants in North America. We use this near-real-time information to create energy-use profiles for these plants and to improve decisions about nonproduction shutdowns and load shedding, which involves shutting down certain pre-arranged electric loads or devices when we reach an upper threshold of electric usage.

During 2010, we began planning to expand this system to a global scale and provide consumption data down to the departmental level. Linked with production and other data sets, this greatly enhanced near-real-time information has the following objectives:

- Assist in driving improvements in operating and turndown performance by providing departmental detail
- Allow plant-to-plant departmental comparisons
- Assist in the identification of and verification of energy-reduction efforts
- Provide common energy data metrics
- Automate feeds to systems within Ford that require energy data
- Reduce time to generate and obtain energy and environmental reports
- Improve the accuracy of and compliance with carbon-reduction reporting
- Improve energy performance dashboards and communication optimization.

Our Kansas City Assembly Plant will serve as a pilot site for this Global Departmental Level Metering (GDLM) effort.

Ford continues to use **energy performance contracting** as a financing tool to upgrade and replace infrastructure at its plants, commercial buildings and research facilities. Through these contracts, Ford partners with suppliers to replace inefficient equipment, funding the capital investment over time through energy savings. Projects have been implemented to upgrade lighting systems, paint-booth process equipment and compressed air systems, and to significantly reduce the use of steam in our manufacturing facilities. Since 2000, Ford has invested more than $226 million in plant and facility energy-efficiency upgrades.

During 2010 and 2011, for example, we packaged 40 buildings in the Dearborn, Michigan, area into a performance contract to upgrade to more-efficient lighting.

When complete, the project will reduce energy use by more than 18.2 million kilowatt-hours – enough to power 1,648 U.S. homes for a year. The project also will eliminate more than 11,000 metric tons of CO_2 emissions and cut annual costs by more than $1.3 million. The project involves switching out and retrofitting more than 50,000 light fixtures in buildings across southeast Michigan. In Ford World Headquarters alone, more than 6,000 fixtures will be replaced. Other project features include:

- Adding controls to optimize the use of daylighting
- Replacing incandescent exit signs with LED exit signs
- Controlling the lighting of unoccupied areas with occupancy sensors
- Replacing incandescent and halogen lamps with compact fluorescent and LED lamps
- Improved lighting quality, so that employees and visitors will enjoy better visual clarity and enhanced perceived brightness
- Reducing ongoing maintenance costs.

In addition, we are replicating Ford's state-of-the-art paint process that eliminates the need for a stand-alone primer application and curing oven system. This technology, called "**Three-Wet**," reduces CO_2 emissions by up to 40 percent and volatile organic compound emissions by 10 percent compared to either conventional high-solids solvent-borne or waterborne systems. In addition to these environmental benefits, this process maintains industry-leading quality and reduces costs. For example, Three-Wet reduces paint processing time by 20 to 25 percent, which correlates to a significant cost reduction. The paint formulation contains new polymers and other

additives to prevent running and sagging during the application and curing processes. Ford's laboratory tests show that this high-solids, solvent-borne paint provides better long-term resistance to chips and scratches than water-borne paint systems. The process is delivering reduced costs per vehicle, because it allows the elimination of a stand-alone primer spray booth and oven, and the attendant energy costs required to run them.

We piloted a full-production enamel line using the Three-Wet process at the Ohio Assembly Plant, which started production in March 2007. In 2009, Ford installed the Three-Wet paint process at the Chennai plant in India and the Craiova plant in Romania. In March 2010, Three-Wet vehicle production began at the Cuautitlán Assembly Plant in Mexico, and in January 2011 it was implemented at the Michigan Assembly plant in Wayne, Michigan, which is now producing the all-new Ford Focus. We are currently installing the process at the new Chongqing and Nanjing plants in China, the assembly plant for Ford of Thailand and the newly updated Louisville Assembly Plant in Kentucky. We are continuing to evaluate additional plants for Three-Wet conversion, as refurbishment actions are being planned in line with the corporate business plan.

In 2010, Ford continued the evaluation of a **new parts washing system** developed in partnership with our supplier **ABB Robotics**. Conventional parts washing systems remove dirt chemically by spraying parts with high volumes of water and detergent at low pressure. This system, in contrast, cleans parts mechanically by moving them in front of specialized high-pressure nozzles with a robotic arm. This new robotics-based system represents a significant leap forward in energy efficiency that also improves quality, flexibility, productivity and cost. It saves energy in part because, unlike previous systems, it does not require any heat. It also uses a much smaller water pump. Forty-seven of these new robotic washing machines are now in operation at Ford, and we have incorporated the technology as standard for all engine and transmission final wash applications, ensuring that the energy and cost savings will be realized by all future vehicle programs. We intend to expand the use of this technology in future programs in North America. We have also implemented robotic parts washing at our Craiova and Cologne engine plants, and are pursuing the use of this technology in China, India and Brazil.

We have also developed a system, called "**fumes to fuel**," that reduces the CO_2 emissions associated with our paint shop emissions-treatment process. In traditional paint shop emissions treatment, the volatile organic compound (VOC) emissions from solvent-based paints are captured and destroyed in a regenerative thermal oxidizer using natural gas as a fuel. In our "fumes-to-fuel" system, VOC emissions are super-concentrated approximately 2000:1. In this super-concentrated state, the VOCs themselves can be burned as fuel source, reducing the amount of natural gas necessary to destroy them. By reducing the need for natural gas, the fumes-to-fuel system has the potential to reduce CO_2 emissions by 80 to 85 percent compared to traditional abatement equipment. We are also investigating opportunities to use the super-concentrated VOCs as a fuel source for both an internal combustion engine and a fuel cell, which could be used to provide additional power to the paint shop. For more information on the fumes-to-fuel system, please see the Facilities-Related Emissions section.

Other efforts to improve the energy efficiency of Ford's plant operations include:

- Aggressively curtailing energy use during nonproduction periods
- Updating facility lighting systems by replacing inefficient high-intensity discharge fixtures with up-to-date fluorescent lights and control systems
- Installing automated control systems on plant powerhouses and wastewater treatment equipment to increase energy and process efficiency.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Facilities

IN THIS SECTION

Renewable Energy Use

Ford is actively involved in the installation, demonstration and development of alternative sources of energy.

In October 2009, two wind turbines spun into action producing "green" electricity for the Ford Genk plant in Belgium. Installed by local energy company Electrabel, each unit has an output of 2 MW of power, which is used in the manufacture of the Ford Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy models.

Ford's Dagenham Diesel Centre in the UK was the first automotive plant in the world to obtain all of its electrical power needs from two on-site wind turbines, which have been in operation since 2004. A third 2-megawatt wind turbine will be installed at Dagenham in 2011.

A few miles from Dagenham, Ford's Dunton Technical Centre is also powered by electricity from renewable sources. Since March 2009, electric power on the 270-acre site, which is home to a team of approximately 3,000 engineers, has been purchased from 100 percent renewable sources. The majority of the electricity, supplied by GDF, is sourced from a combination of **hydro, wind and waste-to-energy generation**, and replaces energy from traditional sources that would have produced an estimated 35,000 metric tons of CO_2 emissions annually.

Since 2008, Ford has been sourcing renewable electricity to cover the full electric power demand of its manufacturing and engineering facilities at its Cologne plant in Germany. This includes the electricity needed for the assembly of the Ford Fiesta models at the plant. Through this initiative, the company has reduced its CO_2 emissions by 190,000 metric tons per year.

In Wales, Ford's Bridgend Engine Plant was the first site retrofitted with one of the largest integrated, grid-connected **solar/photovoltaic installations** at a car manufacturing plant in Europe.

In North America, examples of installed renewable-energy technologies include a **photovoltaic array and solar thermal collector** at the Ford Rouge Visitors Center. The adjacent Dearborn Truck Plant has a "living roof" system, which uses a thick carpet of plants to reduce the need for heating and cooling while absorbing rainwater. At the Lima Engine Plant in Lima, Ohio, a **geothermal system** provides process cooling for plant operations as well as air tempering for employee comfort. This system uses naturally cooled 40°F water from two abandoned limestone quarries located on the plant site. The installation cost was comparable to that of the traditional chiller and cooling tower design that it replaced. This award-winning project eliminates the emission of 4,300 metric tons of CO_2 each year. In addition, we continue to use a landfill gas installation at the Wayne Assembly Plant.

At our Michigan Assembly Plant, we are building a **smart renewable power storage system**. We are collaborating with DTE Energy to build this stationary, battery-based energy storage facility, which will combine a 500 kW solar photovoltaic array with a 750 kW storage system to deliver 2 MWh of energy. This project will provide vital knowledge from a real-world integration of renewable energy, smart-grid technologies and battery storage infrastructure. For more on this project, please see Ford's Green Partnerships with Federal and State Governments.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Logistics

Our logistics operations provide for the safe and efficient transport of parts from our supply base to our manufacturing plants and of finished vehicles from the end of our assembly lines to our dealerships. Though logistics accounts for a relatively small percentage of total vehicle lifecycle emissions, we are working hard to maximize the efficiency of these operations to reduce costs and environmental impacts. We have taken steps to quantify the CO_2 footprint of our logistics operations and reduce it through a variety of measures, such as shifting to rail and sea shipping and other efficiency measures. Please see the Supply Chain section for details.

Related Links

This Report:

- Logistics

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Supply Chain

During 2010, we took significant steps to better understand the risks and opportunities of greenhouse gas (GHG) regulation and climate change for our suppliers and, by extension, for Ford. We have worked hard to reduce GHG emissions from our products and operations, which enhances our competitiveness, and we hope to help promote similar competitiveness throughout the automotive supply chain.

Ford was a "road tester" of the World Resources Institute/World Business Council for Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD) Scope 3 Greenhouse Gas Accounting and Reporting Standard. Ford had also been an original participant in the review and development of the internationally accepted Greenhouse Gas Protocol Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard, which addresses Scope 1 (direct) GHG emissions and Scope 2 (indirect) emissions.

The new Scope 3 standard provides a step-by-step methodology for companies to quantify and report their corporate value chain-related (Scope 3) GHG emissions, and is intended to be used in conjunction with the GHG Protocol Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard. It will provide a standardized method to inventory the emissions associated with corporate value chains, taking into account impacts both upstream and downstream of the company's operations. The standard covers outsourced activities, supplier manufacturing and product use. The draft standards were developed through a global, collaborative multi-stakeholder process, with participation from more than 1,000 volunteer representatives from industry, government, academia and nongovernmental organizations. The road testing process was designed to provide real-world feedback to ensure that the standards can be practically implemented by companies and organizations from a variety of sectors, sizes and geographic areas around the world.

The final Scope 3 Standard is scheduled to be published by WRI/WBCSD in September 2011.

In order to facilitate Ford's road-testing activities during 2010, Ford requested GHG emissions data from selected Tier 1 production suppliers, representing close to 30 percent of Ford's $65 billion in annual procurement spending. Based on this experience, Ford provided feedback on practical aspects of using the Scope 3 Accounting and Reporting Standard.

Ford has also joined the Carbon Disclosure Project's Supply Chain program. Through this effort, Ford is working with selected suppliers to gather qualitative as well as quantitative information about the suppliers' climate risks and emissions and how they are managing them.

We believe that supply chain GHG emissions represent both risks and opportunities for our Company and our suppliers. Thus, our continued leadership in working to better understand our full lifecycle GHG footprint is increasingly important as we seek to jointly realize operational efficiencies and reduce our emissions footprint across our corporate value chain.

Related Links

This Report:

- Logistics
- Greenhouse Gas Emissions
- Climate Change Risks and Opportunities: Supply Chain Risks

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Climate Change Policy and Partnerships

During 2010, the climate change policy landscape continued to evolve. The U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) finalized a national approach to vehicle standards for 2012–16; however, growing budget deficits at national and regional levels globally decreased the emphasis on comprehensive climate policy.

Our global approach to product planning and policy participation is based on the science of climate stabilization. We accept that simply "not getting worse" is not good enough. The auto industry must work together with suppliers, government, the fuel industry and consumers to reduce CO_2 levels from transportation so we can help stabilize atmospheric CO_2 concentrations. Stabilizing CO_2 concentrations will require that all sectors of the economy, including the transportation sector, do their share. To achieve real and lasting results, all global stakeholders must make long-term commitments for a sustainable future.

In our major markets, the regulation of fuel economy and/or vehicle CO_2 emissions is becoming increasingly complex. In addition to competing federal and regional regulations, governments are taking diverse approaches to incentives for emission reductions through rebates, fees, "feebates," privileges for low-emitting vehicles and penalties for high-emitting vehicles. This creates a very complex policy environment, and it is one important driver of our strategy to develop fuel-efficient and advanced technology platforms that can be shared globally and tailored to the needs of our customers.

In the U.S. and elsewhere, Ford continues to advocate for comprehensive, market-based policy approaches that will provide a coherent framework for greenhouse gas (GHG) emission reductions, so that companies have a clear understanding of their role in achieving reductions. GHG regulations effectively regulate what vehicles we are allowed to build and sell. Carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions standards for motor vehicles are functionally equivalent to fuel economy standards, because the amount of CO_2 produced by a vehicle is proportional to the amount of fuel used.

We hope that the information that follows helps to illustrate the diverse array of GHG and fuel economy regulations and incentives that are now shaping our markets. This section provides more detail on developments and Ford's involvement in:

- U.S. policy
  - Climate change legislation
  - Greenhouse gas and fuel economy regulation
- European policy
- Canadian policy
- Asia Pacific policy
- South American policy
- Renewable fuels policy
- Partnerships and collaboration
- Emissions trading

Related Links

External Websites:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

U.S. Policy

ON THIS PAGE

Climate Change Legislation

In the U.S., the policy debate surrounding climate change has been overshadowed by other issues, including concerns over budget deficits. Nevertheless, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) continued to pursue greenhouse gas emissions regulations for mobile and stationary sources using their authority under the Clean Air Act. EPA and the U.S. National Highway Transportation Safety Administration (NHTSA) finalized regulations for 2012–16 model year vehicles. And in 2011, California began the first year of their Low-Carbon Fuel Standard.

Ford has participated in the public discourse on climate policy for some time. In 1999, for example, we discussed greenhouse gases in our first corporate citizenship report. In late 2005, we published a special report on the Business Impact of Climate Change, and in 2007 we joined the U.S. Climate Action Partnership to support the prompt enactment of climate legislation.

These experiences, as well as our participation in carbon markets globally, have helped to shape Ford's position on climate policy. The linked issues of climate change and energy security create an urgent need to transform the country's economy into one with lower greenhouse gas emissions, higher energy efficiency and less dependence on fossil fuels and foreign oil. This transformation will require changes in all sectors of the economy and society. A comprehensive legislative framework is needed to spur these changes.

We believe we need a comprehensive, market-based approach to reducing GHG emissions if the U.S. is going to reduce emissions at the lowest cost per ton. An economy-wide program would provide flexibility to regulated entities while allowing market mechanisms to determine where GHG reductions can be achieved at the lowest cost. The environment doesn't care where reductions occur, but the economy does, and given the potentially high cost of abatement, it is important to achieve the lowest cost possible.

As part of an integrated approach to addressing energy security and climate change, Ford supports comprehensive legislation that will create a price signal to encourage consumers to purchase more fuel-efficient vehicles. Thoughtful and comprehensive national energy and climate policy that provides a price signal is needed to support the billions of dollars being invested into low-carbon and fuel-efficient vehicle technologies. Without a cohesive policy that includes a price signal, we could be caught in an endless cycle wherein development of the advanced technologies needed to help address climate change and energy security is sporadic and not aligned with fuel providers or consumer demand.

Ford will continue to advocate for effective climate change policies that drive down GHG emissions and provide a framework for sound business and product planning.

back to top

Greenhouse Gas and Fuel Economy Regulation

In 2009, the Obama Administration announced an agreement among the federal government, the state of California, the auto industry and other stakeholders in support of a single national program for motor vehicle fuel economy and greenhouse gas standards covering the 2012 to 2016 model years. Ford views this "One National Program" agreement as a positive step for all stakeholders toward our common goals of energy security and reduced greenhouse gas emissions.

A national program is essential for the efficient regulation of motor vehicle fuel economy and GHG emissions. It allows manufacturers to average the fuel economy and carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions of their vehicles based on nationwide sales, which in turn enables manufacturers to formulate their product plans on a national scale. In contrast, state-by-state or regional regulations could force manufacturers to restrict the sale of some products in certain parts of the country, harming both consumers and dealers in those areas. Since CO_2 emissions do not create localized air-quality problems, state or regional standards are unnecessary, and the incremental benefits of such standards are negligible in comparison to the costs and market disruptions they would impose.

In May 2010, the Obama Administration announced plans to set a new round of light-duty motor vehicle fuel economy and GHG standards for the 2017–2025 model years. Consistent with the One National Program agreement for 2012–2016, the EPA and NHTSA are again planning to issue harmonized standards (with EPA setting GHG standards under the Clean Air Act, and NHTSA setting fuel economy standards under the Energy Policy and Conservation Act). The agencies expect to issue proposed standards in September 2010.

The California Air Resources Board is also planning to issue its own proposed 2017–2025 GHG standards at the same time. State standards are inherently incompatible with federal standards. Although California has expressed support for the One National Program framework, at this writing it is not clear whether California will ultimately defer to the federal standards as it did for the 2012–2016 time period.

Ford is committed to working constructively with all stakeholders toward the implementation of workable and effective One National Program standards for 2017–2025. For the longer term, Ford supports a legislative solution requiring One National Program, in order to head off the possibility that various agencies may promulgate and enforce multiple, inconsistent fuel economy/GHG regulations in the future.

In May 2010, President Obama announced a set of principles for the EPA and NHTSA to work together to develop a single national program for greenhouse gas and fuel economy standards for heavy-duty vehicles. As a result, in November 2010 the EPA and NHTSA proposed CO_2 and fuel consumption requirements for 2014 through 2018 model year combination tractors, heavy-duty pickup trucks and vans, and vocational vehicles. The agencies estimate that the combined proposed standards have the potential to reduce GHG emissions by nearly 250 million metric tons and save approximately 500 million barrels of oil over the life of vehicles sold during the program. Final requirements are expected to be published in late summer 2011.

back to top

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

European Policy

The EU has set mandatory carbon dioxide (CO_2) targets for both cars and light commercial vehicles. The specific target for an automaker depends on the average weight of the automaker's vehicles registered in a given year. Due to the relatively low average weight of Ford cars registered in the EU, this results in stricter targets for Ford compared to the overall industry target of, for example, 130 g/km during the 2012–2015 period and 95 g/km in 2020.

The EU has also established significant regulations about other items related to climate change, such as fuels (including bio-blending), tires and gear-shift indicators, among other topics. In fact, automobiles are one of the most regulated products in the EU, with requirements also covering non-CO_2 emissions, drive-by noise, recycling, substances, electro-magnetic requirements, safety, technical aspects and more. Ford is now complying and will continue to comply with all these various targets and prohibitions with appropriate product offerings, in spite of the sudden dramatic economic downturn that had severely limited the resources available to respond.

In general, Ford is requesting that regulations and policies be well coordinated and not contradictory to each other and that they be technology-neutral, proportional, avoid double regulation, offer sufficient lead time to adjust development and production cycles and follow an integrated approach in which all stakeholders (industry, infrastructure, consumers and governments) contribute to the solution. Any CO_2 regulations should also be in line with meeting the global CO_2 target of 450 ppm.

In some member states, CO_2 taxation is in place to encourage the early introduction of low-CO_2 vehicles with major tax break points, often around 95/100 g/km, 120 g/km and 160g/km. Unfortunately, these tax break points are not harmonized between the European countries.

The industry will continue to invest heavily in research and development and new product programs in order to reach the short-term CO_2 targets. The long-term target will require technological breakthroughs, new refueling infrastructure and a swift renewal of the car fleet on Europe's roads.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Canadian Policy

In September 2010, Environment Canada finalized greenhouse gas emissions regulations for 2011 to 2016 model year passenger automobiles and light trucks. This regulation aligns emission standards and test procedures with those of the U.S. The regulation provides companies with similar compliance flexibilities to those available under the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's greenhouse gas (GHG) regulation, including advanced technology credits, air conditioning leakage and efficiency credits, flexible-fuel vehicle credits and credit transfer among fleets.

Environment Canada has also announced that it will regulate in alignment with the upcoming U.S. federal heavy-duty vehicle GHG regulations slated to begin with the 2014 model year. Coincident with the U.S., Environment Canada published a Notice of Intent to regulate passenger automobiles and light trucks in the 2017–2025 model years.

The Provinces of Quebec, Manitoba and British Columbia participate in the Western Climate Change Initiative and had committed to adopt GHG regulations based on California standards. Quebec has promulgated a GHG regulation based on the California standards, but with fewer flexibility mechanisms. We are hopeful that Quebec will see the benefit of a single standard for Canada, consistent with the One National Program effort in the U.S. Ford has participated in regulatory discussions on this issue, providing technical expertise and supporting a tough, aligned, national standard. British Columbia and Manitoba have both acknowledged the value of the new federal standards.

Environment Canada has also regulated renewable fuel content in on-road gasoline. Effective September 2010, renewable levels in the national pool of gasoline must average 5 percent. Environment Canada has also published a draft regulation for renewable content in diesel fuel. The proposed regulation would require 2 percent renewable content in diesel fuel starting July 2011.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Asia Pacific Policy

In Ford's Asia Pacific and Africa region, sales in China are growing rapidly. Economic growth is a key priority of the Chinese government, to be balanced with energy security and a cleaner environment.

The China Automotive Technology and Research Center released for comment a draft national standard on Stage III fuel economy limits for passenger cars, with phase-in of implementation targeted for the 2012 model year. During the phase-in period, the ratio of the Corporate Average Fuel Consumption to the Target Corporate Average Fuel Consumption of all automakers must decline from 109 percent in 2012 to 100 percent in 2015.

The Chinese government provides limited incentives for the purchase of "new energy vehicles" (including plug-in electric vehicles) made by Chinese manufacturers for fleets under local government control. The program applies to vehicles in 13 cities initially, with plans to expand to others up to 2012. Diesel use is discouraged in passenger car applications in the near term, due to fuel availability concerns.

Japan, South Korea and Taiwan have released new or modified fuel economy limits, while Hong Kong, South Korea and Taiwan have linked tax incentives to fuel economy and carbon dioxide targets.

Ford is actively involved in dialogues with governments across Asia Pacific and Africa in a number of areas, including sustainable mobility, energy security and environmental protection.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

South American Policy

In Brazil, our largest South American market, the use of biofuels is a national policy, with 100 percent of gasoline blended with 20 to 25 percent ethanol, and extensive use of pure ethanol as motor fuel. Most new vehicles are designed to accommodate varying amounts of ethanol. A minimum of 5 percent biodiesel must be added to diesel. Emission requirements are periodically updated by an emissions-control program. A voluntary fuel economy labeling program is also in place. A star ranking for light vehicles was recently introduced, favoring low-emission, low-carbon-dioxide (CO_2), ethanol, flexible-fuel or hybrid vehicles. Diesel use in light vehicles under a one-ton payload is not allowed, except for combined-usage vehicles with special off-road characteristics. The government is also studying incentives for hybrids and electric vehicles. The federal, state and municipal environmental bodies are expected to issue their Vehicle Pollution Control Plan by June 30, 2011, and implement an In-Use Vehicle Inspection and Maintenance Program by April 25, 2012.

Other South American countries, such as Argentina and Colombia, are also significantly increasing the use of biofuels. Chile will introduce a mandatory fuel economy labeling program by September 2011, which will provide information on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions.

Ford has supported the region's biofuels initiatives since the 1970s and offers a wide range of vehicles capable of running on 100 percent ethanol. We also provide light- and heavy-duty vehicles that meet biodiesel requirements.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Renewable Fuels Policy

Today, more than 80 percent of global oil reserves are limited to 10 countries, while biofuels made from sugarcane can be produced in more than 100 countries. First-generation biofuels are playing an important role in building consumer awareness and spurring capital investment in infrastructure and facilities that can be used for more promising second-generation biofuels.

Ford is a leader in providing vehicles that can operate on biofuels. We met our 2010 U.S. goal to double our production of E85 flexible-fuel vehicles (those capable of using up to 85 percent ethanol), and we continue to introduce E85 flexible-fuel vehicles. These products, which we are delivering at no additional cost to consumers, go well beyond requirements and what most other automakers are doing.

Ford's vision for biofuels is for accelerated use of renewable fuels to deliver increased energy security, enhance economic development and help to address climate change. This vision includes rapidly expanding the number of vehicles that can operate on biofuels, increasing the number of stations offering biofuels, developing the fuel distribution network to support customer choice and value, and achieving technology breakthroughs to commercialize advanced biofuels.

Policies across the globe are aimed at increasing the use and availability of biofuels. The U.S. adopted a Renewable Fuel Standard requiring 36 billion gallons of biofuels by 2022, including more than 20 billion gallons of low-carbon advanced biofuels. The EU Renewable Energy Directive establishes a 10 percent renewable energy target for transportation energy in 2020. And Brazil has had a very aggressive domestic ethanol program for years.

But these policies aren't enough. Providing value is critical to engage consumers and get them to use alternative energy sources. Hundreds of millions of vehicles in operation today were designed to use ethanol blends containing less than 10 percent ethanol, and our transportation energy infrastructure was set up to deliver petroleum-based fuels.

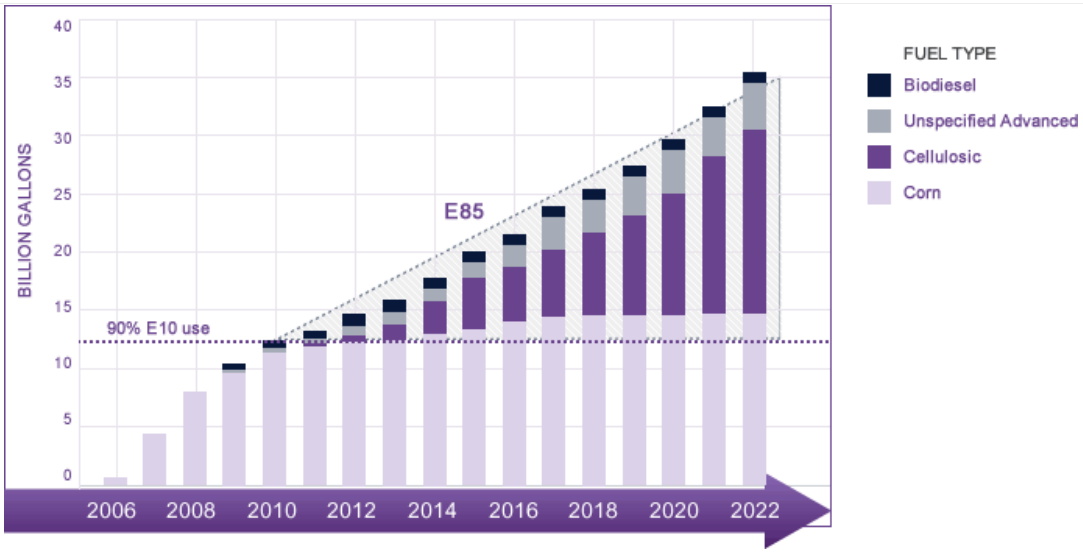
In January 2011, the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) approved a waiver allowing the use of E15 (a blend of 85 percent gasoline and 15 percent ethanol) in 2001 and later model year vehicles.

On the one hand, we recognize the potential benefits of expanded use of E15 fuel in helping to build markets for renewable fuels. In addition, ethanol has an octane rating greater than today's gasoline, so when the fuels are mixed, the resulting fuel blend will have higher octane than base gasoline. As the octane rating of a fuel increases, it reduces the tendency for "engine knock," a condition that can, over time, lead to engine damage. Many of today's advanced engines currently on the road are programmed to improve the efficiency of the engine just short of the point where the consumer would experience engine knock. For such engines, an increase in the octane rating of the fuel would result in improved vehicle efficiency. Further improvement to engine efficiency (through increased compression ratio and downsizing) could be achieved if manufacturers knew the octane rating of the fuel would be increased.

On the other hand, the implementation of the EPA's E15 waiver presents a number of concerns. In particular, Ford is concerned about the impact the waiver will have on the legacy fleet – the millions of vehicles still on the road that were designed to operate on E10 (or E0 for very old vehicles). Although E15 is not approved for use in such vehicles, the EPA has not developed a robust program to prevent the "misfueling" of these vehicles. As a result, we anticipate a high incidence of misfueling, i.e., customers putting E15 fuel in vehicles not designed to use it. We are concerned that such vehicles will not continue to meet customer expectations for quality, durability and performance, as well as legal requirements to meet emission and on-board diagnostic regulations.

Because of the concerns cited above, we believe that the risks for automakers, fuel providers and consumers need to be mitigated and addressed before proceeding with the widespread use of E15. We have suggested that the EPA and other policymakers develop a revised, prospective plan for the introduction of E15, in a way that better ensures the fuel is only used in vehicles designed to accommodate it.

U.S. Renewable Fuel Standard


BILLION GALLONS
40
35
30
25
20
15
10
5
0
E85
90% E10 use
2006
2008
2010
2012
2014
2016
2018
2020
2022
FUEL TYPE
Biodiesel
Unspecified Advanced
Cellulosic
Corn

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Emissions Trading

Emissions trading is a key tool in both voluntary and mandatory greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions-reduction programs. Ford was an early participant in carbon markets, with a goal of gaining experience that will be valuable in an increasingly carbon-constrained world.

For example, Ford, along with 11 other companies and the city of Chicago, founded the Chicago Climate Exchange (CCX) in 2003. The CCX was a GHG emissions-reduction and trading program for emission sources and projects in North America. It was a self-regulated, rules-based exchange designed and governed by CCX members. Ford was the first and only auto manufacturing participant in the Exchange. Through the CCX, we committed to reducing our North American facility emissions by 6 percent between 2000 and 2010, and we exceeded that reduction target. CCX elected to end the emissions-reduction portion of the program after 2010, with cumulative verified emission reductions totaling nearly 700 million metric tons of carbon dioxide (CO_2) since 2003.

Ford was also one of the original companies to join the UK Emissions Trading Scheme, the first government-sponsored, economy-wide, cross-industry GHG trading program. Ford Motor Company Limited (UK) entered the program in March 2002, committing to and achieving a 5 percent CO_2 reduction for eligible plants and facilities over five years.

Ford now participates in the EU Emission Trading Scheme, which commenced in January 2005 and is one of the policies being introduced across Europe to reduce emissions of CO_2 and other greenhouse gases. The second phase of this program runs from 2008 to 2012 and coincides with the first Kyoto Commitment Period. Additional five-year phases are expected to follow.

Despite Ford facilities' low-to-moderate CO_2 emissions (compared to other industry sectors), the EU Emission Trading Scheme regulations apply to five Ford facilities in the UK, Belgium and Spain. The trading scheme requires us to apply for emissions permits, meet rigid emissions monitoring and reporting plans, arrange for third-party verification audits and manage tax and accounting issues related to emissions transactions.

Ford is actively involved in an ongoing evaluation of the EU Emission Trading Scheme at both the EU and member-state levels. We have used the experience gained from participating in the market-based mechanisms described above to ensure that we operate in compliance with the scheme's regulatory framework. Ford anticipated the start of the EU Emission Trading Scheme and established internal business plans and objectives to maintain compliance with the new regulatory requirements.

Through our participation in CCX, we built a world-class CO_2 tracking infrastructure for our facility emissions. We will continue to leverage this system to support voluntary reporting globally, to measure progress against our new facility CO_2 target, and to ensure compliance with the EU trading program and the new mandatory U.S. EPA reporting requirements.

Comprehensive reporting forms the foundation for all emissions trading. We voluntarily report GHG emissions in Australia, Canada, China, Mexico and the Philippines. This reporting, which has won several awards, is discussed in the Climate Change Strategy section.

Related Links

External Websites:

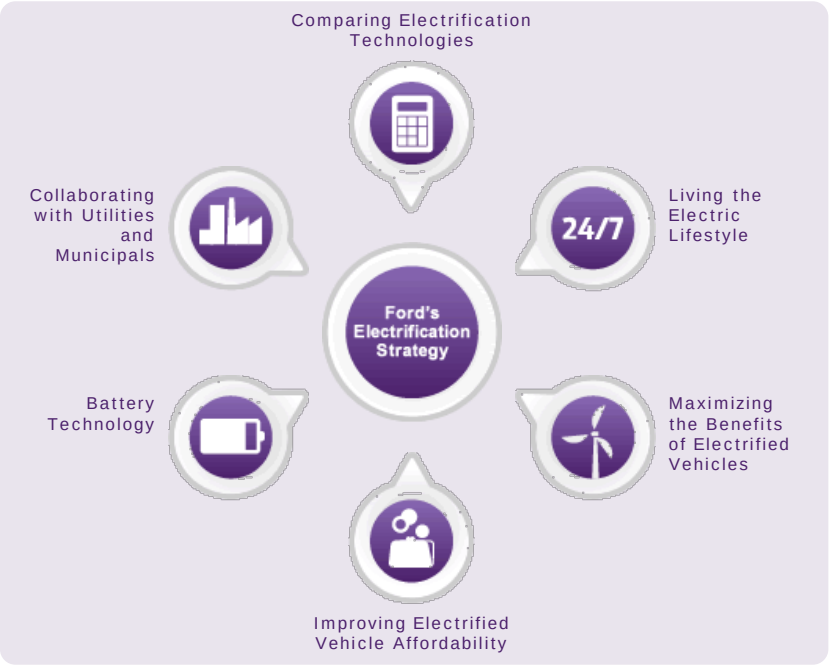
- Chicago Climate Exchange
- EU Emissions Trading Scheme

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Electrification: A Closer Look



In the past few years, most major global automakers, including Ford, have announced plans to make all-electric vehicles. Utilities are also working to understand how to provide power to plug-in electric vehicles in a way that is effective in meeting consumer needs, efficient for electricity providers and environmentally sound.

Why the rise in interest and activity? The electrification of vehicles could cut greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions from vehicles, increase the use of domestic energy sources, decrease pressure on petroleum stocks and reduce urban air pollution. With the benefit of information technologies and "smart grids," electrified automobiles could also improve the efficiency of the power grid – thereby lowering electricity costs – and facilitate the use of renewable energy sources, such as wind and solar.

But many challenges remain. For example, to fulfill their potential to cut lifecycle GHG emissions from automobiles, low-carbon electric generation must make up a greater part of the total supply, and electric vehicles must become functioning parts of "smart grids." Also, battery technologies are still evolving, and the cost of new-generation batteries remains high. Working with researchers from the University of Michigan, we have assessed the global availability of lithium and compared this to the potential demand that could be created from the large-scale, global use of electric vehicles. We found that there are sufficient resources of lithium to supply a large-scale global fleet of electric vehicles through at least the year 2100. We are currently assessing the social and environmental challenges associated with the provision of rare earth elements for electric vehicles, in addition to investigating whether supplies will be adequate for future needs.

This section provides an overview of Ford's electrification strategy. It also explores electrification technologies and their environmental benefits, and discusses how Ford is addressing key challenges and opportunities related to vehicle electrification. For more details on our electric vehicle technologies and other fuel-efficiency, advanced powertrain and alternative fuels technologies, please see the Sustainable Technologies and Alternative Fuels Plan.

Living the Electric Lifestyle

To help drivers make the transition to electric vehicles (EVs), and get the most out of their EVs, we are offering more than just the vehicle. We are delivering a total electric vehicle lifestyle.

READ MORE

Related Links

This Report:

- Ford's Sustainable Technologies and Alternatives Fuels Plan

Vehicle Websites:

- Ford C-Max
- Ford Fusion
- Ford Escape
- Ford Focus
- Ford Transit Connect
- Mercury Milan
- Mercury Mariner

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Ford's Electrification Strategy

Ford's electrification strategy foresees a future that includes different types of electrified vehicles, depending on customers' needs. There will not be a one-size-fits-all approach, but a diverse, smart application of different types of electrified vehicle technologies. Our strategy includes the following.

Power of Choice: Bringing a Range of Electric Vehicles to Market

Electrified vehicles are an important part of Ford's overall sustainability strategy and our commitment to reduce the carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions of our fleet. We are pursuing an aggressive electrified vehicle strategy that we call Power of Choice. We believe that offering a range of electrified vehicles is the best way to reduce CO_2 emissions and meet different customers' transportation needs. Therefore, we are electrifying global vehicle lines rather than creating a special electrified vehicle model. That way, our customers can choose from a variety of electrified vehicle powertrains, including Hybrid Electric Vehicles (HEVs), Plug-In Hybrid Vehicles (PHEVs) and full Battery Electric Vehicles (BEVs). We are also delivering electrified vehicles in a range of different vehicle segments, including commercial vehicles, sedans, sport utility and crossover vehicles and luxury vehicles. We expect that 10 to 25 percent of Ford's global sales will be composed of electrified vehicles by 2020. That includes sales of HEVs, PHEVs and pure BEVs, with the majority of those sales coming from HEVs.

Ford already offers three HEVs: the Ford Escape Hybrid, the Ford Fusion Hybrid and the Lincoln MKZ Hybrid. These HEVs are ideal for customers who cover a range of distances in varied driving conditions. The most significant benefits of these vehicles come under urban stop-and-go driving. We have also announced plans to introduce an HEV version of the Ford C-MAX, a multi-activity vehicle, in North America in 2012.

In 2010 and 2011, we introduced two BEVs in North America: a BEV version of the Ford Transit Connect utility van and the Ford Focus Electric. The Transit Connect Electric is targeted at the commercial market. We developed this vehicle in partnership with Azure Dynamics Vehicles, a leading electric adapter of commercial vehicles. The Focus Electric, a BEV version of the all-new Ford Focus (which became available in North America in 2011), was developed with our strategic supplier Magna International. These BEVs will be ideal for customers who have short, predictable daily trips of less than 80 miles total.

In 2012 in North America, we will introduce our first commercially available PHEV, the C-MAX Energi.

All of these vehicles will use next-generation lithium-ion batteries. We already have a test fleet of Ford Escape PHEVs on the road in partnership with a number of utility companies, which are providing useful data for the development and implementation of commercial PHEVs.

We will also expand our electrified vehicle lineup to Europe. We will launch the Transit Connect Electric in Europe in 2011, followed by the Ford Focus Electric in 2012. The C-MAX Hybrid and C-MAX Energi, along with another still-to-be-announced HEV, will also be introduced in Europe by 2013.

Using Global Platforms

We are basing our electrified vehicle products on our highest-volume global platforms, which offers tremendous opportunities for production economies of scale. For example, the Focus Electric, C-MAX Energi and C-MAX Hybrid will all be based on Ford's next-generation "C-car" platform. Globally, we expect to build as many as 2 million vehicles per year on this platform, including the Focus, Focus Electric, C-MAX, C-MAX Hybrid, C-MAX Energi and other vehicle models. We will be producing the vehicles on flexible manufacturing lines capable of producing a BEV, HEV, PHEV or efficient gasoline- or diesel-powered vehicle, which allows us to switch production between different vehicles as needed to meet changing consumer demand. We also share many of the electrified components between the different vehicles. These strategies are key to making electrified vehicles affordable.

Delivering a Total Electric Vehicle Lifestyle

Electric vehicles have many advantages for consumers, like possibly never having to visit a gas station again. But they also require drivers to make changes to their driving routines and may cause some new anxieties, like wondering if the car has enough charge to get to the next destination. To help drivers make the transition to electric vehicles, and get the most out of their EVs, we are offering more than just the vehicle. We are delivering a total electric vehicle lifestyle.

In the U.S., for example, our EVs have advanced in-vehicle communications that help drivers

Related Links

This Report:

- Our Strategy: Blueprint for Sustainability

maximize the efficiency and range of their vehicles, find charging stations along their planned routes, and know exactly how far they can go until the next charge based on their own driving style. We have also linked our vehicles to drivers' smartphones so that they can control charging and other in-vehicle operations remotely. We have also developed a comprehensive approach to vehicle charging that makes charging fast, easy, affordable and environmentally friendly. Our goal is to deliver electric vehicles that are as engaging, easy to use and empowering as other forms of consumer electronics like smartphones.

Bringing EVs to Market Thoughtfully

Ford is taking a proactive approach to making EVs successful in the marketplace. We are working with utilities, municipalities, dealers and customers to make the transition to EVs as smooth as possible. We are also targeting our initial EV offerings in markets that we believe will be able to take advantage of the full range of EVs' benefits right away. We are initially introducing the Focus Electric, for example, in 19 U.S. cities: Atlanta, Austin, Boston, Chicago, Denver, Detroit, Houston, Los Angeles, New York, Orlando, Phoenix, Portland (Oregon), Raleigh-Durham, Richmond, San Diego, San Francisco, Seattle, Tucson and Washington, D.C. These markets were chosen based on several criteria, including commuting patterns, existing hybrid purchase trends, utility company collaboration and local government commitment to electrification.

As part of our collaboration with dealers, utilities and local governments, Ford is helping to develop consumer outreach and education programs on electric vehicles as well as share information on charging needs and requirements to ensure that the electrical grid can support customers' needs. For example, we launched a "Charging into the Future Tour" to 14 cities around the country as part of this effort. This tour promotes Ford's electric vehicle strategy, solidifies our collaborations with local utilities and municipalities to make EVs a success, and educates consumers about what to expect from electrified automobiles and what is needed from the public and private sector to support this new technology.

Collaborating with Partners

Gearing up for the development and diffusion of electrified vehicle technologies will be a global challenge. Major advances have already been made on the electrical technology at the core of the next-generation electrified vehicles, and there's more to come. In Ford's vision, a coalition of automotive manufacturers and other stakeholders will work together to develop technologies, standards and cost efficiencies to commercialize electrified vehicles. It will take a collaborative approach of automakers, battery producers, suppliers, fuel producers, utilities, municipalities, educators and researchers, as well as policy makers and opinion shapers, to help us make the transition and realize the full benefits of electrification.

Traditional automotive suppliers, transforming themselves for electrification, are being joined by new suppliers adapting electronics to the automotive environment. Significant possibilities exist for innovation in battery technology, power electronics and the development of motors, generators, high-voltage systems and other components, as well as the information technology necessary to maximize the potential of electric vehicles.

Ford's plan calls for strategic partnering with key suppliers who bring technical expertise, financial solidity and collaborative spirit. We believe that working with a range of partners will allow us to gain greater understanding of the connectivity of vehicles to the electric grid, promote the necessary infrastructure and bring down the costs of the technology to make it more accessible for consumers.

Comparing Electrification Technologies

A range of vehicle types, from conventional gasoline to pure electric, is shown in the table below. In the near term and mid-term, the largest volume of electrified vehicles will likely be hybrid electric vehicles (HEVs), which use both a gasoline engine and a battery electric motor but do not plug into the electric grid. In the U.S., HEVs made up approximately 2.4 percent of the market for new vehicles in 2010.

In the longer term, electrified vehicles that get some or all of their energy directly from the electric grid, including plug-in hybrid electric vehicles (PHEVs) and battery electric vehicles (BEVs), are likely to play an increasingly significant role. The table below provides a generalized overview of the relative benefits and impacts of these different electrified vehicle technologies, based on typical compact C-class vehicles similar to those Ford is currently offering, or has announced will be produced in the near future, such as the Focus, C-MAX Hybrid, C-MAX Energi and Focus Electric.

Related Links

This Report:

- Ford's Sustainable Technologies and Alternative Fuels Plan

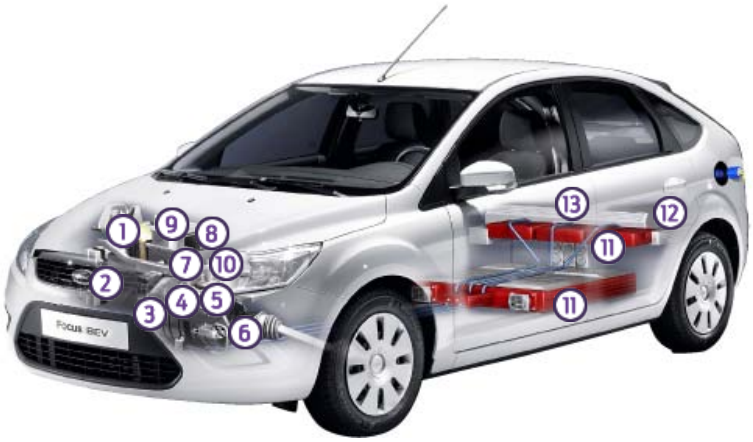
	Conventional Internal Combustion Engine Vehicle (ICEV)	Conventional ICEV with Start/Stop Technology[1]	Hybrid Electric Vehicle (HEV)	Plug-in Hybrid Electric Vehicle (PHEV)	Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV)
Technology overview	Traditional gas or diesel engine.	Traditional gas or diesel engine and powertrain with stop/start capability, which shuts down the engine when the vehicle is stopped and automatically restarts it before the accelerator pedal is pressed to resume driving. Regenerative brake recharging improves fuel economy.	Uses both an internal combustion engine and an electric motor. Can run exclusively on battery power, exclusively on gas power or on a combination of both. Also has stop/start capability and regenerative braking.	Uses a high-capacity battery that can be charged from an ordinary household 110-volt outlet. When the battery is depleted, the PHEV runs like a regular HEV[2].	Uses only a battery-powered electric motor, no gas or diesel engine. Runs entirely on electricity from batteries, which can be charged from household outlets or specialized charging stations.
Ideal driving conditions	Flexible for a wide range of uses.	Flexible for a wide range of uses. Improved fuel economy in urban driving.	Flexible for a wide range of uses. Excellent urban fuel economy and improved highway fuel economy.	Flexible for a wide range of uses. Dramatically improved fuel economy in city driving. Suitable for customers who have access to a plug at home and/or the office with daily trips around 30 miles between charges, but flexibility for longer trips as well.	Ideal for customers with access to a plug at home or work who have shorter, predictable daily trips of less than 80 miles (between charges).
Technology Benefits/Costs Based on a Typical Compact or "C-class" Sedan[3]					
Fuel economy[4] (Roughly real-world fuel economy for a compact sedan)	~33mpg	~35 mpg	~49 mpg[5]	Not applicable. Similar to HEV when running on gasoline. No gasoline used when running on electricity from the grid.	Not applicable.
Range on tank/charge[6]	~450 miles/tank	~470 miles/tank	~660 miles/tank	~690 miles on combined gas and electric power. More than 1,200 miles between visits to a gas station in typical use.	Up to 80 miles on a charge.
Fueling/charging time	Minutes	Minutes	Minutes	Minutes for gasoline 2–4 hours with a 220-volt outlet and 4–8 hours with a 110-volt outlet.	3–4 hours with a 240-volt outlet
CO_2 emissions[7]					
Well to tank	~35 g/km	~30 g/km	~25 g/km	Current grid:[8] ~100 g/km	Current grid:[8] ~130 g/km
Tank to wheels	~170 g/km	~160 g/km	~110 g/km	Current grid:[8] ~30 g/km	Current grid:[8] 0 g/km

Well to wheels[9]	~205 g/km	~190 g/km	~135 g/km[10]	Current grid:[8] ~130 g/km[11]	Current grid:[8] ~130 g/km[12]
Annual fuel cost	~$1,100–$1,800[13]	~$1,000–$1,700[14]	~$700–1200[15]	~$500 ($200 gasoline+$300 electricity)–$650 ($350 gasoline+$300 electricity)[16]	~$400[17]

Below is a detailed look at the components that will make up the new electrified vehicles.

Ford Focus Electric

1. Motor Controller and Inverter
2. High Voltage Electric HVAC Compressor
3. Electric Water Pump
4. Traction Motor
5. Electric Power Steering
6. Gearbox
7. Modular Powertrain Candle
8. Electric Vacuum Pump
9. High Voltage PTC Electric Coolant Heater and Controller
10. Vehicle Control Unit
11. Battery Pack and Battery Cells
12. AC Charger
13. DC-DC Converter



* Image based on prototype, not production vehicle.

1 Motor Controller and Inverter

The motor controller monitors the motor's position, speed, power consumption and temperature. Using this information and the throttle command by the driver, the motor controller and inverter convert the DC voltage supplied by the battery to three precisely timed signals used to drive the motor.

2 High Voltage Electric HVAC Compressor

The high voltage air conditioning system is specifically designed for hybrid vehicle applications, drawing electrical energy directly from the main battery pack. An inverter is included in the compressor.

3 Electric Water Pump

The electric drive water pump circulates coolant for the traction motor, inverters, battery and heater.

4 Traction Motor

The traction motor performs the conversion between electrical and mechanical power. Electric motors also have efficiencies three times higher than that of a standard gasoline engine, minimizing energy loss and heat generation.

5 Electric Power Steering

An electro-hydraulic steering pump was installed to assist a retuned steering rack. A production vehicle would be designed with electric power steering.

6 Gearbox

The transmission has the identical role as in a conventional vehicle; however, it has different design considerations due to the higher RPM range available from the electric motor and increased emphasis on efficient and silent operation. The transmission is a single-speed unit with a 5.4:1 reduction.

7 Modular Powertrain Cradle

This is a structure for monitoring all engine compartment EV components and providing isolation from the vehicle body through traditional engine mounts.

8 Electric Vacuum Pump

The vacuum pump supplies vacuum to the brake system for power assist.

9 High Voltage PTC Electric Coolant Heater and Controller

Heating systems are specifically designed for hybrid vehicle applications. Energy-efficient PTC technology is used to heat the coolant that circulates to the passenger car heater. Heat also may be circulated to the battery.

10 Vehicle Control Unit

The vehicle control unit (VCU) communicates with the driver as well as each individual vehicle system to monitor and control the vehicle according to the algorithms developed by the vehicle integration team. The VCU manages the different energy sources available and the mechanical power being delivered to the wheels to maximize range.

11 Battery Pack and Battery Cells

The battery pack is made up of seven battery modules of 14 cells – 98 cells total for 23 kWh of power. The batteries are air cooled using existing vehicle cabin air. The pack includes an electronic monitoring system that manages the temperature and state of charge of each of the cells.

12 AC Charger

Power electronics are used to convert the off-vehicle AC source from the electrical grid to the DC voltage required by the battery, thus charging the battery to its full state of charge in a matter of hours. The current charger is air cooled. The production design will accommodate both 110 and 220 voltage sources.

13 DC-DC Converter

A DC-DC converter allows the vehicle's main battery pack to charge the on-board 12V battery, which powers the vehicle's various accessories, headlights and so forth.

---

1. Some automakers consider this a form of hybrid vehicle. However, Ford views and is implementing these technologies as part of our strategy to improve the fuel economy of conventional internal combustion engine vehicles. We assume start/stop technology can provide up to 10 percent fuel economy improvement in city driving.
2. Another type of PHEV, often called an Extended Range Electric Vehicle, runs entirely on battery power until the battery is depleted, and then the onboard gas-powered engine runs to recharge the battery. The wheels are driven only by the electric motor, and the engine's sole purpose is to recharge the battery.
3. These numbers are for comparison purposes only. They are based on modeling and testing calculations and do not necessarily represent the numbers that would be achieved in real-world driving conditions, nor do they represent actual products that Ford currently makes or may produce.
4. The internal-combustion engine fuel economy estimate is based on the calculation used by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency to develop Combined Fuel Economy (city/highway) values for the labels affixed to new vehicles. The Combined Fuel Economy value is intended to represent the approximate fuel economy that most consumers can expect based on a typical mix of city and highway driving. Estimates for the other technologies are based on the metro-highway drive cycle used for the U.S. fuel-economy regulations. Fuel economy calculations for all of the technologies are based in U.S. gallons and on U.S. drive cycles.
5. In general, HEVs deliver approximately 40–50 percent better fuel economy than comparably sized non-hybrids.
6. All estimates are based on a 13.5-gallon tank except for the BEV, which has no fuel tank.
7. In vehicles using internal combustion engines, the fuel feedstock is assumed to be petroleum gasoline.
8. "Current grid" assumes average current emissions from U.S. power generation.
9. "Well to wheels" carbon dioxide (CO_2) includes all CO_2 emissions generated in the process of producing the fuel or electricity as well as the CO_2 emissions created by burning the fuel in the vehicle itself. It is useful to break this down into "well to tank" emissions, which measure the CO_2 emissions generated by excavating the feedstocks and producing and distributing the fuel or electricity, and "tank to wheels" emissions, which include the CO_2 generated by burning the fuel in the vehicle. "Well to tank" emissions are based on the GREET v. 1.8d.0 model developed by the Argonne National Lab. "Tank to wheels" calculations are based on Ford's estimates using the metro-highway drive cycle and energy use for a C-class electric vehicle.
10. In HEVs, the fuel feedstock is assumed to be petroleum gasoline.
11. In PHEVs, the "well to tank" emissions are based on the percentage of emissions from gasoline fuel production and distribution and electric power generation, and the "tank to wheels" emissions are based on the percentage of time the vehicle is driven using gasoline.
12. In BEVs, "well to tank" emissions include emissions related to electric-power generation, and "tank to wheels" emissions are zero, because no CO_2 is produced by running the vehicle on batteries charged with electrical power.
13. Based on 12,000 miles/year, 33 mpg and $3–5/gallon.
14. Based on 12,000 miles/year, 35 mpg and $3–5/gallon.
15. Based on 12,000 miles/year, 49 mpg and $3–5/gallon.
16. Based on 12,000 miles/year, 70 percent in electric mode at 3.5 miles/kWh (midpoint of range of 3–4 miles/kWh in electric mode) and 12 cents/kWh, and 30 percent in gasoline-engine mode at 49 mpg and $3–5/gallon.
17. Based on 12,000 miles/year, 3.5 miles/kWh (midpoint of range of 3–4 miles/kWh for a typical BEV) and 12 cents/kWh.

Living the Electric Lifestyle

To help drivers make the transition to electric vehicles (EVs), and get the most out of their EVs, we are offering more than just the vehicle. We are delivering a total electric vehicle lifestyle. In the U.S., for example, our EVs have advanced in-vehicle communications that help drivers maximize the efficiency and range of their vehicles, find charging stations along their planned routes, and know exactly how far they can go until the next charge based on their own driving style. We have also linked our vehicles to drivers' smartphones so that they can control charging and other in-vehicle operations remotely. We have also developed a comprehensive approach to vehicle charging that makes charging fast, easy, affordable and environmentally friendly. Our goal is to deliver electric vehicles that are as engaging, easy to use and empowering as other forms of consumer electronics like smartphones.

Enhanced In-Vehicle Information with MyFord Touch™

In several regions, including the U.S., our electric vehicles will include an enhanced version of MyFord Touch – Ford's new driver interface technology – that will give drivers a range of information tools to help them maximize their driving range, plan the most eco-friendly route and manage the battery recharge process. For example, the system will provide vehicle data such as the electrical demands of vehicle accessories – including air conditioning, which influences electric driving range. The system will also provide information on the battery's state of charge, distance to charge points, "energy budget" and expected range surplus.

We designed the Focus Electric to provide more range at full charge than most Americans will use each day. But we know that, at least initially, "range anxiety" will be an important issue for consumers. So we have designed in-vehicle communications to make on-board energy management a rewarding and fun part of the ownership experience. For example, the vehicle can analyze individual driving styles, as well as climate control and other options, to provide tailored information about range and remaining charge. Drivers who drive slowly and smoothly will get a longer range out of their car than those who drive more aggressively. But our in-vehicle information systems can adapt to any way you choose to drive. The Focus Electric will continuously analyze a driver's style, recalculate range and distance to required charge, and show how driving behavior affects the vehicle's energy budget. The system can also coach drivers on how to drive more efficiently to maximize their electric driving range.

The system also includes a trip planner feature to help drivers plan their trip based on the available battery range and the location of charging stations. The trip planning system integrates information about driving style and the driving efficiency "coach" to help drivers go farther on their remaining charge by maximizing regenerative braking, turning down the air conditioning or other efficient driving actions.

The Focus Electric's in-vehicle information is also customizable. For example, information can be viewed in three different modes: Energy Budget, which shows the remaining charge; Range, which shows the distance to the next required charge point; and Surplus View, which shows drivers how much energy or range they are saving using different options and by driving efficiently. The system also uses a variety of simple graphics like an energy "budget cup" and surplus energy "butterflies" that make it easy for drivers to quickly interpret information.

Remote Control with MyFord Mobile™

Drivers will also be able to manage their Focus Electric remotely using the Ford-developed MyFord Mobile app in the U.S. Like any Ford vehicle equipped with MyFord Touch, our electric vehicles allow drivers to locate the vehicle with GPS, remotely start the vehicle and remotely lock and unlock the car doors using their smartphone. On our electric vehicles, however, the MyFord Mobile app provides a suite of additional remote communications. For example, working with MapQuest®, MyFord Mobile can communicate the location of a charge station to the Focus Electric using the Traffic, Directions and Information program in the Ford SYNC® system. Drivers can also get instant vehicle status information, monitor the car's state of charge and current range, get alerts when it requires charging, remotely program charge settings and download vehicle data for analysis from their smartphone or a secure Ford website.

The MyFord Mobile app also allows drivers to tell their vehicle to use electricity from the grid to heat or cool the battery and cabin while the vehicle is still plugged in. This "preconditioning" of the vehicle's temperature is a key strategy drivers can use to maximize their driving range.

MyFord Mobile for EVs also adds a social element. Drivers can compare their driving efficiency to that of friends and other EV drivers. In addition, the system gives drivers virtual awards and badges for improvements in driving efficiency.

All of the vehicle's screens and control panels are integrated into the MyFord Mobile app's smartphone display, so that drivers can move seamlessly from their car to their phone displays.

Fast, Flexible and Easy Charging

Charging is one of the most important changes drivers have to get used to with a BEV or PHEV. We have gone to great lengths to make our charging systems fast, easy and economical.

The Focus Electric uses a 6.6 kW charger, which enables a best-in-class at-home charge time of just over three hours when using a 240V charge station installed in the customer's garage. That's half the time it takes our competitors to charge up.

U.S. drivers can also customize their charging preferences. Drivers can choose times when their car must be charged up and ready to go and set up a charging schedule that dictates when the charging starts and stops to meet those needs. They can also control vehicle charging using Value Charging by Microsoft, a system that communicates with local utilities and sets up charging times based on when utility rates are lowest in their area. Customers can reduce their electricity costs by taking advantage of off-peak or other reduced utility rates without a complicated setup process. With this technology, customers will be able to "set it and forget it," knowing their vehicle will only charge when utility rates are at their lowest. Ford electric vehicles are the first to work with this Microsoft system. Because Ford's EVs charge in half the time of competitors, we make it easier to get a complete charge within the time periods of the lowest utility rates.

We are also making charging easier with an easy-to-read "light ring" around the charge port. When the plug is connected, the light loops around the port twice. The light ring then illuminates in quadrants as the vehicle charges. Flashing quadrants signify that the charge is in progress. When the ring is solidly lit, the vehicle is fully charged.

We put a lot of thought into the actual charging station into which drivers will plug their vehicles. We are currently the only auto manufacturer to offer a "plug-and-play" charging system that is easy to install and portable, so you can take it with you if you move or move it to a new location in your existing garage. In the U.S., we worked with Leviton to develop a simple, ergonomic, easy-to-use charge station and with Best Buy to provide Best Buy/Geek Squad installation services. The set-up process is quick and easy for our customers and saves them as much as 30 percent on a charge station, versus the competition.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Maximizing Environmental Benefits of Electrified Vehicles

Full battery electric vehicles (BEVs) are considered "zero emission" because they don't release greenhouse gases or other pollutants during use. But that term can be misleading, because it takes electricity to charge the vehicle, and the power plant generating the electricity may also generate incremental emissions. Electric vehicles do reduce pollutants generated by burning petroleum fuel in the vehicle in proportion to the reduction in vehicle fuel consumption. However, replacing gasoline with electricity generated from coal, for example, results in emissions at the power plant, including carbon dioxide, nitrous oxides, sulfur dioxide, volatile organic compounds, carbon monoxide and particulate matter. As a result, the environmental benefits of BEVs and plug-in hybrid electric vehicles (PHEVs) depend largely on the fuels used to power the electrical grid. Operating a PHEV or BEV on the current average U.S. electrical grid, which relies heavily on coal power, has little emission advantage over a hybrid electric vehicle (HEV). (See the well to wheels carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions figures on the Comparing Electrification Technologies page.)

Plug-in vehicles could help to reduce overall CO_2 and other emissions if the electricity used to charge them were generated from cleaner fuels, and ideally renewable resources, which produce significantly fewer emissions than the coal and natural gas that are often used for power generation. In addition, "smart grids" that include grid-to-vehicle communications would enable utilities to make more-efficient use of electricity supplies, thereby potentially reducing emissions and electricity costs.

Energy Security Benefits of Electric Vehicles

The current energy demand for transportation is almost exclusively met by petroleum. In the U.S., for example, approximately 94 percent of transportation energy demand is provided by petroleum. The near-complete dependence of a vital economic sector on an import-dominated energy resource is clearly an issue of concern. One of the major benefits of increasing the proportion of electrified vehicles in the U.S. fleet is that it will diversify the transportation energy demand and provide increased energy security. HEVs reduce petroleum demand by increasing efficiency. PHEVs reduce petroleum demand due to increased efficiency and also switch some of the energy demand from petroleum to other sources. BEVs remove entirely the need for petroleum.

To realize the potential benefits of vehicle electrification, a range of issues must be addressed, including strategies to maximize their environmental benefits. Vehicle and fuel technologies interact in a complex system that includes vehicle technologies, battery technologies, fuel types and energy-generation technologies, all of which determine potential impacts on the environment and energy security.

Ford alone cannot solve these issues. However, we are working with partners, such as utilities, to make a contribution to maximizing the environmental benefits of electrified vehicles. We are also implementing technologies that will help customers drive their electrified vehicles to maximize efficiency, increasing other green features of our electric vehicles and implementing green manufacturing processes at our electric vehicle plants.

Maximizing Vehicle Efficiency

Electric vehicles are inherently more efficient than gasoline vehicles. Electric motors are more efficient in converting stored energy into vehicle propulsion than traditional internal combustion engines. Internal combustion engines can typically only use about 15 percent of the onboard fuel energy to power the vehicle, while electric motors have nearly 80 percent onboard efficiency. In addition, electric-drive vehicles do not consume energy while at rest nor coasting, and as much as one-fifth of the energy typically lost when braking is captured and reused through regenerative braking.

Ford has made it a priority to further maximize the efficiency of our electric vehicles. We optimized every system in the vehicle to ensure it would be as "electron efficient" as possible. In addition to using the latest technology for the battery and the rest of the electric-drive components, we have maximized efficiency through improved aerodynamics and low rolling resistance. In addition, we used our knowledge from two generations of hybrid electric vehicles to enhance the Focus Electric's range and efficiency through regenerative braking.

Maximizing Driving Efficiency

Our in-vehicle information systems also help drivers maximize their own driving efficiency to further increase the distance they can go on a single charge and reduce the overall costs of operating an EV. As described in Living the Electric Lifestyle, our electric vehicles can coach drivers how to drive more efficiently by changing their driving style, maximizing regenerative braking or minimizing the use of air conditioning. The vehicle information systems also provide information on range and vehicle energy use to help drivers track and maximize their driving

Related Links

This Report:
- Michigan Assembly Plant
- Sustainable Materials

efficiency.

Maximizing Charging Efficiency

The most important strategies for maximizing the efficiency and environmental benefits of electric vehicle charging require changes to the electrical grid and the fuels used to power it. Both increasing the use of renewable energy sources and investing in smart grid technologies will help to improve the environmental benefits of EVs. Many of these issues are beyond Ford's control. However, Ford is working with utilities and municipalities to make the most of electric vehicles' advantages. We are also doing what we can to provide efficient and environmentally friendly charging options.

- Using renewable energy: Recharging using electricity generated by renewable energy sources (such as solar, wind, hydropower or biomass) can cut CO_2 emissions dramatically. Smart vehicle-to-grid communication can help utilities better use renewable energy sources. For example, it can allow vehicles to recharge when wind power is most available (usually at night) or during the day from solar arrays, depending on the renewable source available and its output. As the power-generation sector continues to improve its fuel mix, the environmental impact of driving a plug-in vehicle will diminish substantially – perhaps even toward zero.

  Adding more renewable fuel sources to electrical grids will take time. Ford is working with utility partners to develop home-based solar recharging stations that will allow EV owners to obtain the power they need to charge their vehicles from renewable sources, even if the overall electricity grid powering their home has not shifted to renewable.

- "Smart grids and smart charging:" The development of "smart grid" technologies, which can provide utilities and customers with real-time information on energy use and energy prices, is a key enabler of efficient integration of electric vehicles and grids, and an important strategy to maximize EV efficiency and environmental benefits.

  Smart grids will help make the electrical grid and electrical vehicle charging more efficient by channeling vehicle recharging to times when electrical grid resources are currently underutilized. Since demand for electricity fluctuates (generally peaking in the afternoon and dropping off at night), utilities typically use a mix of fuels and power plant types to meet demand. That means the environmental impacts of electric vehicle use will vary depending on where and when the vehicles are charged. During certain seasons and particularly at night, utilities generally have excess generation capacity – unused resources that create financial inefficiency. Charging PHEVs and BEVs during these off-peak hours, when this excess capacity is available, can increase the overall efficiency of the electric grid – potentially reducing CO_2 emissions, as well as the cost of electricity. But if PHEVs and BEVs are charged at peak times, that could create increased CO_2 emissions from power generation and also create demand for additional power plants. Utilities have a role to play in educating electrified-vehicle users and providing them with incentives to charge their vehicles at the most beneficial times.

  With all these variables, utilities will be key partners in defining and developing electricity supply systems for electric vehicles that are efficient, affordable and environmentally sound. That's why Ford has partnered with several utilities throughout the U.S. and Canada, as well as with the U.S. Department of Energy, for its PHEV pilot program. For more information on our work with utilities, please see Collaborating with Utilities and Municipalities.

- Value Charging by Microsoft, which is available first on Ford U.S. vehicles, also helps to maximize the efficiency of charging and the environmental benefits of EVs. This system communicates with local utilities to find off-peak times to charge, which helps to prevent the need for infrastructure upgrades to support added energy demand and reduce the production of additional CO_2. Ford and Microsoft plan to continue to work with utility partners and municipalities to help further develop systems to maximize the effectiveness of electric vehicles and their interaction with the electricity grid.

A Holistic Environmental Approach

Reducing emissions and maximizing vehicle efficiency are just some of the elements of our strategy to maximize the environmental benefits of EVs. We are also using green power and green technologies to manufacture our EVs, and we are using green materials in our electrified vehicles and charging stations. The Michigan Assembly Plant, for example, which will produce the Focus Electric, C-MAX Energi and C-MAX Hybrid, in addition to the standard gas-powered Focus, will be powered by the largest solar array in the state of Michigan. We have partnered with DTE Energy to build this solar panel system at the plant. We are also working with DTE Energy to develop a stationary battery energy storage system that will store excess power produced by the solar array until it is needed in the plant. This battery storage system will use electric vehicle batteries that have reached the end of their useful lives in vehicles. This approach provides a second life for vehicle batteries, which reduces waste and maximizes the efficiency of solar power. The plant also draws power from local landfill gas, making productive use of methane generated from decaying trash, which reduces emissions of this potent greenhouse gas. The plant also uses solar-powered tugs, which move vehicles and parts around the plant. See the Michigan Assembly Plant case study for more details on these green manufacturing strategies.

Ford is also using green materials in our HEVs, BEVs and PHEVs, as well as many of our other vehicles, to further maximize their environmental benefits. For example, our existing HEVs use recycled-content seat fabrics. The Escape Hybrid, as well as the gas version, has been using soy foam seats for several years. Starting in 2011, all of our U.S. vehicles will use soy foam, including the Focus Electric. The Focus Electric will also use a material called Lignotock behind the cloth on

the door. Derived from 85 percent wood fibers, this renewable material reduces weight and provides better sound-deadening benefits compared to conventional glass-reinforced thermal plastics. In addition, the vehicle-charging stations we developed with Leviton use 60 percent recycled materials. For more information about our use of green materials in vehicles, please see Sustainable Materials.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Improving EV Affordability

The current cost to make plug-in vehicles is substantially higher than that of conventional vehicles, largely due to the cost of batteries. Depending on electricity costs, however, the energy cost to operate an all-electric car is in the range of 3 to 4 cents per mile, compared to about 8 to 16 cents[1] per mile for a conventional gasoline-powered vehicle. So, lower operating costs can help to offset the higher initial purchase costs of electric vehicles (EVs).

Automakers will need to invest billions of dollars to develop next-generation electrification technologies and electrified vehicles. Utilities will need to invest to increase electricity generation and transmission capacity, with generally higher costs for green electricity sources. Governments will also need to invest by encouraging and facilitating the development of technology and infrastructure and providing incentives for consumers to buy EVs. Ford is doing what it can to reduce the costs of manufacturing and operating EVs.

Reducing Vehicle Production Costs

We are planning our electric vehicle strategy based on our highest-volume global platforms, which can help to reduce the costs of electric vehicles by creating economies of scale. For example, the Focus Electric, C-MAX Hybrid and C-MAX Energi plug-in hybrid are all based on our global C-platform, which we expect to underpin 2 million vehicles annually.

We are using best-in-class flexible manufacturing technology in our Michigan Assembly Plant, which will produce the Focus Electric, C-MAX Hybrid and C-MAX Energi, as well as the gas-powered Focus. Flexible manufacturing allows us to switch production between different vehicles to meet changing customer demand without retooling our plant or assembly lines – a significant cost reduction.

Ford is working with a range of battery suppliers and other partners to develop next-generation battery technologies that will help to bring costs down. Please see Battery Technology for more information on advanced batteries for EVs.

Reducing Vehicle Operation Costs

The fuel costs of battery electric vehicles (BEVs) are significantly lower than for gasoline-powered vehicles. We are taking a range of steps to reduce the operating costs of EVs to help offset their higher purchase price.

Through our partnership with Microsoft to deliver Value Charging powered by Microsoft, we are helping EV owners find the most efficient times to charge their vehicles. This system helps customers reduce their electricity costs by taking advantage of off-peak or other reduced utility rates without a complicated setup process.

The MyFord Touch™-based in-vehicle communications systems on our electric vehicles, described in Living the Electric Lifestyle, also help reduce EV operating costs by enabling drivers to maximize their driving efficiency and in-vehicle energy use.

Our BEVs will also have lower maintenance requirements than gas-powered vehicles. The Focus Electric eliminates more than two-dozen mechanical components that would normally require attention during the life of the vehicle. So, for example, drivers won't have to get oil changes or change oil filters, fuel filters or spark plugs, or worry about a worn-out muffler or serpentine belt. Based on a regular oil change maintenance schedule, Focus Electric owners will save approximately $500 over the 150,000-mile life of the vehicle on oil change costs alone.

1. Assuming an energy consumption of about 3 to 4 miles/kWh at 12 cents/kWh for the electric vehicle, and a fuel economy of 30–40 miles/gallon at $3–$5/gallon for the gasoline vehicle.

Related Links

This Report:

- Battery Technology
- Michigan Assembly Plant

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Battery Technology

Current-generation hybrid electric vehicles (HEVs) run on nickel metal hydride batteries, which offer significant improvements over traditional lead-acid batteries. For example, nickel metal hydride batteries deliver twice the power output for the weight (energy density) compared to lead-acid batteries. Nickel metal hydride batteries have worked well in non-plug-in hybrids, which are designed to allow for constant discharging and recharging and are not expected to store and provide large amounts of energy. These batteries are reaching the end of their advancement potential, however, and new battery technologies are needed to improve on the current generation of HEVs.

Plug-in hybrid electric vehicles (PHEVs) and pure battery electric vehicles (BEVs) make significant additional demands on battery technology. Unlike HEVs, which maintain a relatively constant state of charge, PHEV batteries are to be depleted to a low level when they are the primary energy source for the vehicle. And BEVs are designed to run solely on battery power. The batteries used in PHEVs and BEVs must function well in a wide range of conditions; tolerate running until nearly depleted and then being fully charged; store and provide a lot of power; last a minimum of 10 years or 150,000 miles; and, ideally, be compact and lightweight.

Automakers are moving toward lithium-ion batteries for next-generation HEVs and for PHEVs and BEVs. These batteries have greater energy density and are lighter than nickel metal hydride batteries. However, the technology is still evolving, and costs are still relatively high. (See the section on Battery Evolution below).

It is also important to have a plan for recycling batteries at the end of their useful lives to minimize the material going to landfill, and to ensure that critical elements, such as rare earth metals and lithium, are recovered and reused in new batteries.

Battery Evolution

Battery technology is evolving. The following table shows how new battery technology, such as the nickel metal hydride batteries used in today's HEVs and the lithium-ion battery technology of next-generation electrified vehicles compare to the traditional 12-volt lead-acid battery.

	Lead-Acid	Nickel Metal Hydride (Ni-MH)	Lithium-Ion (Li-ion)
First commercial use	1859	1989	1991
Current automotive use	Traditional 12-volt batteries	Battery technology developed for today's generation of hybrid vehicles	Under development for future hybrid electric and battery electric vehicles; some manufacturers launching in limited volumes in 2010
Strengths	Long proven in automotive use	Twice the energy for the weight compared to lead-acid Proven robustness	About twice the energy content of Ni-MH and better suited to future plug-in electrified vehicle applications By taking up less space in the vehicle, provides far greater flexibility for automotive designers
Weaknesses	Heavy; its lower energy-to-weight ratio makes it unsuitable for electrified vehicle usage	High cost (four times the cost of lead-acid); limited potential for further development	Although proven in consumer electronics, this technology is still evolving for automotive applications Will remain relatively expensive until volume production is reached
Specific energy (watt hours per kilogram)	30–40	65–70	100–150
Recyclability	Excellent	Very good	Very good

Related Links

This Report:

- Michigan Assembly Plant
- Human Rights in the Supply Chain: Ford's Global Working Conditions Program
- Water

Ford has been working with battery supplier partners to develop next-generation battery technologies that can improve HEV performance and stand up to the new challenges presented by BEVs and PHEVs. For example, the performance of batteries varies with weather conditions. We are conducting tests of the effects of temperatures and other conditions so we understand and can communicate to customers the impacts on expected range between recharging.

Ford is also working with researchers at the University of Michigan and the Massachusetts Institute of Technology to develop and test improved lithium-ion battery technology.

All of Ford's electrified products, including HEVs, PHEVs and BEVs, will use lithium-ion battery cells by 2012. Lithium-ion battery packs offer a number of advantages over the nickel metal hydride batteries that power today's hybrid vehicles. In general, they are 25 to 30 percent smaller and 50 percent lighter, making them easier to package in a vehicle, and they can be tuned to increase power to boost acceleration, or to increase energy to extend driving distance.

The Focus Electric will be powered by a lithium-ion battery system that utilizes cooled and heated liquid to regulate battery temperature, extend battery life and maximize driving range. The innovative thermal management technology helps the Focus Electric operate efficiently in a range of ambient temperatures. Thermal management of lithium-ion battery systems is critical to the success of all-electric vehicles, because extreme temperatures can affect performance, reliability, safety and durability.

Ford is also developing a comprehensive strategy to address batteries that can no longer be used in vehicles. For example, we are working with DTE Energy to develop stationary energy storage systems from vehicle batteries that have reached the end of their useful life in vehicles. For more information on this project please see the Michigan Assembly Plant case study. In addition, Ford engages with all the parties that handle end-of-life batteries, including customers, local authorities, emergency services (e.g., tow trucks), dealerships, independent workshops and garages and vehicle recyclers. Customers can recycle their batteries with local recyclers or bring them to any Ford or Lincoln dealer for no-cost recycling.

Supply Chain Issues

As the widespread electrification of automobiles moves closer to reality, a new set of concerns is emerging regarding the environmental and social impacts of extracting and processing key materials needed to make electric vehicles. There are concerns about lithium (used to make the lithium-ion batteries that are widely used in consumer electronics and will be used in BEV and PHEV vehicles) and rare earth metals (which are used in electric motors for vehicles, wind turbines and other advanced technologies).

Significantly accelerating the production of electric vehicles is likely to require the use of much greater quantities of lithium and rare earth metals. Currently, production of these resources is concentrated in a few countries, including Chile, Bolivia and China, which has led to questions about the adequacy of the supply of these resources and the potential for rising and volatile prices as demand puts pressure on existing supplies. In addition, there are concerns about geopolitical risks posed by the limited availability of these materials. Could we be trading dependence on one limited resource (petroleum) for another? Attention is also focusing on the possibility of risks such as bribery and corruption and the potential for environmental and human rights abuses. Finally, the use of water in the production of these materials needs to be considered.

We take these concerns very seriously. We have conducted and published a study of lithium availability and demand with scientists at the University of Michigan. We found that there are sufficient resources of lithium to supply a large-scale global fleet of electric vehicles through at least the year 2100. The use of water during lithium production is typically very low. We are conducting a study of rare earth element availability and demand with scientists at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. Ford generally does not purchase raw materials such as lithium and rare earth metals directly – they are purchased by our suppliers (or their suppliers) and provided to us in parts for our vehicles. As described in the Supply Chain section of this report, our contracts with suppliers require compliance with the legal requirements of Ford's Code of Basic Working Conditions and the adoption of a certified environmental management system (ISO 14001). We are working in our supply chain to build the capability of our suppliers to provide sound working conditions in their operations, and we assess compliance with our Code of Basic Working Conditions in target markets. We ask the suppliers we work with to take similar steps with their suppliers. We are also working cooperatively with other automakers to extend this approach through the entire automotive supply chain.

As part of our water strategy, we are evaluating the water requirements and impacts of powering vehicles with conventional fuels, biofuels and electricity. This work includes a study of the water requirements of lithium extraction and processing (which, based on our understanding of the extraction of lithium from brines in arid areas, we anticipate will be low).

We will continue to monitor and assess these issues for their potential impact on our electrification strategy and our sustainability commitments.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Collaborating with Utilities and Municipalities

Clearly, electric vehicles (EVs) will have an impact on electric utilities. If EVs are charged during times of peak electricity demand, they may stress the current grid and require the construction of additional electricity supply. Furthermore, recharging vehicles during peak demand would significantly reduce the operating cost benefits expected from electric vehicles. To maximize recharging efficiency and minimize stress to the grid, "smart grid" technology that allows communication between recharging vehicles and the electrical grid will be required. Automakers and utilities will have to work together to develop this "smart" vehicle-to-grid communication system. Overcoming these challenges will require significant collaboration between automakers, electric utilities and governmental regulatory agencies and legislators.

Because utilities and automakers have not had to work together in the past, effective collaboration requires developing new relationships and learning about each other's business and regulatory challenges. For example, utilities and automakers have very different business models: utilities operate regionally and have little to no direct competition within their markets, while automakers operate and compete globally. Further, automakers are primarily regulated at the national level, while utilities face more local and state regulations, which increases the difficulty of establishing a national strategy for vehicle-to-grid interaction. It will be important for automakers and utilities to understand and address these kinds of differences as they work together on vehicle electrification issues.

Ford has taken the lead in forging relationships with utilities and municipalities to address these challenges and facilitate the successful implementation of electric vehicles. In 2007, we initiated the Ford Plug-in Project, a collaborative effort involving the U.S. Department of Energy, the Electric Power Research Institute, the New York State Energy Research and Development Authority, and 10 utilities (Southern California Edison, American Electric Power, ConEdison of New York, DTE Energy, National Grid, New York Power Authority, Progress Energy, Southern Company-Alabama Power, Pepco Holdings and Hydro Quebec). Through this project we are road testing our Ford Escape plug-in hybrid prototypes that are equipped with vehicle-to-electric smart grid communications and control systems that will enable plug-in electric vehicles to interface with the electric grid, and will allow the vehicle operator to determine when and for how long to recharge the vehicle. This will potentially enable the user to take advantage of lower, off-peak utility rates.

We are also working with utilities, municipalities and states across the country to develop and facilitate the use of EV implementation best practices. Some of the key issues we are working on with local utilities and municipalities include the following:

- **Time-of-use electricity rates**: We are encouraging utilities to adopt a "time-of-use" rate structure, which would enable them to charge different rates at different times of the day based on overall electricity demand. Under a time-of-use structure, electricity rates would be lower at night when there is lower demand on the electrical grid. Since most EVs charge at night, this increases the benefits of electrified vehicles for consumers. It also helps utilities by giving customers an incentive to charge at times when electrical demand is already low, which helps to balance out utilities' electrical loads.
- **Maximizing the publicly accessible recharging infrastructure**: We are working with municipalities and utilities to develop more public recharging stations and to encourage a thoughtful and holistic approach to planning for publicly accessible recharging. In the next 18 months, we expect to see at least 12,000 publicly accessible charge stations installed in cities throughout the U.S., up from about 1,800 currently. This is an important step in fostering electrified vehicle use. However, the placement and design of publicly accessible charging stations requires careful consideration to maximize their usefulness to EV drivers. We are endorsing a holistic "urban planning" approach to charging station development in which local officials actively plan the locations for publicly accessible EV charging based on traffic patterns and the locations of other charging stations. This kind of approach will result in charging locations that are used more often and will make more-efficient use of investment dollars. We are also encouraging standard rules and signage for public refueling infrastructure that would tell drivers what type of charging is available, the hours when EVs can use charging stations, the length of time an EV can remain plugged in and how rules for charging stations are enforced.
- **Standards for private third-party charging stations and the resale of electricity**: In many cases, publicly available refueling stations will be installed and run by private businesses, such as gas stations and restaurants. In most states, when a third party resells their electricity, as they would to an EV driver, they are considered a regulated utility and face the same stringent regulations a utility must follow. We are working with states to encourage updating regulations so that reselling electricity for transportation would not be subject to utility-like regulations. This will encourage the development of more publicly accessible recharging stations.
- **Home EV charging station permitting process**: Homeowners are required to get a

Related Links

External Websites:

- U.S. Department of Energy
- Electric Power Research Institute
- New York State Energy Research Development Authority

permit from their municipality and/or utility to install a home EV charging station. Historically this process can take more than two weeks. We have been working with utilities and municipalities to encourage reducing the permitting process to a couple of days.

- Promoting EV incentives: Through our work with cities and utilities, we have identified a range of actions that will help consumers make the transition to electrified vehicles – for example, infrastructure incentives to offset a portion of customer costs for hardware/installation.
- Building codes for new construction: We are working with municipalities to develop codes for new building construction that would make them "EV ready," with best practices such as wiring for EV chargers.

We are working on these issues in a variety of ways. Much of this work is focused on the 19 markets we have identified as our initial targets for EV sales. In these markets, we are involved in direct partnerships with utilities and municipalities. We are also serving in a formal advisory role to utilities in several states. Ford is an active member of the Electric Drive Transportation Association, an industry group that is working to implement EVs in the U.S. And, we are testifying before state legislatures around the country to endorse legislation that will facilitate the successful implementation of EVs.

Our collaborations with utilities and municipalities are yielding key lessons that we are incorporating into our continued efforts to make electrified vehicles successful in the real world. Some of the key learnings we have gained so far include the following:

- Electric vehicles provide additional impetus to develop smart communication systems between the vehicle and the grid. This communication will allow the consumer to know if and when lower electricity rates are available (as some utilities will offer lower rates during the night when energy demand is low), and help prevent additional loads on the infrastructure. Providing utilities the ability to control when vehicles are charged, or assurances that vehicles will not be charged during peak demand time, could prevent costly infrastructure upgrades, some of which may be passed back to the customer by the utility (e.g., if a transformer needs to be upgraded).
- Smart vehicle charging will require that utilities and automakers develop a common standard for vehicle-to-grid and grid-to-home meter communications. Currently, utilities tend to operate regionally, but electric vehicles will increase the need for common national and even international standards. We have worked to develop a common charging standard in the U.S., and we are now focused on fostering the development of an internationally common charging standard.
- Widespread use of electric vehicles will likely require that vehicle power consumption be measured separately from home electricity use, requiring either additional meters or "smart" meters. In addition, the pooling of electrified vehicles in a particular region may require upgrades to the transformers and/or substations that form the electrical grid in that area.
- There are interesting possibilities for vehicle-to-grid and vehicle-to-home power flow. However, there are also significant challenges to making these possibilities a reality. For example, technical, safety, codes/standards compliance, legal, robustness and business case issues need further study prior to commercialization.
- Vehicle owners will likely want to be able to charge their vehicles at any geographic location and – in those cases where another payment method isn't used – have the cost applied to their home energy bill. In addition, vehicle identification and home meter association must be seamless for the customer. This kind of mobile or remote billing for vehicle charging services will require a paradigm shift in the utility industry's current billing processes and tools.
- Automakers and utilities both benefit from working together on outreach to local, state and federal regulators and legislators. Ford and our utility partners are already working with legislators and regulators on national standards for vehicle charging infrastructure and incentives and strategies to bring costs down.
- Utilities and automakers need to work together to educate consumers about the differences between electric vehicles and traditional vehicles so that consumers understand how to make the most of electric vehicles and charging infrastructure.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Partnerships and Collaboration

Addressing the linked issues of climate change and energy security requires an integrated approach – a partnership of all stakeholders, including the automotive industry, the fuel industry, other industries and enterprises, governments and consumers. It will also require the best thinking from all of these sectors.

Ford is involved in numerous partnerships and alliances with universities, coalitions, nongovernmental organizations and other companies to improve our understanding of climate change. For example, Ford is:

- A charter member of the Sustainable Transportation Energy Pathways Program at the Institute of Transportation Studies at the University of California at Davis. The Institute aims to compare the societal and technical benefits of alternative sustainable fuel pathways.
- A member of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology's Joint Program on the Science and Policy of Global Climate Change.

Our participation in these and other partnerships helps us to formulate improved strategies for products and policies that will in turn help to address climate change and energy security. The following are links to the above-mentioned organizations and others with which we cooperate on climate change issues:

- 25x'25 (Energy Future Coalition)
- BP
- Center for Clean Air Policy's Climate Policy Initiative
- Clean Fuels Development Coalition
- Diesel Technology Forum
- Governors' Biofuels Coalition
- Harvard University, Belfer Center for Science and International Affairs
- MIT Joint Program on the Science and Policy of Global Change
- Growth Energy
- Princeton University's Carbon Mitigation Initiative
- U.S. Climate Action Partnership
- University of California at Davis, Institute of Transportation Studies Sustainable Transportation Energy Pathways Program
- Worldwide Business Council for Sustainable Development
- World Resources Institute
- World Economic Forum

Related Links

External Websites:

- MIT Joint Program on the Science and Policy of Global Change
- University of California at Davis, Institute of Transportation Studies Sustainable Transportation Energy Pathways Program

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Water

2010 HIGHLIGHTS...

- Identified water as a top sustainability concern
- Refined our corporate water strategy
- Reduced water use per vehicle by 8.5 percent in 2010
- Assessing our water footprint throughout the vehicle lifecycle

Water availability, quality and access have rapidly become critical global issues extending well beyond environmental concerns. Water is essential to every element of human existence on our planet. It is vital for health, indispensable for agriculture and biodiversity, necessary for industry and critical for community development. The need for clean water cuts across all social, economic, environmental and political boundaries.

At Ford, water conservation is an integral part of our sustainability strategy, alongside greenhouse gas reduction. Many key vehicle manufacturing processes require the use of water, and water is used at every point in our supply chain. Our water-related risks come not only from being a direct water consumer, but from being a large purchaser of water-intensive materials, parts and components.

In preparation for this 2010 Sustainability Report, Ford conducted a new materiality analysis to determine the issues of highest priority for our Company and our stakeholders. For the first time, water emerged among the top concerns, and we now include it among the top material issues for our Company. Indeed, we recognize that our long-term success is dependent upon thriving communities and ecosystems, both of which require water.

Although we have been working on water-related issues for some time, at the end of 2010, we refined our Ford Motor Company water strategy, and our Board of Directors reviewed our water-related progress in early 2011. The water strategy is described in this section of the report along with details of our progress, targets and water-related impacts, among other topics.

To understand our water impacts, we have undertaken an assessment of our water footprint throughout the lifecycle of our vehicles.

Ford recognizes water as a human rights issue – a “right to water.” Companies that underperform on water issues will face scrutiny over human rights violations – especially those companies operating in water-stressed areas.

We see water as a local issue directly influenced by availability, quality and economics. We target facility water reductions based on local needs, while using a holistic, company-wide approach.

Perspectives on Sustainability

Monica Ellis

Chief Executive Officer, Global Environment & Technology Foundation and Chief Executive Officer, Global Water Challenge

READ MORE

Related Links

This Report:

- Water Use

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Global Landscape

With water pollution increasing and the world's population growing, access to clean water is growing more uncertain. Approximately 1 billion people around the world lack access to safe, clean drinking water, and 2.5 billion lack sanitation facilities.[1] As global populations grow, demand for clean water soars, too.

Among some of the sobering statistics:

- Less than 3 percent of the Earth's water is freshwater. Of that, less than 0.5 percent is accessible to plants, animals and humans.[2]
- Water use has been increasing at more than double the rate of human population growth.[3]
- By 2025, 1.8 billion people will be living in countries or regions with absolute water scarcity, and two-thirds of the world population could be under stress conditions.[3]
- At least 1.8 million children under age 5 die each year from water-related diseases.[4]

1. Source: UN Water, WHO/Unicef
2. Source: National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
3. Source: Food and Agriculture Organization (FAO) of the United Nations
4. United Nations Environment Programme

Progress at Ford

More than a decade ago, Ford made a commitment to decrease our water use, setting a target of 3 percent year-over-year reductions. Since we launched our Global Water Management Initiative in 2000, we have made outstanding progress. Our global manufacturing facilities have saved approximately 10.5 billion gallons of water over the past 10 years – a 62 percent reduction. Water use per vehicle decreased by 49 percent from 2000 to 2010.

We have taken a broad range of actions that have helped us minimize our water footprint. For example, we implemented a reverse-osmosis process to recycle water in a number of our production plants, allowing us to avoid using higher-quality water suitable for human consumption. We've employed an innovative parts-washing system to reduce wastewater and cut energy consumption. We have also looked to new technologies, such as one that lubricates cutting tools with a fine spray of oil, rather than the conventional wet machining that previously required pumping millions of gallons of metal-working fluids and water to cool and lubricate tools.

These actions don't attract many headlines – but they make an impact. And they reflect our commitment to reduce our environmental impacts.

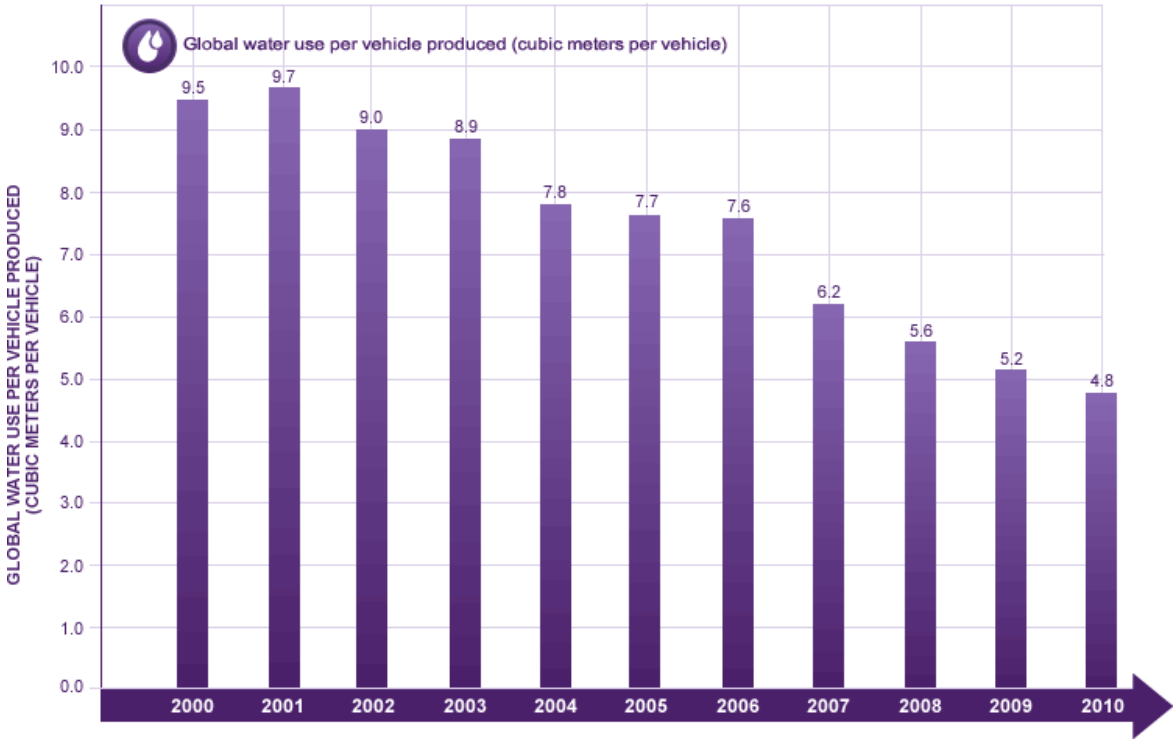
For 2011, we are aiming for a global water reduction of 5 percent per vehicle compared to 2010. Moving forward, we also will be setting internal year-over-year efficiency targets as part of the annual environmental quality business planning process within each of our global regions. And we will be requiring all of our plants to perform basic, low-cost water-reduction actions.

If we want to continue to reduce our water footprint, we must implement a more global approach that cascades best practices from our own plants – and from other industries. We have been benchmarking our peers and other manufacturers to look for water-saving techniques that can be adapted to Ford locations. We will also be looking at other management techniques, such as the introduction of critical monitoring and efficiency projects, the integration of new technologies and facility upgrades, and the alignment of resources.

For more on our water-reduction efforts to date, please see the Environment section of this report.

Related Links

This Report:
- Environment Data: Water Use



Impacts, Risks and Opportunities

Water scarcity can have a sizeable impact on our manufacturing operations. Although we do not use as much water as some other industries, we consume water in many key manufacturing phases in our plants. We cannot be certain that we will always have access to water.

Global climate change also has the potential to impact the availability and quality of water.

Water services are the most capital-intensive of all utilities provided, requiring more infrastructure for the delivery of water than the delivery of electricity, for example. According to the World Bank, a $400 billion to $600 billion investment will be needed in global water infrastructure in the next two decades. Meanwhile, the United Nations Educational Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) estimates that between $111 billion and $180 billion will be needed per year to meet Millennium Development Goals for sanitation by 2015.[1]

In the U.S., the Environmental Protection Agency estimates the country will need to invest $202.5 billion over the next 20 years in wastewater facilities, and an additional $122 billion will be needed to ensure safe drinking water supplies.

Given these anticipated expenditures, the cost of using water is expected to continue to increase in the coming decades. For a manufacturing company like ours, this would mean higher operating costs. Already, in some locations, rate increases from 2000 to 2009 outpaced water reductions, and our costs will continue to rise if we don't make further improvements.

Increasing water scarcity means industrial needs can be at odds with community and environmental needs for water to deploy. Industrial facilities in water-stressed areas will have reduced access to water and/or may endure rising water costs. Suppliers within water-stressed areas will also be affected.

Another possible risk for Ford is the water intensity of alternative fuels, such as biofuels and electricity, which require greater amounts of water. We are assessing the consequences for water quality and availability that may result from the increased production of electric and battery–electric vehicles, including the use of lithium.

Tracking and reporting our water usage helps us to manage water-related risks and, as a result, allows us to play a significant role in developing and implementing solutions to the water challenge going forward. We see opportunities for:

- Reduced manufacturing costs through process improvements and new technologies that better track our water usage and enable us to target resource use improvements
- Improved water efficiency, leading to reduced energy consumption (and emissions) as a byproduct of increased water efficiency

Water availability is a local issue with global implications. Working on solutions helps us to secure a "license to operate" in diverse global locations and can enhance our reputation in local communities.

1. In 2000, the United Nations set eight goals for development, called the Millennium Development Goals, to improve the global human condition by 2015.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Water Strategy Approach

Ford's new water strategy looks at our water use from both an environmental and a social perspective.

Over the past year, we set up a cross-functional team from across Ford divisions – including our environmental quality, manufacturing, purchasing and community engagement functions – to review water issues in a more holistic way. This team has been meeting with a variety of groups – such as the Interfaith Center on Corporate Responsibility (ICCR), the U.N. Global Compact, the U.S. State Department, the Global Water Challenge and Circle of Blue – to gain a better appreciation of outside stakeholder perspectives.

Also in 2010, we became a founding responder to Water Disclosure, a Carbon Disclosure Project (CDP) initiative that launched in late 2009 to help institutional investors better understand the business risks and opportunities associated with water scarcity and related issues. The CDP's original project focused on corporate disclosures of greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions and climate change strategies, and we found our participation in that project to be very beneficial in helping us formulate our strategy for GHG reporting. We anticipate similar benefits from CDP Water Disclosure, which is providing a globally harmonized method for companies to report on water usage, water risks and water management.

We chose to become part of the project because we believe it can help companies move toward greater understanding of water as a strategic business issue, as well as offer encouragement to implement effective water management and conservation.

University Collaboration

Ford is collaborating with Georgia Institute of Technology in Atlanta to develop innovative processes that will better enable us to maintain our commitment to water reductions, particularly as we expand into water-scarce regions in India, China, South Africa and Mexico.

Georgia Tech's Sustainable Design and Manufacturing program is collaborating with us to develop our water footprint, researching the environmental issues surrounding the lifecycle of our vehicles, including the use of water in the manufacturing process. The university has worked with Ford on a number of multidisciplinary issues related to sustainable development.

Georgia Tech is also helping us conduct research on the water-intensity of biofuels and battery materials, such as lithium. Lastly, researchers there are helping us identify the best manufacturing technologies to improve our stationary water use.

Elements of our Water Strategy

Our water strategy actions aim to meet a number of objectives. These include:

- Minimizing global water consumption at Ford facilities while maximizing reuse
- Finding ways to use alternative, lower-quality water sources
- Prioritizing our investments based on local water scarcity and cost concerns
- Meeting either local quality standards or Ford global standards for wastewater discharge – whichever is more stringent
- Ensuring a stable water supply for our manufacturing facilities while working with local communities to minimize our impact

Looking Ahead

As we further embed our water strategy into our global operations, Ford will be exploring new ways we can measure, monitor and reduce our water use. We will be looking at new investments in technologies and targeted reuse opportunities. We will pursue unified industry solutions for water reductions within the supply chain to improve lifecycle water use. Our initial focus will be on water-intensive industry segments, including aluminium and steel.

We also will be signing the United Nations' CEO Water Mandate.

In addition, we will be working to safeguard the quality of the water we use in order to protect the health of our workforce and local communities. Our Ford Volunteer Corps, meanwhile, is placing a priority on water-based community projects during our Global Week of Caring and Accelerated

Action Days. In 2010, for example, Ford Shanghai office employees collected more than $10,000 to fund the installation of 52 freshwater tanks in western China communities. (See the Communities section for more on these programs).

Improving Water Access and Hygiene in Chennai, India

Beginning in mid-2011, Ford will be working with WaterAid America on a program to improve water access, sanitation facilities and hygiene education in three schools in Chennai, India.

The program, WaterAid in India (WAI), will partner with the Integrated Women's Development Institute, which has a proven track record of improving sanitation and hygiene issues in schools.

Each year, more than 385,000 Indian children die as a result of diarrhea and other diseases caused by unsafe water and poor sanitation. And although the country has one of the largest education systems in the world, the sanitary conditions in many schools are appalling. Only 44 percent have water supply, 19 percent have urinals, 8 percent have toilets and 19 percent of those with toilets have separate facilities for boys and girls.

WAI, which is receiving financial aid from Ford, will identify schools in the Chennai area that lack access to safe water and sanitation, and will build new sanitation facilities and help improve water quality.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Case Study: Water Reductions at the Chihuahua Engine Plant

The Mexican state of Chihuahua has witnessed an industrial boom within the last several decades, with multinational firms setting up production facilities for auto manufacturing, aerospace and electronics, to name a few.

But the region, which shares a border with the United States, has suffered from droughts, with rainfalls that have been well below average, especially the last few years. The mighty Rio Grande River – the primary source of water for the region – can't keep pace with a growing population and a booming manufacturing base.

Ford opened our Chihuahua Engine Plant (CHEP) in Chihuahua City, the state's capital, in 1983. As water resources became increasingly stressed, we began to look for ways to reduce our water footprint and limit our impact on the surrounding community. We started making significant changes in our manufacturing processes about six years ago; today, we're proud to say that the plant does not use a single drop of potable water for anything except human use.

In Chihuahua City, most of the local residents are only able to receive water in their homes at certain times during the day. The industrial park where CHEP is located has its own wells and its own water supply lines; however, the underground wells pump water from the same underground reservoirs that supply fresh water to local residents.

"We were very conscious of the fact that water is not an abundant resource in the areas in Mexico where Ford has manufacturing operations," said Luis Lara, environmental quality manager for Ford Mexico. "We implemented an aggressive set of actions for water conservation, including a vision that we would use potable water for personal uses only, and that the rest of the water for the plant would be treated and re-used."

The facility has its own wastewater treatment plant, which has been updated and modified to recycle and reuse as much water as possible. About 80 percent of the treated water goes back into the industrial process; the rest is used for land irrigation around the plant.

Indeed, the plant, which has zero discharge to the municipal sewer system, won the 2010 Environmental Leadership for Competitiveness Award from the Mexican government for projects that are saving more than 32,000 cubic meters of water a year. At CHEP, these initiatives include:

- Using reverse-osmosis-treated gray water from the city's water system, instead of drinking-quality water, in the cooling towers of compressor machines and other manufacturing processes, such as washing machines and coolant systems. This system saves more than 3,500 cubic meters of water per year and more than 290,000 pesos per year, equivalent to about $25,000.
- Using more reverse-osmosis-treated water, rather than drinkable water, for washing equipment and floors in the facility. This saves an estimated 28 cubic meters of fresh water per year and approximately 475,000 pesos ($40,500) in reduced water, labor and cleaning costs.
- Implementing a new floor cleaning system that saves another 112 cubic meters annually.

Our Company's recently updated water strategy focuses on regions – such as Chihuahua, Mexico, and Chennai, India – where water is scarce.

"We recognize that water is an important issue everywhere, but we want to focus our efforts where the needs are greatest," said Andy Hobbs, director of Ford's Environmental Quality Office. "This enables both Ford and the communities in which it operates to achieve the most benefits."

Much of the technology used at CHEP is cutting edge. For example, CHEP uses an ultra-filtration membrane process followed by reverse osmosis. We are also implementing this advanced water recycling technology at our Hermosillo Stamping and Assembly Plant, located in the Sonora Desert in Mexico. We will continue to assess opportunities to use advanced water conservation technologies and reduce our overall water consumption across our operations, especially in water-stressed regions.

Chihuahua Engine Plant Facts

- Year opened: 1983
- Total employment: 1,300
- Products: 2.0L and 2.5L Duratec engine, 4.4L and 6.7L diesel engine
- Site size: 247 acres
- Plant size: 1,431,600 square feet

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Sustainable Supply Chain Management

2010 HIGHLIGHTS...

- With the AIAG, trained 463 suppliers in Turkey and Brazil on working conditions issues
- The first automaker to issue a disclosure statement for the California Transparency in Supply Chains Act of 2010 (SB 657).
- The only automaker to participate in the Carbon Disclosure Project's Supply Chain Program
- Asked to join the UN Global Compact's Supply Chain Sustainability Advisory Committee

Ford's suppliers are critical allies in helping our Company to achieve success in the marketplace and meet our sustainability goals. We promote long-term relationships with our suppliers and seek alignment with them on sustainability-related issues such as greenhouse gas emissions management and human rights.

The basis of our work with suppliers is the Ford Code of Basic Working Conditions. This Code was formally adopted in 2003 and applies to our own operations as well as our $65 billion supply chain. It addresses workplace issues such as working hours, child labor and forced labor as well as non-discrimination, freedom of association, health and safety, the environment and other issues.

We work to ensure that Ford and our suppliers have management systems in place to mitigate potential risks, ensure continuity of supply and improve the overall sustainability of the complex global automotive supply chain. Our aim is to leverage our supply chain – and our industry – to make a positive impact in the markets in which we do business.

We take a three-pronged approach to engagement with suppliers on sustainability issues:

- **Building Capability at Individual Supplier Facilities:** We work with suppliers to encourage the management of sustainability issues. We conduct supplier training supported by assessments and remediation at individual factories.
- **Engagement with Strategic Suppliers:** Ford and our strategic production suppliers work together at the corporate level to align and enhance approaches to a range of sustainability issues.
- **Collaborating with Peers in the Automotive Industry:** To achieve truly lasting change, we are leading work with our counterparts in the automotive industry, often through the Automotive Industry Action Group (AIAG), to develop common approaches to a full range of sustainability issues.

Accomplishments

In 2010, our human rights and environmental responsibility accomplishments in the supply chain included the following:

- Independently, Ford trained suppliers in Romania on systemic solutions to working conditions challenges and assessed 136 supplier factories around the world for compliance with Ford and legal requirements. Ford global totals now exceed 1,655 suppliers trained and 751 suppliers assessed.
- Together with other automakers through the AIAG, we trained 463 supplier companies in Turkey and Brazil. The industry total across five countries now exceeds 1,260 suppliers trained.
- We continued to work with our strategic suppliers to ensure that they have robust Codes of Conduct and supporting management systems and engage with their suppliers. This work also supports responsible purchasing practices in the raw material supply chain.

Perspectives on Sustainability

Tony (Thomas K.) Brown

Group Vice President, Global Purchasing, Ford Motor Company

READ MORE

Related Links

This Report:

- Code of Basic Working Conditions
- Sustainable Raw Materials
- Supplier Relationships
- Human Rights in the Supply Chain: Ford's Global Working Conditions Program
- Supply Chain Environmental Sustainability
- Case Study: Forced Labor in the Pig Iron Supply Chain in Brazil

- We surveyed 35 suppliers regarding greenhouse gas emissions and achieved a 75 percent response rate. Eighty percent of respondents said they track their emissions, and 50 percent said they externally report their emissions.
- Through the AIAG, we helped to establish common industry guidance and a reporting format for greenhouse gas emissions, to be used by global automakers and Tier 1 suppliers.
- We expanded the scope of the AIAG's industry supplier training to include business ethics and environmental responsibility and helped to secure additional sponsorship by European-based automakers.
- We were asked to join the United Nations Global Compact's Supply Chain Sustainability Advisory Committee and contributed to the landmark publication of the ***Supply Chain Sustainability: A Practical Guide for Continuous Improvement*** and its associated website.

In 2010, Ford initiated a holistic risk assessment of direct and indirect raw material supply chains. Ford feels strongly that cooperation within industry, as well as with multiple stakeholders, will be required to effectively address the human rights and environmental impacts of mining and other raw material production processes.

This section provides background on our relationships with our suppliers and details our supply chain work to support human rights, promote environmental sustainability and explore human rights and environmental issues related to raw materials. The complexity of issues surrounding raw material supply chains are discussed in a case study of Forced Labor in Brazilian charcoal production. We also detail our efforts to promote diversity among our suppliers.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Supplier Relationships

The automotive supply chain is one of the most complicated of any industry. Automakers like us rely on thousands of suppliers to provide the materials, parts and services to make our final products. Our own direct (Tier 1) supply chain, for example, involves a million people and more than 100,000 parts made at more than 4,000 manufacturing sites (See Supply Chain Profile.). Many suppliers serve numerous automakers. And each of those suppliers, in turn, have multiple suppliers. There are often six to 10 levels of suppliers between an automaker and the source of raw materials that eventually enter the manufacturing process. The breadth, depth and interconnectedness of the automotive supply chain make it challenging to effectively manage business and sustainability issues.

Ford and its suppliers must work jointly to deliver great products, have a strong business and make a better future. In today's economic environment, achieving lower costs, improving quality and meeting sustainability goals require an unprecedented level of cooperation with suppliers and the maintenance of strong supplier relationships.

Beginning in 2005, we introduced an Aligned Business Framework (ABF) with our strategic suppliers to accomplish these goals. In 2010, we expanded the ABF, designating additional companies to join this select group of key component and service suppliers chosen for closer collaboration on a global basis where possible. With the new suppliers named in 2010 and early 2011, the ABF network now includes 102 companies, including 75 production and 27 nonproduction suppliers from around the world. Minority- and women-owned suppliers make up more than 10 percent of the ABF network.

We are committed to maintaining strong relationships with our ABF and other suppliers by:

- Adhering to Ford Supplier Relationship Values
- Deploying a single global product-creation process that combines aggressive execution of product plans with minimal variances
- Enhancing process stability, commonality and reusability
- Improving communication by providing real-time performance data to the supply base
- Providing suppliers with greater access to senior Ford managers in small-group settings
- Establishing organizational stability models in Manufacturing, Product Development and Purchasing
- Improving order fulfillment
- Engaging the supply base in discussions about process stability, incoming quality and corporate responsibility, and involving suppliers in coalitions to create awareness of industry issues

It is important that our suppliers share our commitment to environmental and social responsibility. This improves the flow and quality of information critical to continuity of supply and compliance to regulation. It also helps to ensure efficiency and quality throughout the supply chain. Shared commitment helps us avoid risks to our operations and reputation that can arise due to substandard practices in our supply chain (see, for example, the Brazilian charcoal case study). We have developed a set of programs and partnerships to help align our suppliers' practices with our own.

Corporate Responsibility Recognition of Achievement Award

For several years, Ford has recognized supplier companies that demonstrate leadership in environmental and social performance with a corporate responsibility award. Suppliers must meet several criteria, including ISO 14001 certification at all manufacturing sites, an operational Code of Conduct aligned with international standards, an exemplary material management reporting record and demonstration of overall sustainability leadership by incorporating environmental and social considerations into their business.

In June 2010, Ford selected three winners for the 2009 Corporate Responsibility Recognition of Achievement Award: BASF, Johnson Controls and Visteon. The Recognition of Achievement Award is given to suppliers that improve customer satisfaction by leading key initiatives in several areas, including: Corporate Responsibility; New Consumer-Focused Technology; Warranty Improvement; Diversity and Community Service; and Consumer Driven Six Sigma.

Related Links

This Report:

- Supply Chain Profile
- Case Study: Forced Labor in the Pig Iron Supply Chain in Brazil

External Websites:

- BASF
- Johnson Controls
- Visteon

Supply Chain Profile

Production

(Products that become part of the vehicle)

60+

countries in which suppliers are located

36

emerging markets in which suppliers are located

17

emerging markets considered to have risks of substandard working conditions. These countries were identified as higher risk based on consultation with nongovernmental organizations, other companies with human rights experience, local Ford operations and various media and government reports.

90

Ford manufacturing sites

1,400+

supplier companies (Tier 1)

4,400+

supplier manufacturing sites

130,000

parts currently being manufactured

250+

production commodities to manage

Nonproduction

(Products and services that do not become part of the vehicle, such as construction, computers, industrial materials, health care, machinery, trains, advertising)

9,000+

supplier companies

600+

nonproduction commodities

TOTAL GLOBAL BUY

$65+ billion

Creating a Sustainable Supply Chain: A Developmental Approach

Within our global supply base, we have long-term, strategic relationships with a select number of suppliers. Relationships with these suppliers are structured through the Aligned Business Framework, which is designed to create a sustainable business model to increase mutual profitability, improve quality and drive innovation.

The bilateral ABF agreements comprehensively and formally spell out 20 key business commitments to which Ford and the ABF suppliers must adhere. One element of the ABF agreement is the commitment by suppliers to manage and assure proper working conditions, including responsible environmental management, in their facilities and in their supply chain. (ABF suppliers must also adhere to our Global Terms and Conditions.) This commitment is important for several reasons. Beyond the simple fact that it is the right thing to do, there are specific business benefits to Ford and suppliers in reducing the risk of operational or reputational issues that could affect production. The commitment also provides an opportunity for joint action by Ford and its suppliers to ensure responsible behavior throughout the automotive supply chain.

Ford is facilitating this ABF commitment through a three-phase developmental process, in which ABF suppliers are asked to:

1. Develop or verify that they have a code of conduct aligned with Ford's Code of Basic Working Conditions and internationally accepted principles
2. Conduct internal training and develop compliance processes supporting their code
3. Extend these expectations to their sub-tier suppliers

Ford has committed to providing suppliers with a range of support and assistance based on our experience in this area. We have developed in-depth resource guides and coordinated presentations by subject matter experts to give suppliers information and background on human rights and greenhouse gas emissions estimation. We have provided tools such as worksheets for emissions tracking and reporting and code of conduct development. We are sharing the training materials we have developed, as well as information and guidance on our compliance and training processes. Finally, we have committed to working with suppliers to help resolve issues and concerns.

The Ford Supply Chain Sustainability staff have implemented a robust process of review at each of the three phases or milestones, thus ensuring that suppliers meet our expectations. We are making good progress in this developmental work with our ABF suppliers. Twenty percent of our strategic suppliers have met all three Ford milestones – that is, they have codes of conduct in place that are aligned with international standards and supported by robust management systems governing their own operations and their supply chain. The intent is for our ABF suppliers to wholly own responsibility for sustainability in their supply chain. As of 2011, ABF suppliers still participate in the factory-level Working Conditions Program if requested by Ford, but over time, we expect the need for their participation to decline.

Through our work with ABF suppliers to date, we have found key success factors that have enabled companies to make notable progress, including: (1) the identification of executive decision makers to coordinate cross-functional efforts; (2) the support of executive management and/or the Board of Directors; and (3) facilitation by Ford of discussions and implementation support through individual or regional in-person meetings. In general, companies that have been able to make progress in aligning with these ABF expectations have been those that have not been in significant financial distress and may already have aligned values, but had not necessarily institutionalized those values through policies and programs. Many of these companies approach responsible working conditions and environmental management in a systemic manner with implementation and supporting management systems in mind. The extension of working conditions and environmental expectations to the ABF companies' own supply base has proven to be the biggest challenge, given resource constraints and general lack of expertise and knowledge of the issues. The creation of tools and guidance by workgroups at the AIAG and the United Nations Global Compact have been useful to our ABF suppliers in their development of sustainable supply chain systems.

During the fourth quarter of 2010, we held our annual ABF sustainability meeting in Dearborn, Michigan. It was attended by senior management from Ford and our ABF suppliers. The meeting included a workshop on sustainable supply chains and updates on sustainability management initiatives (including supply chain working conditions, conflict minerals and greenhouse gas management) that are in progress by Ford and at the industry level.

Through the ABF, Ford is making strides in improving its working relationships with suppliers on a global basis. We are particularly excited about our sustainability work with our ABF suppliers, as it leverages our efforts to manage human rights and environmental responsibility issues in our supply chain in a more collaborative, in-depth, integrated and aligned manner. In our view, it will

Related Links

This Report:

- Code of Basic Working Conditions

help embed ownership for social and environmental issues throughout our value chain, and lead to the development of more robust sustainable management systems across the automotive supply chain.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Human Rights in the Supply Chain: Ford's Global Working Conditions Program

We aim to ensure that everything we make – or others make for us – is produced consistent with local law and our Code of Basic Working Conditions (CBWC). This can be challenging, as we have less control in suppliers' facilities than in our own, particularly at the sub-tier level (i.e., our suppliers' suppliers). As Ford control decreases through the tiers of suppliers, the risk for substandard working conditions increases. For this reason, we have had to define our approach carefully, involving suppliers, other automakers, governments, NGOs and other stakeholders.

The legal structures governing working conditions, and the level of enforcement, vary widely across the countries in which we operate. Ensuring sound working conditions in the supply chain is ultimately the suppliers' responsibility, and we would like governments to play the lead role in enforcing compliance with laws. However, as customers, we also have an active role to play in supplier development.

Since we began work with our suppliers to ensure alignment with our CBWC, our approach has emphasized building capability throughout the supply chain to manage working conditions effectively. Our primary focus has been on training and education about working conditions issues, in conjunction with assessments of individual suppliers in order to verify performance and progress. We are committed to collaborative action to more effectively influence all levels of the automotive supply chain.

Our long-term vision is for our industry as a whole to work together to ensure that high expectations around human rights and working conditions are met throughout the supply chain. We promoted cross-industry collaboration beginning in North America and have extended these efforts to include global manufacturers. Our view is that all participants in the automotive supply chain – from the original equipment manufacturers (OEMs) such as Ford, to the suppliers themselves, to the government agencies that set and enforce the regulations governing operations – must be involved to make these efforts sustainable in the long run. Such collective action will not only minimize costs and increase efficiency for OEMs and suppliers alike, but will lead to better results than if individual companies take steps in isolation. More information about the corporate responsibility accomplishments and ongoing work of the industry through the AIAG can be found at www.aiag.org.

We are working toward our vision using a three-pronged approach aimed at individual supplier facilities, supplier corporate management and OEM corporate management. (See the Expanding Human Rights Impact on Supply Chain graphic.)

Perspectives on Sustainability

Sister Patricia Daly

Executive Director, Tri-State Coalition for Responsible Investment

READ MORE

Related Links

This Report:

- Code of Basic Working Conditions

External Websites:

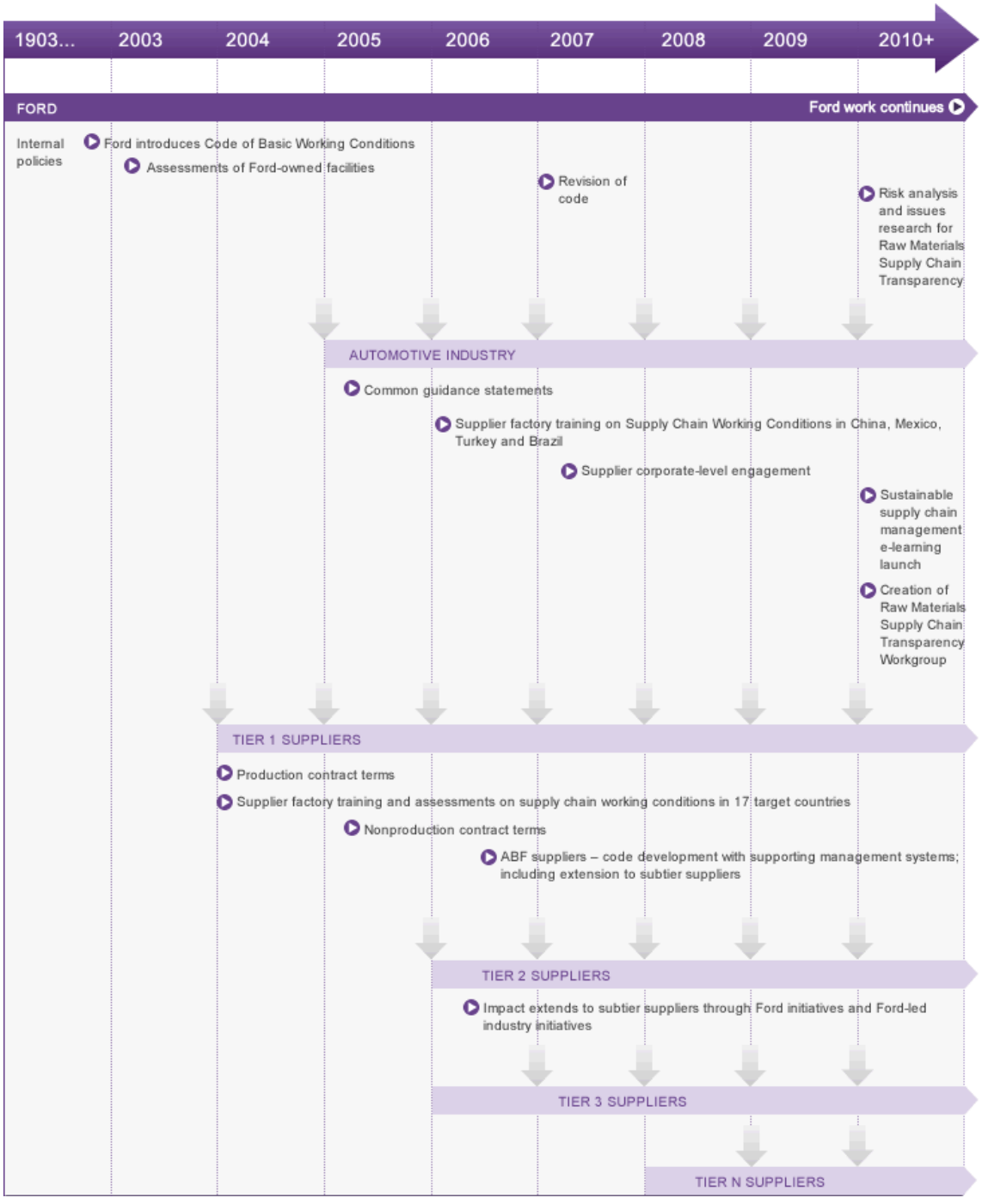
- AIAG

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Expanding Human Rights Impact on Supply Chain



Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Setting Expectations for Our Suppliers

Every supplier doing business with Ford is subject to Ford's Global Terms and Conditions. This core contract reflects our prohibition of the use of forced labor, child labor and physical disciplinary abuse. These requirements were added in January 2004 for production suppliers and in September 2005 for all others. We have provided a standard for these areas – the same as we use in our own facilities (Ford's Code of Basic Working Conditions, or CBWC) – that supersedes local law if our standard is more stringent. The Global Terms and Conditions also prohibit any practice in violation of local laws.

In addition, the Global Terms and Conditions serve to:

- Set the expectation that suppliers will work toward alignment with our CBWC in their own operations and their respective supply chains in the areas of harassment and discrimination, health and safety, wages and benefits, freedom of association, working hours, bribery and corruption, community engagement, and environment and sustainability.
- Make clear Ford's right to perform third-party site assessments to evaluate supplier performance.
- Communicate that Ford can terminate the relationship for noncompliance or for failure to address noncompliance in a timely manner.

Our Terms and Conditions are accompanied by Supplier Guides to assist suppliers in the application of expectations. The supplier guide that covers human rights and working conditions amplifies the expectations set out in the Terms and Conditions, providing context on Ford's aspirations for the automotive supply chain. Among other resources, it provides specific guidance, recommendations for self-assessments, and directs suppliers to the factory-level training.

Related Links

This Report:

- Code of Basic Working Conditions

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Engagement with Individual Supplier Facilities: Building Supplier Capability

The primary focus of our work on human rights in our supply chain is building capability among our suppliers to responsibly manage working conditions. This includes meeting legal requirements and Ford's expectations, promoting sound working conditions in our suppliers' own facilities and supply chains and encouraging a coordinated, industry-wide approach.

We began this work by developing a training curriculum and approach that we used with Ford suppliers in 17 countries. We recognized from the outset that a joint effort with other automakers would reach a greater number of suppliers more efficiently – as many of those suppliers are shared across multiple automakers – and would ultimately be more successful in embedding a sound approach to working conditions throughout the automotive supply chain. So we initiated a workgroup within the Automotive Industry Action Group (AIAG), a North American member-based, nonprofit industry group specializing in supply chain issues, and we recruited other automakers in North America, Asia and Europe to participate. We now co-sponsor supplier factory-level trainings whenever possible and supplement those with Ford-specific workshops as needed.

At Ford, we continue to focus on the 17 countries we had previously identified as having higher risks of substandard working conditions. Among those countries, locations are prioritized based on production and sourcing trends, sales trends and relative perceived risk based on the input of human rights groups, other companies' experience and other geopolitical analysis. We periodically review the list of countries. We did not find it necessary to add countries in the most recent review.

The companies at the AIAG discuss and agree on priority locations for the training workshops. Beginning in 2007, the sponsoring OEMs launched joint factory-level training workshops in China and Mexico. All training materials and the overall approach were based on Ford's prior work. The launch of each series of in-country training involves participation by OEM representatives and Tier 1 suppliers as well as local industry associations and government support where possible.

Whether delivered by Ford alone or with other automakers at the AIAG, the training workshops emphasize the interpretation and application of legal standards and international best practices. By interacting with managers from the human resources, health and safety, and legal departments of participating companies, the workshops provide for a two-way learning experience touching on the areas of interest for each company. The sessions utilize a "train-the-trainer" approach, so as to expand the scope and impact of the training.

While the supplier training sessions are customized to align with the unique laws, customs, cultures and needs of each location, in general they consist of:

- A day-long interactive workshop facilitated by qualified trainers and involving multiple automotive suppliers, in which participants develop and confirm an understanding of customer expectations, local law, best practices and sustainability management systems.
- Verification that the course attendee delivered training on the information obtained during the classroom training to all supplier personnel at each factory and communicated customer expectations to their direct sub-tier suppliers. Ford collects this verification within four months of course completion.

During 2010, Ford independently trained 19 suppliers in Romania. This brings the global total for trained Ford suppliers to 1,655. In addition, with other OEMs at the AIAG, we trained a total of 463 supplier companies in Turkey and Brazil in 2010. The industry total across five countries now exceeds 1,260 suppliers trained. Suppliers trained in 2010 have now moved on to the process of self-assessing their facilities for compliance with local law and Ford expectations, and completing the final stage of the program, which is communication to both workers and their own suppliers on the topic of working conditions expectations.

In 2011, we plan to conduct additional supplier training workshops in conjunction with the AIAG in China, Mexico, Brazil, India, Thailand and Turkey. Training content for these workshops has been expanded to include business ethics and environmental responsibility. Additionally, where possible, these courses will be open to any interested company, and thus Tier 1 suppliers will have the option of asking their own suppliers to attend. The intent is, once again, to increase the scope of impact of the training and push working conditions expectations further down the supply chain.

Working Conditions Program

Related Links

This Report:

- Society Data: Working Conditions Assessment Status for Supply Chain

External Websites:

- AIAG

Countries

- **Americas and Caribbean**: Argentina, Brazil, Colombia, Mexico, Venezuela and Central America (Assessments only)
- **Asia and Africa**: China, India, Korea, Malaysia, the Philippines, South Africa, Taiwan, Thailand, Vietnam
- **Europe**: Romania, Russia, Turkey

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Assessing Suppliers

Since 2003, we have conducted more than 750 assessments of existing and prospective Tier 1 suppliers in 20 countries. The assessments provide feedback to Ford and suppliers about how well they are meeting legal requirements and Ford's expectations. They also provide insight into the effectiveness of our training programs. Assessments consist of a detailed questionnaire, a document review, factory visits, and management and employee interviews, and are conducted with the assistance of external auditors.

In 2010, we conducted assessments across the target countries. The findings from the 2010 assessments were generally consistent with those we had previously conducted. Namely, they identified a wide range of general health and safety issues, several wages and benefits issues and a limited number of other types of noncompliance.

The findings from Ford's 2010 supplier assessments included:

- No evidence of forced labor or physical disciplinary abuse
- A range of general health and safety issues, including inadequate emergency systems
- In some cases, a lack of appropriate timekeeping systems, and thus a failure to pay correct overtime wages
- In some cases, a failure to pay the correct local minimum wage or overtime or to provide the correct social insurance
- A general need to clearly define policy on harassment and discrimination
- Limited cases of restricted workers doing hazardous work
- In some cases, limited or restricted access to appropriate documentation regarding subcontracted labor and privacy policies
- In some cases, nonpayment of company contributions to government-mandated social programs
- Working hours violations related to overtime (in some cases, this overtime is a chronic issue resulting from poor capacity planning, but more often, it occurs only during peak production periods)
- Freedom of association has been difficult to verify. While all assessed suppliers have either union representatives or a grievance process, there may be issues we have not been able to identify through our assessment process

Another common finding is that suppliers often lack fully developed management systems – including continual improvement processes – to support compliance over time. This finding has validated our training approach, which continues to emphasize management systems at both the corporate and factory levels. We continue to engage with our suppliers to develop and implement appropriate corrective action plans.

The assessment that Ford uses with Tier 1 suppliers has been an important tool for furthering our understanding of both the issues and the root causes for noncompliances. If issues are identified or allegations made of a sub-tier supplier, Ford does make available our assessment tool and guidance to our responsible Tier 1 supplier. In this way, we hope to affect positive change more broadly and enable our suppliers to effectively manage their supply base.

In 2011, we will continue to conduct supplier assessments across the target countries as necessary. We are also exploring the potential for conducting assessments jointly with other automakers in the future.

Related Links

This Report:

- Society Data: Working Conditions Assessment Status for Supply Chain

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

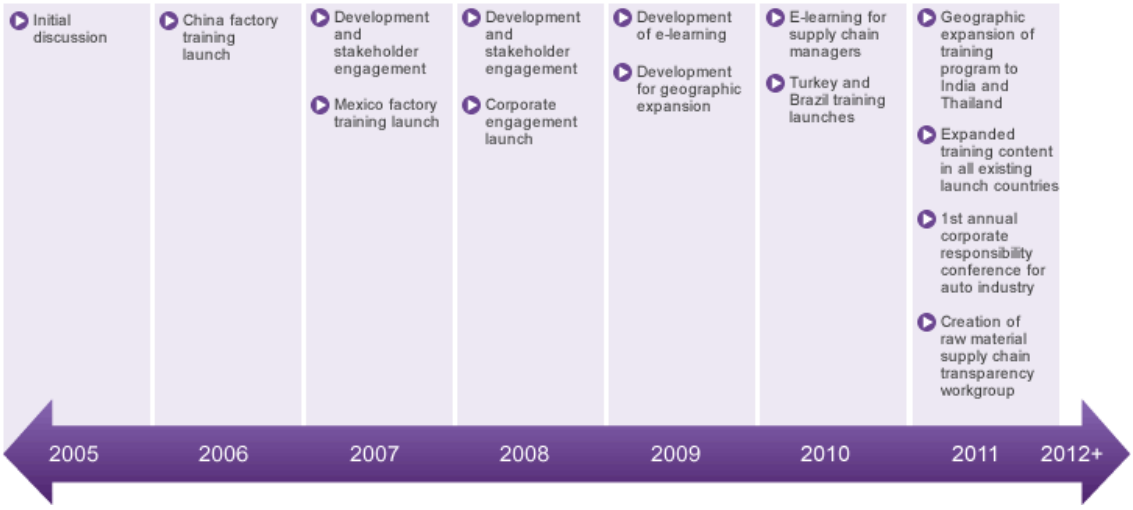
Collaboration Within the Automotive Industry

Since 2004, Ford has worked with the AIAG to implement its capability-building program with global suppliers, with the intent of leveraging that work with other automakers (see diagram below). Ford has taken an "open book" approach to its supply chain work and has contributed an "executive on loan" – the global manager of our Supply Chain Sustainability group – to the AIAG to support the industry's work and share what we have learned from working on these issues within our own operations. Materials developed within Ford to promote responsible working conditions have been offered to the group as a platform for use and development.

Related Links

External Websites:

- AIAG



In 2005, Ford, General Motors, Chrysler, Honda North America and Toyota North America began collaborative work through the AIAG to explore a cooperative industry approach to promoting decent working conditions in the supply chain. We continue to seek the participation of all global OEMs. Nissan and Daimler have since joined the AIAG and have begun participation in a number of established and emergent workgroups. Additionally, Renault has participated in the 2010 Turkey Global Working Conditions supplier training. We have engaged suppliers across a variety of different commodities. Their participation has been important to inform the activities pursued by the automakers at the AIAG, as has engagement with government (both U.S. and local governments in the countries in which training programs are provided) and nongovernmental agencies.

Initiative participants have created a set of guidance statements to establish a shared industry voice on key working conditions issues. The statements cover the core elements of individual companies' codes and policies, joint codes created by other industries and key international standards. The guidance statements cover child labor, forced labor, freedom of association, harassment and discrimination, health and safety, wages and benefits, and working hours. These statements serve as a baseline agreed upon by all the participating OEMs and are used as a platform for training. In 2010, we reached agreement with the other automakers to also expand the training curriculum to cover business ethics and environmental responsibility.

It should be noted that Ford's specific expectations in the Ford CBWC for child labor exceed the expectations in the industry guidance statements and also include elements not yet addressed by the industry guidance statements, such as community engagement and indigenous populations.

Tier 1 Engagement for Supply Chain Sustainability

Two new countries saw the launch of the AIAG jointly sponsored supplier training in 2010 – Turkey and Brazil. Both launches were executed successfully with the attendance of 463 total suppliers. The training in Turkey involved – for the first time – participation by a couple of European-based OEMs. Consistent with the format of Ford's original design, the attendees were required to subsequently complete a cascade of the training and expectations to the entire factory population and suppliers. Through this process, the trainings impacted more than 83,300 workers and 29,600 Tier 2 suppliers.

The automakers collaborating at the AIAG have developed an online training program on supply chain working conditions and responsible procurement targeted at purchasing or supply chain management. The web-based training was launched in early 2010 by the five participating OEMs free of charge to their respective suppliers. The training was also deployed internally at a number

of the sponsoring OEMs for their own global purchasing and supply chain staffs. Evaluation of the course and its impact is underway.

Next Steps in Industry Cooperation

The work of the companies at the AIAG continues on several fronts:

- Exploring an industry response to raw materials sourcing and transparency challenges
- Continuing to expand the factory-level supplier training program
- Increasing supplier ownership of working conditions issues through an expansion of engagement opportunities (i.e., the launch of e-learning programs in 2010 and continued direct engagement in AIAG work groups)
- Development of additional resources and networks that will ensure the successful communication of working conditions expectations throughout the automotive supply chain

For all workstreams, the AIAG and the companies are actively reaching out to others in the automotive supply chain, including global automakers and heavy truck manufacturers, industry associations and major automotive suppliers, as well as cross-sectoral initiatives. Broader participation will be needed to achieve the vision of an industry-wide approach to promoting supply chain sustainability.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Continued Evolution

As the work at the AIAG develops and matures, Ford will maintain a leadership position in our work with the supply chain. We will continue to conduct our own training and assessment programs in countries not covered by AIAG programs. We will also seek further opportunities to strategically leverage our assessment data and training processes to enhance our overall approach to working conditions and environmental responsibility in the automotive supply chain.

In addition, we constantly monitor approaches developed by other organizations and industries in order to incorporate what they have learned into our approach. We will continue to pursue partnerships with direct suppliers that create ownership of working conditions within those supplier organizations. Clear, consistent communication and further business integration of processes that support responsible working conditions throughout the supply chain will be a key component of our continued work.

Related Links

External Websites:

- AIAG

Sustainable Raw Materials

As automobiles incorporate more advanced technologies, the material content of vehicles becomes more varied. Ford has a long history of seeking to use sustainable materials in our products and source from suppliers that demonstrate sustainable business practices, including respect for human rights and the environment. Although the majority of what we buy are parts and assemblies directly used in vehicles, there is a need to take a closer look at the farthest reaches of the supply chain, including raw material extraction.

The extraction of raw materials can have significant social and economic impacts – both positive and negative. Extractive processes for raw materials can create employment and economic growth, but also have the potential to disrupt or displace communities and endanger public health. Raw material extraction may result in environmental impacts, such as water scarcity, air and water pollution and waste generation that must be minimized and mitigated. If the extraction is managed by unscrupulous operators, workers risk exploitation, and the economic, social and environmental risks are multiplied. In addition, the concentration of strategic materials in a limited number of locations can present significant geopolitical risks to companies all along the supply chain.

Most raw materials are not supplied directly to Ford; rather, they are provided to our suppliers or our suppliers' suppliers. On average, raw materials pass through six to 10 suppliers before reaching Ford. (See, for example, the known supply chain stages associated with conflict minerals.) This makes tracing the source of raw materials very challenging. We have analyzed several select raw materials from a strategic perspective to identify sustainability risks and opportunities related to extraction, use and end-of-life treatment. Our approach to promoting sustainable raw material supply chains includes the following:

- **Advancing transparency in our supply chain** by working to better understand the relative material content of our products. We will strive to know – where possible – the original source of the raw materials that reach us through our supply chain and to know and influence our direct suppliers' policies and practices.
- **Engaging with policy makers and global stakeholders.** Upon invitation from the U.S. State Department, the International Labor Organization, the United Nations Global Compact, the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development and the Interfaith Center for Corporate Responsibility, Ford has participated in forums on eradicating forced labor, child labor, trafficking and other issues that can result from abuses in the extractive sector.
- **Collaborating with others in our industry** and related industries through the Automotive Industry Action Group (AIAG) and other forums, to promote effective industry-wide approaches.
- **Promoting recycling** by maximizing the economic viability of recycling, where feasible.
- **Seeking flexibility of supply** through the proactive identification of potential supply and material alternatives and their impact. In those instances where the continued use of a material or supplier is impossible or misaligned with Ford's stated values, we will explore the potential of a viable alternate source or material. In such cases, due regard will be given to the potential side effects to local communities in the extraction area.

In the last six years, public awareness of the potential and realized risks regarding raw material extraction has increased, due to NGO campaigns, media coverage and greater access to information. In addition, there have been growing calls for transparency in raw material supply chains, in order to help governments and NGOs monitor and address issues in raw material extraction. Certain raw materials are particularly relevant for Ford, and in this section we address two areas in more detail.

First, the extraction and transport of certain minerals known as "conflict minerals" originating from the Democratic Republic of Congo and neighboring countries are believed to fuel conflict in the region. Ford is working with multiple stakeholders, including the automotive industry, to address the supply chain concerns.

Second, a range of other products and materials sourced from specific geographies have been identified and described by the U.S. Department of Labor as posing potential human rights concerns. Included on this list is charcoal from Brazil – a finding consistent with NGO and media concerns that were brought to Ford's attention in 2006. Charcoal can be used to make pig iron, a key ingredient in steel production. Given the persistence of risks associated with this material, Ford is working toward a multilateral solution with key players. Please see Forced Labor in the Pig Iron Supply Chain in Brazil for more information on our approach to this issue.

Related Links

External Websites:

- AIAG
- U.S. State Department
- International Labor Organization
- United Nations Global Compact
- Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development
- Interfaith Center for Corporate Responsibility

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Conflict Minerals

"Conflict minerals" generally refer to those minerals that may have directly or indirectly contributed to the financing of armed groups. Such armed groups are responsible for violence – often toward women and children – and human rights violations in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC). Armed groups may directly manage a given mine or tax the mine and/or the transport routes for the minerals. The minerals then typically change hands eight to 12 times before they are incorporated into end products. See the known supply chain stages associated with conflict minerals.

In the U.S., a new federal law passed by Congress and signed by President Obama in 2010 – the Dodd-Frank Wall Street Reform and Consumer Protection Act – includes a provision relating to conflict minerals. This provision requires many manufacturers to report to the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) annually on whether their products contain metals derived from certain conflict minerals if those metals are necessary for the functionality and production of their products. The sourcing region subject to full reporting includes the DRC and the nine surrounding countries.

According to the federal legislation, columbite-tantalite, cassiterite, wolframite and gold – which are refined into tantalum, tin, tungsten and gold, respectively – are considered to be conflict minerals. The metals derived from conflict minerals are used in a variety of automotive applications, including onboard electronics, metal alloys, lubricity coatings, hot-dip coatings, trim components and more.

In the European Union, similar legislation is being considered, with an EU Commission communication on conflict minerals scheduled for the summer of 2011 and reform of the EU's Transparency Directive in the autumn of 2011.

Ford is concerned with the potential connection between the automotive industry and conflict in the DRC region. Initial research and engagement has demonstrated that the underlying causes of conflict in this region are complex. A multilateral approach to solutions will be required, and we believe that companies in the downstream supply chain for these minerals have a role to play. We intend to require suppliers to use only metals that have been procured through a validated supply chain, so as to ensure that they have not, at any point, financed conflict. The processes to support validation are in development by local governments, industry groups, international organizations and NGOs, with support from other governments outside of Central Africa. While these processes are being developed and implemented, Ford is taking action to educate ourselves and our suppliers, initiate automotive industry activity and begin the necessary due diligence.

Policy Engagement

Ford worked with companies such as Microsoft, GE and Hewlett Packard, as well as NGOs and investors such as the Interfaith Center on Corporate Responsibility, to issue multi-stakeholder comments on the SEC rules as they were being developed and finalized. Representatives from Ford also separately met with the SEC and the U.S. State Department to discuss issues relating to procedures and implementation within the automotive supply chain. In March 2011, we submitted a formal comment letter to the SEC stating our position. The intent of this engagement was to inform, to the best of our ability, policy makers and other stakeholders on the current status of information available to Ford while the rules for implementing the conflict minerals legislation were in development.

In addition, through an international forum provided by the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD), the United Nations and the governments of the affected African states, Ford has participated in dialogue with multiple stakeholders, including NGOs active in the area of concern. We have also provided input to the development and upcoming implementation phase of the OECD Framework for Due Diligence regarding conflict minerals. This framework provides practical guidance to companies throughout the supply chain on a set of actions that can be taken to ensure responsible due diligence.

Risk Assessment

Ford intends to utilize an existing automotive industry database that tracks material content at the part level to analyze the presence of conflict minerals in our vehicles. The database currently tracks material content to monitor for the presence of certain regulated substances; it does not indicate where materials originated. While the presence of the four conflict minerals may, in some cases, be reported to the system by suppliers, reporting of the geographic source of these minerals has not been required to date (as it previously had not been regulated).

In 2011, Ford issued new reporting requirements to suppliers asking for full content reporting of

Related Links

This Report:

- Human Rights in the Supply Chain: Ford's Global Working Conditions Program

External Websites:

- AIAG
- U.S. State Department
- International Labor Organization
- United Nations Global Compact
- Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development
- Interfaith Center for Corporate Responsibility

the four conflict minerals so as to achieve a more complete assessment of risk in our supply base of 1,400+ companies. This will give us a starting point for further supply chain inquiries, which should in turn enable the tracing of metals to the point of processing (i.e., the smelter).

Supply Chain Management Systems

Ford is implementing due diligence actions as guided by the OECD and United Nations Frameworks for Due Diligence. Critical to these frameworks is the identification of upstream and downstream portions of the supply chain from the central "pinch point" – the smelter or processor. In this model, Ford and all downstream companies are responsible for identifying the smelters used in the supply chain and ensuring that those smelters are appropriately validated as sourcing minerals that have not financially supported conflict. Ford is monitoring closely the development of these validation systems.

Within our direct control are Company policies and direct supplier relationships. Although Tier 1 suppliers to Ford make independent sourcing decisions – as do most companies within the automotive supply chain between Ford and the mines – we include in all of our contracts with suppliers explicit human rights terms. We also engage with our suppliers on the topic of policy and management systems through our strategic supplier framework, the Aligned Business Framework. Our ongoing work with these suppliers includes the development or enhancement of supply chain sustainability management. It is important that we fully align with suppliers on the approach to responsible sourcing of raw materials so as to avoid, where possible, unintended consequences, such as absolute bans on sourcing from the 10 countries listed in the U.S. legislation.

Industry Engagement

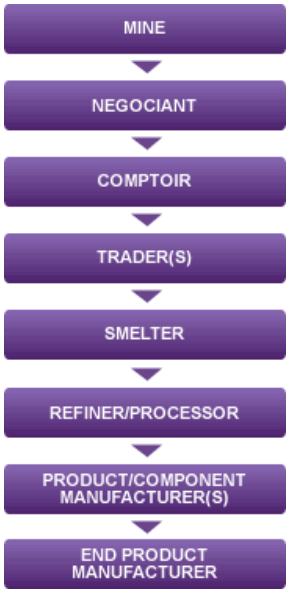
Industry engagement and a coordinated approach to supply chain requirements will greatly enable success and reduce the duplication of efforts and cost of implementation of due diligence. Ford is pursuing automotive industry collaboration at the AIAG, consistent with our approach to other supply chain sustainability opportunities. Ford chairs the industry workgroup on conflict minerals – a group consisting of six global automakers and several global Tier 1 suppliers. Actions taken by the group thus far include:

- Wide distribution of a Conflict Minerals Awareness letter from the six OEM vice presidents of purchasing to the CEOs of Tier 1 suppliers. The intent of the letter was to demonstrate a unified face to the supply chain on the issue, as well as to increase awareness to ensure timely action.
- Participation in a January 2011 industry conference on corporate responsibility, with a heavy emphasis on raw materials transparency in purchasing.
- Planning of a May 2011 webinar and a September/October 2011 industry event to keep the supply base well informed of evolving activity related to regulation, validation programs and customer requirements.

Future activity for the industry group may include collective action for information management, actual data requests and data management. The AIAG conflict minerals workgroup has been actively pursuing collaborative action with the electronics sector as well, given that industry's experience with this issue and possible solutions.

As this complex process unfolds – from mine certification to smelter validation programs to the publication of the SEC rules for federal regulatory compliance – Ford will strive to meet all expectations and require compliance and commitment to due diligence from our suppliers.

Conflict Minerals: Known Supply Chain Stages



In addition, illegal channels operate in parallel to this known supply chain, either leveraging these

actors, or via smuggling and other means.

Case Study: Forced Labor in the Pig Iron Supply Chain in Brazil

In 2006, Ford discovered that charcoal produced in Brazil with the use of slave labor had found its way into our supply chain. Pig iron is a key ingredient in steel production, and in Brazil, charcoal is often used as fuel in the production of pig iron (see the Pig Iron Producers graphic below). The charcoal is made from wood harvested in remote areas of Brazil where instances of forced labor have been found to occur. At the time this issue was brought to our attention in 2006, pig iron was purchased directly by Ford and used at our Cleveland Casting Plant.

When we learned of the situation, we immediately stopped sourcing from the site that was identified in the investigation, but continued dialogue and assisted in management systems development with the supplier until such time as the supplier could ensure it was not supporting forced labor in the supply chain for pig iron. We then identified all potential points of entry for pig iron in the Ford value chain and engaged with all relevant suppliers, seeking assurances from them that forced labor was not employed anywhere in their value chain. This included an intensive mapping of five to six tiers of suppliers (including importers, exporters and trading companies). We also requested additional detail regarding our Tier 1 suppliers' systems for safeguarding human rights throughout their operations, including procurement.

The Cleveland Casting Plant was closed in 2010, and Ford no longer directly purchases pig iron. Regardless, we have continued, through integrated supplier development programs to convey our prohibition of forced labor and validate, where possible, supplier compliance. Validation continues to be challenging given the number of supply chain actors between Ford and the charcoal camps in Brazil. For this reason, in 2011 we renewed our inquiry into the potential points of entry for Brazilian pig iron to our supply chain and are evaluating specific supplier progress on management systems to ensure responsible procurement of this material. We also are working with the U.S. State Department, the International Labor Organization and the governing committee of the Brazilian National Pact to Eradicate Forced Labor to seek multilateral solutions that will help to validate information and improve transparency. Ultimately, we hope to enable responsible purchasing decisions throughout the supply chain.

California's New Transparency in Supply Chains Law

Beginning in 2012, many companies manufacturing or selling products in the state of California will be required to disclose their efforts (if any) to address the issue of forced labor and human trafficking, per the California Transparency in Supply Chains Act of 2010 (SB 657). This law was designed to increase the amount of information made available by companies with regard to efforts to eradicate forced labor and human trafficking, thereby allowing consumers to make better, more informed choices regarding the products they buy and the companies they choose to support.

Forced labor and human trafficking can take many forms, including child labor. Ford has a zero-tolerance policy for both forced labor and child labor. As evidenced through our work with charcoal/pig iron in Brazil, we immediately took the opportunity to address the threat of this issue deep within our supply chain and have instituted a number of actions to safeguard against the use of forced labor. For example:

- We regularly assess risk related to our supply base. Preliminary assessment is based upon geography, the commodity purchased, the level of manual labor required for part/assembly production, the supplier's ownership structure, supplier quality performance and the nature of the business transaction. This risk assessment is performed by Ford with input from external stakeholders. In-depth supplier self-assessments are conducted biannually with our strategic suppliers as a part of the development program.
- Our Code of Basic Working Conditions forbids the use of forced labor, child labor and physically abusive disciplinary practices. Our definition of forced labor is inclusive of trafficking, and this is being made explicit in 2011 revisions to our Code.
- Ford purchase orders require the certification of compliance with our prohibition of forced labor, child labor and physical disciplinary abuse as part of our Standard Terms and Conditions in supply arrangements. Included also in this certification is compliance with international standards and applicable laws and regulations regarding forced labor and child labor. We reserve the right to terminate our relationship with a supplier if issues of noncompliance with our policies are discovered and/or noncompliance is not addressed in a timely manner.
- Training and Capability Building
  - We regularly conduct internal training on our Code of Basic Working Conditions with all of our purchasing staff, including management. Additional training is conducted regarding our Supply Chain Sustainability Program, including coverage of the Code and our Global

Related Links

This Report:

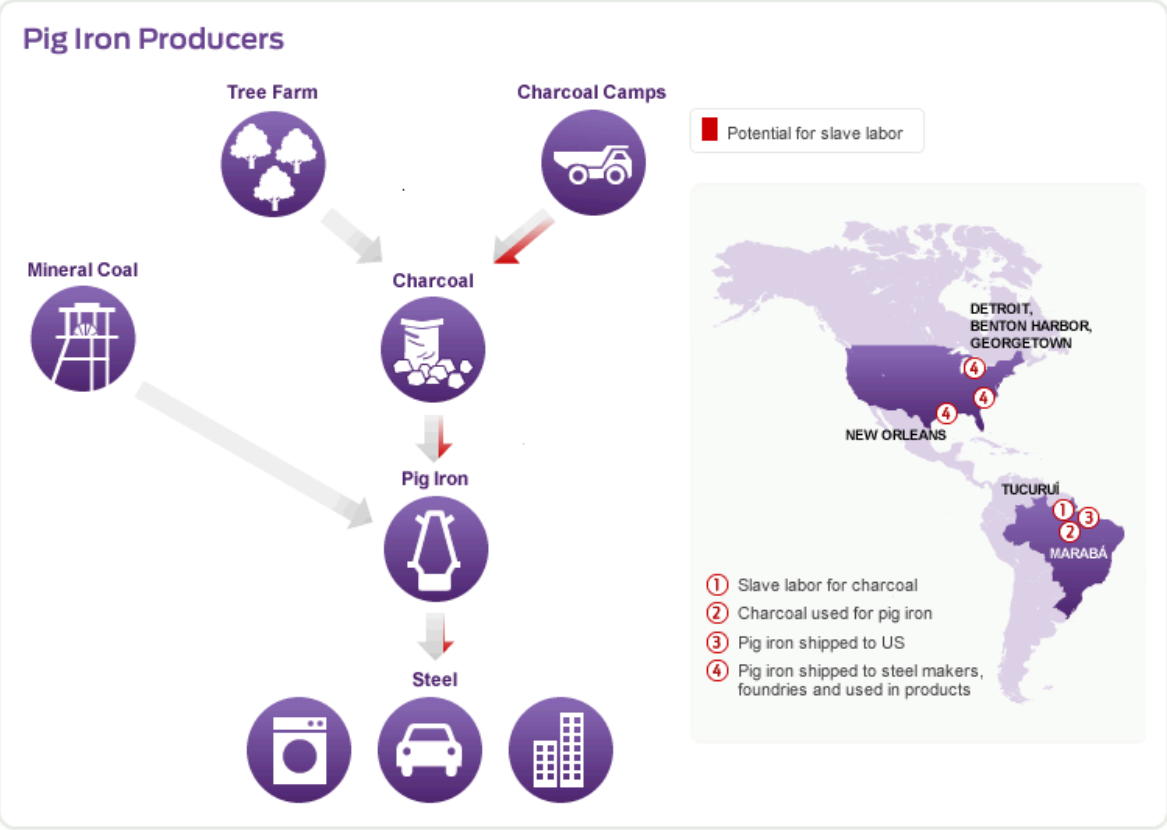
- Code of Basic Working Conditions
- Supplier Diversity Development

Working Conditions Program, emphasizing the role of our buyers in responsible decision making.

- Ford requires suppliers in high-risk markets to attend training that increases awareness of Ford and legal requirements, including those related to forced labor and child labor, and enables management systems that will ensure compliance over time. We conduct this training as Ford and as an industry effort through the AIAG.
- Ford and five other automakers at the AIAG have created training for buyers and supply chain managers on Supply Chain Sustainability. This training addresses issues including supply chain risk assessments, policy and supplier contract development and other actions that can be taken to ensure that forced labor and child labor do not enter the automotive supply chain.

- Ford regularly conducts audits of at-risk Tier 1 supplier factories to monitor compliance with Ford expectations and legal requirements. Following audits, suppliers are required to complete corrective action plans, which Ford reviews and approves. The corrective action plans outline how a supplier will resolve issues uncovered in audits and include clear responsibility and timelines for completion. We return to the facility within 6–12 months as required to confirm resolution of the issues. As mentioned, Ford has a zero-tolerance policy for the presence of forced and child labor. Forced labor has never been identified by third-party assessments of our supply chain, although lack of a forced labor policy at the supplier level is common and is always an element addressed in the Corrective Action Plan when identified.

  - These audits are independent and announced. We choose which facilities to audit based upon our risk assessment as described above. Our supply chain work has demonstrated to us that the risk for issues such as forced labor and child labor (as well as other human rights and working conditions issues) are relatively low for Tier 1 suppliers. The risk increases, however, the further down the Tiers of suppliers toward the source of the raw materials. Ford does not have visibility or direct access to these suppliers for the purpose of verification, and thus we work with our Tier 1 suppliers as well as other industries, NGOs and governments to explore the options for appropriate validation systems.



Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Supply Chain Environmental Sustainability

Ford has worked with our suppliers for decades to improve the sustainability of their products and processes – and to gain their support in improving our own sustainability performance. We have committed to providing suppliers with a range of support and assistance based on our experiences in this area. Ford was the first automaker to require its suppliers to certify their environmental management systems to the globally recognized standard, ISO 14001. We regularly engage with our suppliers on sustainability issues and have focused initiatives to improve understanding of environmental impacts and improve practices in several areas, including greenhouse gas emissions, materials management and logistics.

Related Links

This Report:

- Greenhouse Gas Emissions
- Materials Management
- Logistics

External Websites:

- ISO 14001

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Supplier Environmental Management

We are continually improving our systems for influencing the integration of sustainability throughout our supply chain. ISO 14001 certification is expected of all "Q1," or preferred, production suppliers as well as nonproduction supplier facilities if the supplier has a manufacturing site or a nonmanufacturing site with significant environmental impacts that ships products to Ford. In 2006, we attained our goal of having 100 percent of our Q1 production suppliers gain ISO 14001 certification for facilities supplying Ford. We also encourage our suppliers to extend the benefits of improved environmental performance by requiring their own suppliers to implement environmental management systems as well.

We have added environmental requirements to the formal agreements that we make with our suppliers. These requirements cover a range of issues, such as reducing materials of concern, using Design for Sustainability principles, increasing the use of sustainable materials and using materials that will improve vehicle interior air quality. We ask suppliers to use recycled materials whenever technically and economically feasible. All recycled materials are evaluated in-house to guarantee that they deliver appropriate mechanical properties and the same level of performance that would be obtained with virgin materials.

We look for opportunities across our organization to purchase environmentally superior goods and services. During 2010, for example, we required that our new personal computer purchases be certified as meeting comprehensive environmental criteria.

Supplier Engagement on Environmental Sustainability

As we do for other important issues like human rights in the supply chain, we take a three-pronged approach to engaging with suppliers on environmental sustainability issues. We work with individual supplier factories; with key suppliers' corporate management and in cooperation with other automakers to influence practices across the automotive supply chain.

Supplier Factories

Each Tier 1 manufacturing site providing parts to Ford is required to have ISO 14001 certification. Additionally, we have integrated environmental management content and expectations into the supplier training programs to be conducted from 2011 forward. This was done on a pilot basis for the 2010 Turkish supplier training and feedback has been used to fine tune the content as appropriate for the audience. We feel this is another action we can take to help build supplier capability to manage these issues effectively. This content expansion further aligns our training activity with our Code of Basic Working Conditions.

Engagement with Suppliers' Corporate Management

As part of the Aligned Business Framework (ABF), ABF suppliers commit to managing and ensuring responsible environmental management in their facilities and in their supply chain.

During the fourth quarter of 2010, we held our annual ABF sustainability meeting in Dearborn, Michigan. It was attended by senior management from Ford and our ABF suppliers. The meeting included a workshop on sustainable supply chains and updates on sustainability management topics including greenhouse gas management. Our update at this meeting provided to ABF suppliers a summary of the results of the supplier GHG emissions survey that Ford conducted in 2010 and provided the suppliers with insight as to next steps.

Industry Collaboration

We work in cross-industry forums to encourage common approaches to the supply chain challenges of our industry. We have been further integrating environmental sustainability and greenhouse gas management issues into our work with the Automotive Industry Action Group (AIAG). Through the AIAG, we helped to establish common industry guidance and a reporting format for greenhouse gas emissions, to be used by global automakers and Tier 1 suppliers. Our initial 2010 survey and results heavily influenced the AIAG guidance and reporting format, as Ford was the only automaker exploring Scope 3 greenhouse gas emissions and related risks and opportunities.

Since 2007 we have been a member of the Suppliers Partnership for the Environment, an innovative partnership between automobile original equipment manufacturers, their suppliers and the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. This partnership works to create new and innovative business-centered approaches to environmental protection and provides a forum for small, midsize and large automotive and vehicle suppliers to work together, learn from each other and share environmental best practices.

Related Links

This Report:

- Case Study: Green PC Purchasing Initiative

External Websites:

- ISO 14001

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Greenhouse Gas Emissions

In 2010, Ford took significant steps to better understand the risks and opportunities of greenhouse gas (GHG) regulation and climate change for our suppliers and, by extension, for our Company. We conducted a pilot project with a select group of our suppliers to better understand the collection and reporting of greenhouse gas emissions data in our supply chain. Our goal is to better understand the carbon footprint of our supply chain and use the data to create a broad-based carbon management approach for our supply chain. We have a comprehensive commitment and strategy to reduce greenhouse gas emissions from our products and operations, detailed in the climate change section, which enhances our competitiveness. We hope to help promote similar competitiveness throughout the automotive supply chain.

Scope 3 Greenhouse Gas Accounting and Reporting

Ford was a "road tester" of the Scope 3 Greenhouse Gas Accounting and Reporting Standard developed by the World Resources Institute/World Business Council for Sustainable Development (WRI/WBCSD). Ford had also been an original participant in the review and development of the internationally accepted Greenhouse Gas Protocol Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard, which addresses Scope 1 (direct) and Scope 2 (indirect) emissions.

The new draft Scope 3 (corporate value chain) Standard provides a step-by-step methodology for companies to quantify and report their Scope 3-related GHG emissions, and is intended to be used in conjunction with the GHG Protocol Corporate Accounting and Reporting Standard. It will provide a standardized method to inventory the emissions associated with corporate value chains, taking into account impacts both upstream and downstream of the Company's operations.

The draft standard was developed through a global, collaborative, multi-stakeholder process, with participation from more than 1,000 volunteer representatives from industry, government, academia and nongovernmental organizations. The road testing process was designed to provide real-world feedback to ensure that the standards can be practically implemented by companies and organizations of different sizes and from a variety of sectors and geographic areas around the world. WRI/WBCSD collected feedback from 60 stakeholders and issued a draft standard in November 2010. Ford was the only automotive company to participate. The final Scope 3 Standard is scheduled to be published by WRI/WBCSD in September 2011.

Carbon Disclosure Project's Supply Chain Program

In 2010, Ford also joined the Supply Chain Program of the Carbon Disclosure Project's (CDP). Through this effort, Ford worked with selected suppliers to gather qualitative as well as quantitative information about the suppliers' management of climate risks and emissions. Ford participated to gain experience with the supplier survey and better understand our suppliers' capability to measure, manage and report their emissions. Ford was the only automotive company to participate in the CDP Supply Chain Program in 2010.

As part of its participation in both the WRI/WBCSD and CDP initiatives, Ford surveyed 35 suppliers regarding greenhouse gas emissions management. These suppliers were identified through a variety of criteria, which included, but weren't limited to:

- The GHG intensity of the commodities supplied,
- The nature of the business relationship with Ford, and
- The geographic footprint of the supplier's global operations.

The 35 chosen suppliers represented close to 30 percent of Ford's $65 billion in annual procurement spending in 2009. We achieved a 75 percent response rate from the surveyed suppliers.

A key finding from the responses was the variability in supplier readiness to measure and report GHG emissions. The qualitative responses received provided valuable insight into the risk management opportunities for the broader automotive supply base. From these results, 80 percent of respondents indicated that they track their GHG emissions, and 50 percent of those companies indicated that they externally report their emissions. The results clearly demonstrated that those high-impact suppliers that we had hoped were paying attention to GHG emissions, in fact were doing so. However, these results may not represent the broader global automotive supply base's readiness to track, report and proactively manage GHG emissions.

In 2011 Ford is expanding engagement on GHG emissions management by more than 350 percent, engaging with suppliers across a much broader selection of production, information technology, and logistics suppliers.

Related Links

This Report:

- Climate Change
- Climate Change Risks and Opportunities

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Materials Management

We are working with our suppliers to increase their use of sustainable materials and eliminate undesirable materials. While Ford has already made great strides in using more sustainable materials in our products (as discussed in the Sustainable Materials section), we can expand these efforts by systematically working with our suppliers on these issues. Toward that end, we are developing Commodity Business Plans and other materials purchasing strategies that require the use of sustainable materials. For example, we developed a purchasing strategy for recycled plastics resins and Commodity Business Plans for relevant parts that require the use of post-consumer recycled plastics.

More and more countries are adopting regulations governing the use of materials including chemicals and substances of concern. In 2007, for example, the European Union adopted REACH (Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemical substances). The goal of the REACH legislation is to improve the protection of human health and the environment through better and earlier identification of the intrinsic properties of chemical substances. All manufacturers operating in Europe must provide information on the properties and safe handling of their chemical substances to a central database in Helsinki. In addition, the legislation calls for the progressive substitution of the most dangerous chemicals, once suitable alternatives have been identified. REACH provisions will be phased in over 11 years.

Turkey and Romania adopted their own versions of REACH in 2009; China adopted its own version in October 2010. South Korea and Japan will also soon adopt REACH-like regulations to manage their chemicals. In the U.S., the Senate and House both proposed bills in 2010 to overhaul the Toxic Substances Control Act, which was first enacted in 1976, and the state of California is planning to implement a "green chemistry" law in 2011. Ford's Global Materials Management Program will provide an effective and efficient way for Ford to be a leader among auto companies in managing materials and meeting these types of global chemical and environmental regulations.

The recent focus on conflict minerals and raw materials issues has injected an additional concern into materials management: not only is it important to consider the properties of the materials we use, but also their origin and the conditions under which they were extracted and processed, These issues are discussed in the section on sustainable raw materials.

Materials Management Processes and Tools

Even before REACH-type regulations were adopted, Ford was managing materials across the vehicle lifecycle as part of our Global Materials Management Program. We use a set of processes and tools to assist us in communicating materials- and substance-related requirements to suppliers, and in tracking the materials and substances that they use in the parts they manufacture. These tools include the Global Material Approval Process (GMAP), which handles all materials processed in Ford's plants; Global Material Integration and Reporting (GMIR), a materials tracking tool for our engineers and suppliers; and the International Material Data System (IMDS), a reporting system used by multiple automakers.

The IMDS was developed by seven auto manufacturers (including Ford) in 1997 to handle the tracking, review and reporting of all vehicle components and service parts from all suppliers. Twenty-eight companies globally are now official members. The IMDS is a web-based system used internationally by suppliers to report on the substances and materials contained in parts for our vehicles. Ford has cooperated with other automakers to align reporting requirements for restricted substances and to analyze the data provided. This helps us to identify substances and materials of concern and target them for elimination. It is also a tool Ford is beginning to leverage to identify risks associated with conflict minerals and other raw materials.

To further help our suppliers manage their materials and substance data, Ford developed and launched GMIR. Through the GMIR Supplier Portal, Ford lists all the parts that require reporting by suppliers; we also list suppliers' reporting and certification status. Thus the system allows every supplier to monitor its reporting status and understand which parts are required to be reported. This two-way communication helps clarify a very complex materials management task and saves time and money for Ford and its suppliers.

Thanks largely to the GMIR Supplier Portal, in 2010 Ford gathered more materials data from its suppliers than any other automaker. Ford vehicle programs used the IMDS to report 100 percent of materials and all the required substance data to fulfill or comply with all governmental regulations and requirements including the end-of-life vehicle directives in the EU, South Korea and Japan, and REACH in the EU.

For nondimensional materials (such as paint and adhesive) that are shipped directly to Ford plants, Ford uses GMAP – an electronic tool aimed at simplifying the global materials approval process. The GMAP process allows suppliers to use electronic transactions to submit their

Related Links

This Report:
- Sustainable Materials
- Sustainable Raw Materials

External Websites:
- REACH

Material Safety Data Sheets and composition data. Internally, Ford approvers communicate their decisions of approval or rejection electronically. This new process saves time and ensures better-quality data for complying with government regulations and Ford policies.

In response to REACH legislation, Ford has developed additional systems to track and manage the use of chemicals. Ford has taken a leadership position in implementing REACH. For example, Ford has been a key member of the Global REACH Automotive Task Force and was the first chair of this taskforce. Ford is also the chair of the North American Automotive Industry Action Group's REACH Advisory Committee.

Ford has made great progress in complying with REACH. For example, we created a REACH manager position and formed a REACH taskforce to manage relevant activities, including conducting REACH inventory studies and generating all required reports for customers and consumers. In addition, we have worked extensively with our suppliers to ensure their compliance with REACH thus far. Ford's existing Global Materials Management Program has made it much easier for Ford and our suppliers to comply with these new requirements. Using these systems, for example, Ford conducted all of the "Substances of Very High Concern" inventory studies required by REACH and generated all required reports for consumers and governmental agencies. In addition, we have added all of the "Substances of Very High Concern" to our own Restricted Substances Management Standard: this ensures that we will get the necessary reporting from our suppliers. As a result of these efforts, Ford has the highest supplier response rate in the auto industry, and all of Ford's REACH-affected suppliers have committed to following REACH requirements through Ford's Global Materials Management Program.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Logistics

ON THIS PAGE

Related Links

External Websites:
- Greenhouse Gas Protocol
- Carbon Disclosure Project

Ford's physical logistics operations provide the safe and efficient transport of parts from our supply base to our manufacturing plants (our "inbound" freight) and of finished vehicles from the end of our assembly lines to our dealerships (our "outbound" freight). Although logistics account for a relatively small percentage of total vehicle lifecycle emissions, we are working hard to maximize the efficiency of these operations to reduce their environmental impact. This work is managed by Ford's Material Planning and Logistics organization (MP&L), which is the department responsible for the design and operation of our global transportation networks and for engineering high-quality and efficient packaging to protect parts in transit.

Green Logistics

Ford MP&L applies a global approach to addressing the environmental aspects of our logistics operations. In 2008 we established an international team to coordinate our reporting activities and to share best practices. We manage activity via subject matter experts in our four operating regions (Europe, North America, Asia Pacific and Africa, and South America) and in 2010 we created a central "green logistics" intranet site to assist in standardizing our procedures and in communicating latest information. During 2010 and 2011 our major focus has been on greenhouse gas emissions with two key work streams – carbon dioxide (CO_2) emissions reporting and CO_2 emissions reduction. The fact that freight emissions are so closely tied to fuel usage means that this focus on emissions reduction will in itself encourage actions that will help us achieve our other environmental goals.

back to top

Freight Emissions Reporting

Understanding and quantifying our freight CO_2 emissions is important to us for a number of reasons including:

- Helping us to understand our overall environmental impacts
- Enabling us to prioritize actions to reduce emissions
- Allowing us to calculate the full carbon footprint of our supply chains
- Providing data for the overall lifecycle carbon footprint of our vehicles
- Providing data for our customers

In 2006, our European operations, with the support of our European lead logistics partner DHL International, first began producing basic CO_2 metrics for our inbound road and rail network. During 2008 and 2009, Ford and DHL supported a Masters Project at Cologne University to better understand reporting techniques and to tune our methods to the latest academic thinking.

Since that time we have greatly expanded our reporting. At the start of 2009 we began internally reporting CO_2 emissions for our North American land-based networks. In 2010, following work with our transatlantic lead logistics partner UTiWorldwide, we introduced CO_2 emissions reporting for ocean freight. In 2010 we also began collecting data for our Asia Pacific networks and are developing processes for reporting in South America.

For 2011, we have updated our emissions calculations to take account of other greenhouse gases including N_2O and methane.

Tracking transport emissions data allows us to study the impacts of different sourcing patterns. MP&L is working closely with Purchasing on value stream mapping projects to help us compare the transportation and manufacturing footprints in different source locations.

Throughout 2010 and 2011 Ford has played a major role in supporting the development of internationally recognized reporting standards. We have been assisting the World Resource

Institute and the World Business Council for Sustainable Development with their new Greenhouse Gas Protocol Scope 3 reporting standards by carrying out “road testing” of those standards and providing active feedback. In Europe, we have been a member of the UK Department for Transport’s Low Carbon Transport Supply Chain Steering Group and helped formulate their Guidance on Measuring and Reporting Greenhouse Gas Emissions, published in December 2010.

We are actively involved in engaging others in the industry and in 2010 delivered lead presentations on freight emissions reporting to a wide range of conferences and industry association seminars, including the Association of Climate Change Officers, the Automotive Industry Action Group, the Verband der Automobilindustrie and the Society of Motor Manufacturers and Traders.

back to top

Freight Emissions Reduction

The efficient design and operation of our networks is key to improving the environmental footprint of our freight. There is a direct correlation between the use of greener modes (such as rail and water), reducing miles traveled, increasing vehicle utilization and reducing emissions.

In general, we choose to contract and manage our own freight networks rather than have freight contracted by our suppliers. For example, we collect parts from our suppliers’ factories rather than have the suppliers deliver parts to our assembly plants. This gives us better control and allows us to optimize collections and deliveries across all pick-up points and destinations and so minimize the total amount of transport required. Our inbound network is fully integrated with regional distribution centers, so that material for different plants can be collected together and then cross-loaded onto trailers routed to different final destinations. Our transatlantic freight is integrated into the domestic networks operated by Ford of Europe and Ford North America. This integration has resulted in a reduction in the number of vehicles collecting materials from shared suppliers.

We work closely with our Lead Logistics Providers (LLPs) to improve our network designs. We use a number of methods – for example “milk run” routes, where groups of collection points are identified that can be visited by a single truck. Our LLPs continuously review shipping quantities and collection frequencies, with the aim of ongoing improvement. The net effect of these kinds of strategies is to minimize the number and length of journeys required.

As a further step to increase overall transport efficiency, we have implemented contracts that encourage our freight carriers to carry third-party freight on return journeys rather than returning home empty, which not only gives us a cost benefit but reduces overall traffic on the roads.

Part of our business plan is to maximize the use of “green routes” – rail, river and short sea transport – for the transport of inbound parts and outbound vehicles to reduce fuel costs, emissions and road congestion. The environmental impact of rail freight is significantly less than that of road freight. It has been estimated that switching from road to rail can reduce CO_2 emissions by 40 percent.

For some time we have made use, where possible, of traditional rail services. For example, we move material by rail between our Cologne logistics hub in Germany and our Transit plant at Kocaeli in Turkey, and we move engines by rail from our Bridgend plant in Wales to our Valencia plant in Spain.

It can be difficult to expand the use of rail freight because rail terminals are not always sited near the facilities from which and to which we need to make materials and parts deliveries. One solution we have adopted to overcome this difficulty is to use “SWAP bodies” – standard freight rail containers that can be lifted onto dedicated road trailers. This kind of approach combines the environmental friendliness of rail for long distances, with the flexibility of road transport at either end of the journey.

In 2010 and 2011 we expanded our use of these intermodal approaches. In particular we have increased the use of a system for lifting an entire road trailer onto a specially designed rail wagon for moving parts from our suppliers in Italy to our assembly plant in Genk, Belgium. We use a similar process to transport materials to Genk from suppliers in Scandinavia.

We continue to utilize a combined road/rail route process from northern Spain and southern France to our Saarlouis facility in Germany. In this system, standard truck trailers from suppliers in Spain are driven directly onto rail wagons at a special terminus at Perpignan, France, near the Spanish border, and then carried by train more than 1,000 km to Luxembourg, from where they are taken by road to Saarlouis. This approach is not only more environmentally friendly, it also reduces road congestion: the train-based freight from Perpignan to Luxembourg has the potential to keep 40 truck trailers a day off of French roads.

We also continue to develop water-based transport options in Europe for our outbound vehicle deliveries. Following this approach, inland road-based transport within Spain is greatly reduced by using six different ports of entry. Also, we use the Black Sea for imports into Russia. Where possible, we take advantage of inland waterways as well: we use barges from our Cologne facility to a number of ports to the north and south and another barge route operates between Romania and Bavaria.

Actions by Ford of Europe to reduce the carbon footprint of its vehicle transportation logistics operation were recognized by a prestigious Supply Chain Distinction Award in 2009. The judges honored the team for its performance in environmental supply chain planning and execution.

In North America, rail is used for efficient long-distance transport of commodities such as metal stampings and powertrains. A single 86-inch-high cube railcar can carry cargo equivalent to three to four 53-foot truck trailers. At the beginning of 2010, Ford's rail and intermodal rail shipments in North America represented almost 40 percent of the network distance traveled, while accounting for less than 15 percent of the network carbon footprint.

Our Finished Vehicle logistics team in North America has focused its recent carbon footprint reduction efforts on reducing the number of miles traveled per vehicle transported within the network, thereby lowering the amount of fuel consumed to deliver them. In 2010, transportation miles were reduced by 42.5 million miles in total compared with 2009 despite an increase in auto sales, and the network is an efficient 70 percent rail miles/30 percent road miles. This mix provides an effective blend of cost, speed to market and carbon emissions management, given North American geography.

The modernization of the transportation fleet with a view toward fuel efficiency is an objective of shippers and carriers alike. Our North American logistics operations are also focused on improving load density, or the number of vehicles carried per conveyance, as a means to lower the number of conveyances employed, and thereby reduce the amount of fuel consumed.

North American inbound logistics and parts supply operations are also making substantial network efficiency improvements. Inbound production material and service parts transportation distances were reduced between 2009 and 2010 by 17.6 million and 2.7 million miles respectively.

A major reduction in emissions for transatlantic freight has been achieved by implementing direct ocean shipments between Mexico and Europe. Previously, material had been routed via a North American port, but now lengthy road transport is avoided and a 40 percent reduction in CO_2 emissions has been achieved.

In addition to looking at network design, other opportunities to reduce environmental Ford's footprint exist within the design and operation of the transport equipment itself.

For example, we worked with the Georgia Institute of Technology to identify guidance on equipment modifications to reduce fuel usage. We shared this and other potential best practices along with the results of internal testing at regular communications meetings with our carriers. We also survey our carriers on their implementation of fuel-efficient practices.

We have also been working on practical applications for alternative fuel and engine technologies in our logistics activities, and have carried out a number of trials using our in-house transport fleets. Our Ford Rawsonville fleet has been certified by the U.S. Environmental Protection Agency's SmartWay program and is monitoring improvements to its truck fleet's fuel usage. Our North American operations also work to decrease the number of transport runs required by making improvements in packaging density and trailer cube utilization as well as mode changes where possible to reduce fuel consumption.

Ford of Europe's in-house transport operations have been implementing a number of initiatives to reduce the emissions of their trucks. These initiatives include training in fuel-efficient driving and increasing the use of bio-fuels. Also, we use a fuel additive on major inbound routes to reduce harmful nitrous oxide emissions. We have implemented driving speed limiters to improve fuel economy and use deflectors on new trailers to improve the vehicles' aerodynamics. These and other efforts have allowed us to comply with Euro V emission rulings and reduce our emissions-related road tax costs. Our UK Transport Operations are actively supporting the Freight Transport Association's Logistics Carbon Reduction Scheme.

We are now beginning to investigate the possibilities of electric propulsion for freight transport. We are installing 10 solar-powered electric vehicle-charging stations at the Michigan Assembly Plant to demonstrate advanced battery-charging technologies for vehicles using renewable energy and other smart-grid advances. The stations will be used to recharge the electric switcher trucks that transport vehicle parts between adjacent buildings at the manufacturing site.

back to top

Packaging

Ford MP&L's Packaging Engineering department focuses on designing, procuring and optimizing packaging on a part-by-part basis to best suit the components being moved and the transport required.

Packaging directly impacts a number of environmental elements throughout its lifecycle, including materials usage, freight and waste disposal. Over years of testing, tracking and performance improvement, we have confirmed that the best strategy to eliminate material waste and optimize freight efficiency is to use durable and returnable packaging for all but the longest supply chains.

We have developed a standard range of packaging that not only protects parts and makes them easy to handle at the assembly line, but also allows maximum storage density during transportation, thereby minimizing transport requirements. We review the packaging of production trial parts to assess opportunities to increase packing density prior to the full-volume launch of a product.

One of the benefits of standardizing packaging is that it makes packaging interchangeable between suppliers and programs. In Europe, we have contracts with third-party specialist packaging providers to control the issue, collection and pooling of standard packaging for our

suppliers. This pooling greatly reduces transport requirements, as the packaging can be shipped to where it is next required rather than always having to return it to the supplier who last used it.

Currently, our European operations use 90 percent reusable containers, and we are seeking to increase that amount. For example, we are working to develop more direct routing for parts to our St. Petersburg, Russia, plant so that it is viable to use returnable packaging. We are also introducing returnable steel racks for much of our new transatlantic shipments that previously would have been shipped in disposable material.

We are working closely with packaging suppliers to take advantage of new developments. In Spain, we are introducing dedicated designs that include specially designed foldable internal packaging that avoids the need for disposable internals. It is also lighter and easier to handle than conventional standardized returnable packaging.

The European powertrain packaging team is introducing a novel approach to packaging returns. The empty packaging is broken down into small chips that are then returned in sacks to be remade in to new packaging close to the original supplier location. This dramatically reduces the volume of the return shipments, and thereby the transportation costs and emissions.

An example from our Asia Pacific and Africa region is their implementation of returnable packaging for hazardous material shipments such as of air bags from Europe to China. Previously this part had been handled by air shipment, but now it can be shipped by sea, giving a considerable saving in emissions.

We are now working globally to share best practices between regions and to drive consistency in packaging for future global vehicle programs. Ford's latest packaging guidelines require that supplier-provided packaging supports corporate sustainability goals by seeking a neutral or positive environmental footprint through zero waste to landfill and use of 100 percent recycled, renewable or recyclable materials.

back to top

The Evolution of Green Logistics

For 2011, we have expanded our engagement with the Carbon Disclosure Project and others to include many of our key carriers and logistics service providers. Within Material Planning and Logistics, environmental considerations form a key part of our business plan. We are actively establishing strong dialogues with our major carriers and service providers to share ideas and methods with the aim of pushing our green logistics to new levels of collaborative best practice.

back to top

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Supplier Diversity Development

Ford remains strongly committed to utilizing and developing supplier companies that are owned by minorities and women. Our Supplier Diversity Development office works with business leaders, trade associations and community-based organizations that represent the interests of diverse businesses.

Our annual goal is to source 10 percent of U.S. purchases from minority- and women-owned businesses. Our record of minority supplier development has earned Ford a seat at the "Billion Dollar Roundtable," an exclusive group of 17 companies that purchase a minimum of $1 billion annually from diverse suppliers.

In 2010, Ford purchased $3.8 billion in goods and services from approximately 200 minority-owned suppliers and more than $866 million in goods and services from more than 150 women-owned businesses. Our 2010 results were an improvement over 2009, exceeding our sourcing goals for both minority- and women-owned suppliers.

Ford is unwavering in its commitment to incremental year-over-year percentage increases in sourcing from diverse suppliers. We encourage similar actions across our supply chain. In 2010, more than 400 of our largest Tier 1 suppliers purchased more than $1 billion from minority- and women-owned enterprises in support of Ford business.

In 2010, Ford added two minority-owned suppliers to our Aligned Business Framework (ABF) suppliers: Uniworld Group, Ford's African-American advertising agency of record, based in New York; and Zubi Advertising, Ford's Hispanic agency of record, based in Miami. At the end of 2010, we had 12 minority- and women-owned ABF suppliers.

Ford's minority- and women-owned suppliers are also playing an important role in the company's revitalized product line. These opportunities provided minority- and women-owned suppliers with new business valued at more than $150 million during a period when purchasing budgets and the supply base were being downsized.

Examples include the following:

- Dakkota Integrated Systems, a woman- and Native American- owned supplier based in Holt, Michigan, successfully launched fascias and headliners for the 2011 Ford Explorer, an all-new version of the vehicle that defined the SUV segment.
- GrupoAntolin Wayne, an African-American-owned supplier based in Canton, Michigan, launched interior headliners for the new Focus and was awarded headliner business for the C-Max.
- T&K Logistics, Inc., a woman-owned enterprise based in Northeast Ohio, is providing switching and yard management services to the Michigan Assembly Plant, utilizing the first application of zero emission electric switching vehicles in the automotive environment.
- Gonzalez Production Systems, a Hispanic-owned supplier, is expanding in Ford's final manufacturing assembly area with its vision-aided robot technology. The company, based in Pontiac, Michigan, has won contracts for the next-generation Focus, as well as another product from Ford's global C-car platform.
- Marimba Auto LLC, a new minority-owned supplier, based in Belleville, Michigan, sourced Super Duty axle tubes.
- Systrand Manufacturing, a women-owned supplier based in Brownstown, Michigan, provided critical component machining for Ford's next generation hybrid transmission.

Related Links

This Report:

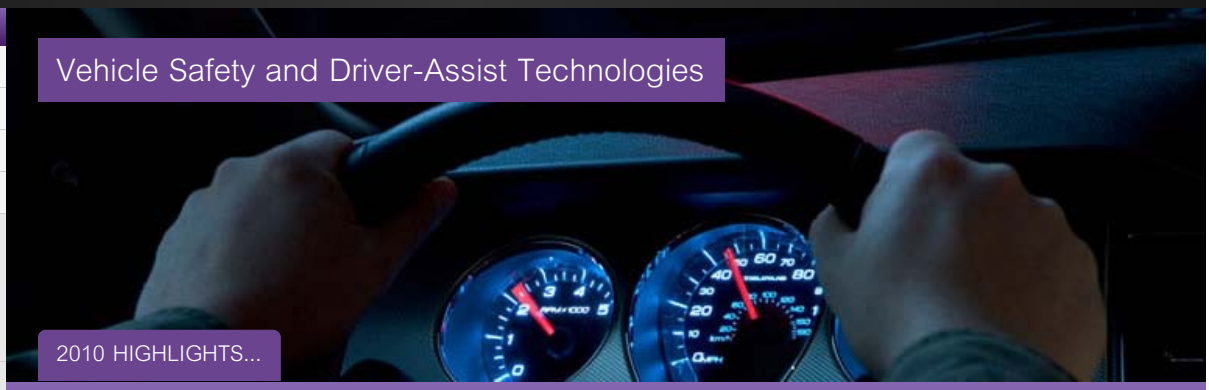
- Supporting a Great Place to Work

External Websites:

- UniWorld Group
- Zubi Advertising

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Vehicle Safety and Driver-Assist Technologies



2010 HIGHLIGHTS...

- Achieved IIHS Top Safety Pick for 2011 Fiesta – first vehicle in its class to do so
- Invested $1 million to expand Ford Driving Skills for Life to 15 states
- Launched research to create digital human body model of a child
- Expanded our investment in "intelligent vehicles"

Ford is a global leader in vehicle safety, and vehicle safety is a critical part of our company identity and reputation. We work to develop innovative technologies and to build in safety from the very beginning of each product development process. Indeed, safety is one of four principles that guide our every design and engineering effort.[1]

In 2010, the three major public domain ratings systems were revised – and made much tougher. Vehicle safety has continued to improve over the years, and the ratings agencies wanted to make it harder to achieve top ratings. The systems that changed include the New Car Assessment Program (NCAP) implemented by the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), the Top Safety Pick program run by the Insurance Institute for Highway Safety (IIHS), and the EuroNCAP system sponsored by seven European governments as well as motoring and consumer organizations. (See How We Manage Vehicle Safety for an overview of the changes.)

Because of these changes, our ratings results this year cannot be meaningfully compared to previous years, although our vehicles are safer than ever. A comparison to other automotive companies' results reveals that we remain an industry leader in motor vehicle safety.

In fact, Ford has the most top U.S. safety ratings of any automaker ever. This includes more IIHS "Top Safety Picks" than any other manufacturer in the six-year history of this crash testing program and more NHTSA five-star ratings than any other manufacturer during 30 years of government testing. (To earn a Top Safety Pick, a vehicle must receive a rating of "good" in offset frontal impact, side impact and rear impact evaluations, and offer electronic stability control. Under the new testing scheme, Top Safety Picks also must earn a "good" rating in roof strength tests.)

Our recent safety highlights include the following:

- The 2011 Ford Taurus is one of the safest-rated large sedans sold in America, with NCAP ratings among the industry leaders for front impact and five-star NCAP crash ratings for side impact. The Taurus also earned a Top Safety Pick designation from IIHS and boasts a comprehensive list of segment-leading safety features.
- The all-new 2011 Ford Explorer, Edge and F-150 as well as the 2011 Lincoln MKX also earned Top Safety Pick designations.
- The 2011 Fiesta is the first vehicle in its class to achieve a Top Safety Pick, and also leads its segment for NCAP ratings. The Fiesta also was the first car in its segment to earn top crash test ratings in each of the world's largest auto markets that perform safety testing – the U.S., China and Europe.
- For the 2011 model year, the IIHS awarded 18 Ford vehicles with "good" ratings for frontal offset performance and 15 Ford vehicles with "good" ratings for side impact performance.
- In Ford's most recent EuroNCAP assessments, using their new testing and rating system, the 2010 Ford C-MAX and Grand C-MAX earned five-star safety ratings.
- Under the previous EuroNCAP system, the Ford Kuga and Fiesta achieved Ford's first three-star ratings for pedestrian protection. These cars also joined the Focus, Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy in having best-in-class, five-star adult protection and four-star child protection ratings.
- The Ford Fiesta and Mondeo were the second and third Ford cars (after the Focus) to be awarded five-star ratings in the Chinese NCAP.

Perspectives on Sustainability

Scott Belcher

President and CEO, Intelligent Transportation Society of America (ITS America)

READ MORE

Related Links

Vehicle Websites:
- Ford Fiesta
- Ford Taurus
- Ford Edge
- Ford Explorer
- Ford F-150
- Lincoln MKX

Ford.co.uk:
- Ford Kuga
- Ford Fiesta
- Ford Focus
- Ford Mondeo
- Ford C-Max
- Ford Grand C-Max
- Ford S-Max
- Ford Galaxy

Ford.com.au:
- Ford Falcon

External Websites:
- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
- Insurance Institute for

- The Ford Falcon was the first Australian-built car to be awarded five stars in the Australasian NCAP.

This section outlines our vehicle safety performance over the past year. It includes a discussion of current vehicle safety challenges and opportunities globally, how we manage vehicle safety within the Company, and our efforts to support and promote driver education. The section then discusses the advanced technologies that can be found on our vehicles. These technologies are organized into four categories: accident avoidance technologies, driver-assist technologies, occupant protection technologies and post-crash/injury mitigation technologies. We then discuss the various collaborative efforts we are undertaking with other organizations related to vehicle safety. The section concludes with two case studies: one looks in depth at the issue of driver distraction, while the other discusses developments in the realm of "intelligent vehicles."

For a discussion of Ford's positions on U.S. public policy issues relating to vehicle safety, please see the Governance section.

---

1. The other principles are quality, fuel efficiency and smart technologies.

Highway Safety
- European New Car Assessment Programme
- Australasian New Car Assessment Program

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Challenges and Opportunities

As we at Ford implement our global "ONE Ford" strategy, we are mindful that countries with different levels of economic and infrastructure development face different traffic safety challenges.

In the U.S. and other developed countries, traffic safety has significantly improved in recent years. Although the U.S. population has continued to increase, the number of traffic fatalities in the U.S. in 2009 reached its lowest level in 55 years, according to the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA). If early projections from NHTSA for 2010 prove accurate, the number of traffic fatalities in the U.S. in 2010 will also decline. In fact, the fatality rate per 100 million vehicle miles traveled has declined steadily since the late 1960s, and is now at the lowest level ever recorded. It declined to 1.13 deaths per 100 million miles in 2009, compared with 1.26 the year before. In the first half of 2010, the rate was 1.02.

Other developed countries have also seen improvements. The nonprofit Resources for the Future looked at traffic fatality data in 32 high-income countries between 1970 and 1999, and found that traffic fatalities declined in these countries by an average of 35 percent.

These improvements can be attributed to a combination of factors, including higher safety belt usage, advancements in vehicle safety technology, greater enforcement, better traffic infrastructure and increased cultural disapproval of driving under the influence.

Of course, traffic safety remains a significant challenge in these countries, with room for improvement. In the U.S. in 2009, more than 30,000 people died in motor vehicle crashes. Traffic crashes are the leading cause of death among U.S. teens. And, as discussed in depth in our case study, distracted driving is an important safety issue.

In developing countries, traffic safety is an acute public health problem. The World Bank reports that fatality rates in developing countries are 25 to 30 per 10,000 vehicles, compared to 1 to 2 per 10,000 vehicles in mature markets. Globally, nearly 1.3 million people die in traffic accidents. More than 1 million of those fatalities occur in countries with low- and middle-income economies. The World Health Organization estimates that deaths due to road traffic accidents will increase to 2.4 million in 2030, primarily owing to increased motor vehicle ownership and use associated with economic growth in low- and middle-income countries.

Many of the traffic deaths in developing nations involve pedestrians, cyclists and motor-driven cycles. As mobility increases in developing markets, people initially use two-wheeled motor vehicles, and the incidence of traffic accidents rises. As people migrate to automobiles, traffic accidents and injury levels generally decrease. During this transition, holistic solutions are required, including infrastructure improvements, the modification of road user behavior and the enforcement of traffic laws. One critical task is to educate drivers about the most important primary safety feature – safety belts.

In both developed and emerging markets, continued improvements in vehicle safety are also very important, and we at Ford continue to take seriously our responsibility to build safe vehicles.

Everywhere in the world, it is increasingly important for road safety stakeholders to work together using an integrated approach to any given safety initiative. To support this approach, we at Ford seek ways to partner with governments, nongovernmental organizations and other stakeholders to identify the best opportunities to promote safety based on real-world data. We have become more involved in encouraging new and innovative ways to modify road user behavior (for example, through new technologies, driver education efforts and working with government agencies such as the UK Driving Standards Agency) and encouraging infrastructure and enforcement improvements in the communities in which we operate.

Related Links

This Report:

- Case Study: Driver Distraction

External Websites:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
- Resources for the Future
- The World Bank
- World Health Organization
- UK Driving Standards Agency

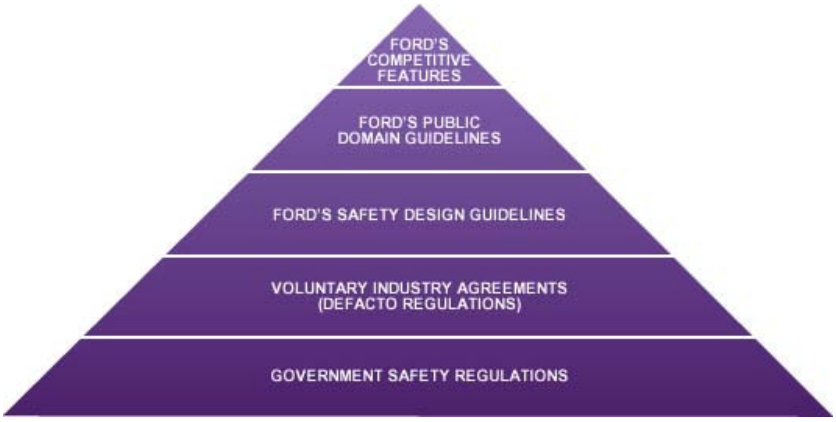
Toolbox

Print report

Download files

How We Manage Vehicle Safety

Here at Ford, our objective is to design and manufacture vehicles that achieve high levels of vehicle safety for a wide range of people over the broad spectrum of real-world conditions. Real-world safety data, driver behavior, research, regulatory requirements and voluntary agreements provide much of the input into our safety processes, including our Safety Design Guidelines (SDGs) and Public Domain Guidelines (PDGs). (See graphic below.) The SDGs are Ford's stringent internal engineering design targets that exceed regulatory requirements and define many additional requirements that are not regulated. The PDGs are Ford guidelines that focus specifically on helping to ensure that our vehicles earn top marks in relevant public domain assessments.



Our PDGs have been revised over the past few years to take into account significant changes in public vehicle testing programs. Globally, the public domain tests have become significantly more stringent. In the U.S., for example, the New Car Assessment Program (NCAP), run by the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), has added a "rigid pole impact test" to assess side-impact safety (in addition to an existing side-impact test); implemented the use of a smaller dummy in the passenger seat in frontal impact tests; and made significant changes to the injury criteria. In addition, NHTSA will now provide an overall vehicle score (a "star" rating, from one to five stars) representing a combination of the vehicle's front, side and rollover ratings. To earn a Top Safety Pick from the Insurance Institute for Highway Safety (IIHS), a vehicle must now receive a "good" rating for a new roof strength test, in addition to "good" ratings in front, side and head restraint assessments. EuroNCAP has added a test for whiplash neck injury protection in rear impact, and also now rewards speed limiters and the inclusion of electronic stability control technologies as a standard feature. Like NHTSA, EuroNCAP also now gives each vehicle an overall star rating representing a combination of individual ratings. (EuroNCAP made this change in 2009.)

Internally, Ford utilizes engineering analyses, extensive computer modeling and crash and sled testing to evaluate the performance of vehicles and individual components. These rigorous evaluations help to confirm that our vehicles meet or exceed regulatory requirements and our even more stringent internal guidelines. Our state-of-the-art crash-test facilities include the Safety Innovation Laboratory in Dearborn, Michigan, and the extensive crash-test facilities in Merkenich, Germany, and Dunton, England.

Global Technical Regulations

The automotive industry is highly regulated, and two systems of vehicle regulation predominate globally: the United Nations Economic Commission for Europe Regulations and the U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards. To meet the relevant regulations of each market in which it sells, a manufacturer must modify its vehicle designs and features. This is a particular challenge for Ford, given our increased focus on producing vehicles with the same platforms globally. It can increase vehicle complexity and cost, often without demonstrated, incremental real-world safety benefit.

With the aim of harmonizing world vehicle regulations, 31 countries are working together to develop Global Technical Regulations (GTRs). Ford actively participates in the GTR development process.

Thus far, 11 GTRs have been developed (though not all relate to motor vehicle types relevant to Ford). Progress has been slow due to the difficulty of reconciling varied national requirements and the historical differences of existing regulations. Despite these challenges, Ford continues to believe that true harmonization has the potential to significantly reduce complexity while maintaining high levels of vehicle safety, security and environmental performance, and we plan to

Related Links

External Websites:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety
- European New Car Assessment Programme
- Global Technical Regulations

continue supporting global harmonization efforts.

Haddon Safety Matrix

Vehicle safety is the product of complex interactions among the driver, the vehicle and the driving environment. We use the Haddon Safety Matrix (developed by William Haddon, a former NHTSA administrator and IIHS president) to take a holistic view of the factors that affect vehicle safety.

The Haddon Matrix looks at injuries in terms of causal and contributing factors, including human behavior, vehicle safety and the driving environment. Each factor is then considered in the pre-crash, crash and post-crash phases. In the pre-crash phase, the focus is to help avoid the crash. In the crash and post-crash phases, the primary objective is to help reduce the risk of injury to occupants during and after a collision. Another goal is to minimize the amount of time that elapses between the crash and when help arrives.

	Human Behavior	Vehicle Safety	Environment
			
Pre-Crash (accident avoidance)	• Research • Education • Advocacy	• Crash avoidance technologies • Security	• Road design for accident avoidance • Traffic control
Crash (occupant protection)	• Technology and proper use	• Restraints • Structures that absorb and reduce crash energy and intrusion	• Road design for injury mitigation • Research
Post-Crash (injury mitigation)	• Telematics	• Post-crash notification	• Emergency medical services
Examples of Ford Actions	• SYNC® technology • MyFord Touch™ driver connect technology • MyKey™ • Ford Driving Skills for Life	• Accident avoidance features • Inflatable safety belts • Roll Stability Control®	• Accident research • Development of “vehicle-to-infrastructure” communication systems

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Driver Education

According to the U.S. Department of Transportation, human factors cause or contribute to more than 90 percent of serious crashes. And, traffic accidents are the number-one cause of death of teens in the U.S. More than 3,000 teenagers (aged 15–19) die on American roads each year.

Ford Driving Skills for Life (FDSFL), Ford's driver education program, demonstrates our commitment to educating teens about safer driving. FDSFL provides outstanding learning tools, including an award-winning curriculum with hands-on training and web-based learning, a teacher and parent educational kit, a teaching DVD designed for interactive learning, and printed materials to help young drivers improve their ability behind the wheel. Both the FDSFL website and "ride and drives" for teen drivers include modules on the importance of avoiding distracted driving. In addition, the program includes information about eco-driving, car care tips and information for mature drivers.

Ford Driving Skills for Life

In early 2011, the Ford Motor Company Fund invested an additional $1 million to expand the FDSFL program in the U.S. from 9 to 15 states. Students at a total of 30 high schools will take part in the new expanded program.

The FDSFL program is also being implemented outside the U.S. In 2008, Ford launched FDSFL in our Asia Pacific and Africa region, and in 2010 continued with the successful rollout of the program in Australia and South Africa. (In addition, FDSFL is in Indonesia, the Philippines, Thailand, Vietnam, China, Taiwan and India.) Ford has now provided training for thousands of licensed drivers in these markets.

In South Africa in 2010, Ford brought special attention to the FDSFL program by involving seven performers from the South African Idols singing competition in a ride-and-drive event. The performers learned new skills designed to make them safer and more fuel-efficient drivers, and also got to compete in a tough "skidpan" challenge testing their braking and steering skills. The event was featured in a subsequent edition of the Idols show.

Beginning in 2007, Ford partnered with the Illinois Department of Transportation, secretary of state and state police to launch a statewide effort – modeled on Ford Driving Skills for Life – designed to reduce teen crashes and fatalities. Called **Operation Teen Safe Driving**, this campaign was the first of its kind and got high school students directly involved by challenging them to develop and implement a teen safe driving community awareness campaign using FDSFL resources. This seven-month statewide effort – which now takes place annually – involves 778 schools in 102 Illinois counties, and has the support of the governor, the secretary of state and the Chicago board of education. In 2010 alone, the state estimates that the program touched 3.2 million Illinois residents.

The results have been remarkable: Illinois has seen a 45 percent reduction in teen fatalities over the last four years.

In recent years, distracted driving has received increased national attention as a contributing factor in motor vehicle crashes. We at Ford have been working for years to research the issue and develop voluntary guidelines, in addition to providing teen driver education and appropriate technologies to help reduce the risk of crashes due to distracted driving. Over the past two years our sustainability report has included a case study on distracted driving; the case has been updated for this year's report.

Related Links

This Report:

- Case Study: Driver Distraction

Ford Websites:

- Ford Driving Skills for Life

External Websites:

- Operation Teen Safe Driving

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Accident Avoidance Technologies

ON THIS PAGE


Curve Control


Active City Stop


Adaptive Front Lighting System


Auto High-Beam Controller


MyKey™


AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control®

A variety of Ford technologies, in addition to each vehicle's handling and braking capabilities, can help drivers to avoid accidents.

Curve Control

For example, Curve Control is a new technology launched on the all-new 2011 Ford Explorer. Curve Control is designed to sense when a driver is taking a curve too quickly. In those situations, it rapidly reduces engine torque and can apply four-wheel braking, slowing the vehicle by up to 10 mph in about one second. The technology is designed to be effective on wet or dry pavement, and is expected to be helpful when drivers are entering or exiting freeway ramps with too much speed. Curve Control will roll out in the majority of Ford products by 2015.

back to top

Active City Stop

In Europe, Ford's Active City Stop can help the driver avoid low-speed collisions. The system uses a forward-facing infra-red laser, mounted next to the rearview mirror, to detect reflective objects in front of the car. The system continuously (100 times per second) monitors the distance to the vehicle in front and the closing speed, to determine the risk of a collision. If, for example, the car in front brakes suddenly, and the system considers that a collision is imminent, it pre-charges the brakes. If the driver does not react, the brakes are automatically applied and the throttle is released. Active City Stop is only active at speeds below 30 km/h (about 19 mph). If the relative speed difference between the two vehicles is less than 15 km/h, then the system may help the driver avoid the collision entirely. For relative speeds between 15 and 30 km/h, the objective is to reduce speed as much as possible prior to impact. Active City Stop is available on the new Ford Focus in Europe.

back to top

Adaptive Front Lighting System

Another important Ford safety innovation is the next generation of adaptive headlamps. Our Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFLS) can help drivers to see better at night around curves in the road. The system allows drivers to take corners and curves more safely, and to consume less energy while doing so. The AFLS is available on all newer MK-designated Lincolns and on a number of vehicles across the Ford fleet in Europe.

back to top

Auto High-Beam Controller

Auto High-Beam Controller is a new feature that strives to maximize visibility at night by automatically actuating the high-beam lamps when ambient lighting conditions and traffic conditions permit. A forward-looking camera senses the headlamps of oncoming vehicles and the taillamps of leading vehicles, upon which the system automatically switches to the low-beam lamps. Auto High-Beam is offered as an option on the Ford Taurus in North America and on the Ford Mondeo, S-MAX, Galaxy and new Focus in Europe. It is standard on the Lincoln MKS and

Related Links

Vehicle Websites:
- Ford Focus
- Ford Fusion
- Ford Taurus
- Ford Escape
- Ford Escape Hybrid
- Ford Explorer
- Ford Flex
- Ford Expedition
- Ford E-Series
- Ford F-150
- Ford SuperDuty
- Lincoln MKZ
- Lincoln MKS
- Lincoln MKX
- Lincoln MKT
- Lincoln Navigator

Ford.co.uk:
- Ford Focus (Europe)
- Ford Mondeo
- Ford S-MAX
- Ford Galaxy

Ford Websites:
- MyKey™

MKT.

back to top

MyKey™

Ford's MyKey™ system is an innovative technology designed to help parents encourage their teenagers to drive more safely. MyKey allows owners to program a key that can limit the vehicle's top speed to 80 mph and the audio volume to 44 percent of total volume. MyKey encourages safety-belt usage by enabling Ford's Beltminder™ to chime every minute indefinitely until the safety belt is buckled, rather than ceasing after five minutes, and also by muting the audio system until the belt is buckled. In addition, MyKey provides an earlier low-fuel warning (at 75 miles to empty rather than 50); sounds speed-alert chimes at 45, 55 or 65 mph; and will not allow manual override of other safety systems. For the 2011 model year, MyKey is available on nearly all retail vehicles – including the Ford F-150, SuperDuty, Taurus, Fusion, Mustang, Focus, Explorer, Flex, Escape and Expedition, as well as all Lincolns (the Navigator, MKS, MKX, MKZ and MKT).

Late in 2011 on the Ford Taurus and Explorer, Ford will upgrade MyKey with a world-first technology that allows parents to block explicit radio programming while their teens are driving. The upgraded technology also will allow parents to limit a vehicle's top speed at any of four different settings – 65, 70, 75 or 80 mph. These upgrades will quickly be offered across a variety of Ford and Lincoln models.

back to top

AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control®

Finally, Ford's industry-leading innovation known as AdvanceTrac® with Roll Stability Control® (RSC) continues to give drivers more driving confidence. RSC actively measures and helps control both yaw and roll movements. It uses two gyroscopic sensors to detect when a driver corners too fast or swerves sharply to avoid an obstacle. It then applies pressure to select brake(s) to help the driver maintain control and thus reduce the risk of a rollover event.

Roll Stability Control is standard equipment on the Ford Flex, Explorer, Expedition, Edge, Escape and F-150, as well as E-Series wagons and vans and the 2011 SuperDuty with single rear-wheel configurations. It is also standard equipment on the Lincoln Navigator, MKX and MKT. Ford developed a next-generation regenerative braking system for the 2009 and 2010 Escape Hybrid that is compatible with RSC. For the 2011 model year, 84 percent of all Ford vehicles offered either RSC or our standard electronic stability control system; all 2012 models will offer standard stability control systems.

Percent of North American Nameplates with Standard Offering of Electronic Stability Control or Roll Stability Control

	Percent
2012 Model Year	100%
2011 Model Year	84%
2010 Model Year	77%
2009 Model Year	62%
2008 Model Year	40%
2007 Model Year	27%

back to top

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Driver-Assist Technologies

ON THIS PAGE


SYNC®


MyFord Touch™


Rearview Camera


Adaptive Cruise Control


Collision Warning with Brake Support


Blind Spot Information System


Cross Traffic Alert


Lane Keeping Alert


Lane Keeping Aid


Driver Alert

Traffic Sign Recognition


Active Park Assist

Ford vehicles feature an array of new driver-assist and convenience technologies.

SYNC®

Ford's popular and award-winning SYNC® system, powered by Microsoft®, is one such technology. Numerous studies show that hands-free multimedia devices offer benefits compared to hand-held devices. The benefits are seen in driving performance as well as object and event detection. Ford SYNC provides a way for drivers to use cell phones and MP3 players through voice commands alone, while keeping their eyes on the road and their hands on the wheel. Ford SYNC is now available with "Traffic, Directions and Information," a subscription service that allows drivers to access traffic reports and turn-by-turn directions, all via voice command. Ford SYNC was launched in late 2007 and is now available on nearly every vehicle from Ford and Lincoln in North America. Please see the case study for more on how SYNC helps to further reduce driver distraction.

back to top

MyFord Touch™

In 2010, Ford introduced the new MyFord Touch™ driver connect technology – an all-new user interface that delivers a smarter and simpler way to connect drivers with in-car technologies and their digital lives. MyFord Touch, along with MyLincoln Touch™, was developed after a thorough review of current interior design – and its limitations – considering the abundance of new and emerging technologies. After studying vehicle communications trends and the ways drivers were using technology inside their vehicles, it was evident that the current way of interacting with car and truck technology was rapidly becoming obsolete.

The MyFord Touch user interface replaces many of the traditional vehicle buttons, knobs and gauges, and is designed to increase focus on driving while providing access to information, entertainment and connectivity features. The system includes a next-generation, state-of-the-art voice recognition system with nearly 10,000 available commands, and clear, large, color LCD displays, along with two five-way controllers on the steering wheel. These features encourage drivers to maximize the time their eyes are on the road and their hands are on the wheel. And although the user interface is all new, it should not feel unfamiliar, as it is based on the fundamentals of Ford's award-winning navigation system, as well as the SYNC user interface.

MyFord Touch launched on the 2011 Ford Edge and goes global with availability on the 2012 Focus. MyLincoln Touch will be standard equipment on new Lincolns beginning with the 2011 MKX.

back to top

Related Links

Vehicle Websites:
- Ford Focus
- Ford Fusion
- Ford Taurus
- Ford Edge
- Ford Escape
- Ford Explorer
- Ford Flex
- Lincoln MKZ
- Lincoln MKS
- Lincoln MKX
- Lincoln MKT

Ford.co.uk:
- Ford Focus (Europe)
- Ford Mondeo
- Ford S-MAX
- Ford Galaxy
- Ford C-MAX

Ford Websites:
- SYNC®
- MyFord Touch™

Rearview Camera

Ford's Rearview Camera can enhance rear visibility, as well as assist with actions that require reverse maneuverability such as parallel parking and hitching trailers. The system uses an exterior camera embedded in the rear of the vehicle that sends images to a video display in the rearview mirror or the navigation system screen. These images can help improve visibility directly behind the vehicle when the vehicle is in reverse. The camera image is overlaid with lines that mark the width of the vehicle, which makes it easier to gauge distance and navigate in reverse. The system also increases visibility in low light by using a low-light-capable camera and high-intensity reverse taillights. The Rearview Camera is offered on most of Ford's vehicles. The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration recently published a Notice of Proposed Rulemaking mandating rearview cameras and displays meeting specified criteria by September 1, 2014, on all vehicles with less than a 10,000 lb. gross vehicle weight rating.

back to top

Adaptive Cruise Control

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) helps drivers maintain a pre-set distance from the vehicle in front of them. It is one of the innovations now available on the 2011 Ford Taurus, Explorer and Edge; the Lincoln MKS, MKX and MKT; and the Ford Mondeo, S-MAX, Galaxy and new Focus in Europe. While primarily a comfort and convenience feature, Adaptive Cruise Control also contributes to more controlled driving when traffic flow is uneven. The ACC module is mounted at the front of the vehicle and uses radar to measure the gap and closing speed to the vehicle ahead. The system automatically adjusts the speed of the car to help maintain a pre-set distance from the vehicle in front. Ford was the first manufacturer to launch radar-based ACC several years ago.

back to top

Collision Warning with Brake Support

In driving situations that present a high risk of collision with the vehicle in front, Ford's Collision Warning with Brake Support technology activates a visual and audible warning. In addition, the brake system is pre-tensioned and the "servo boost" assistance system is modulated to provide faster brake performance, if required by the driver. Range and speed information is sensed with long-range radar mounted on the front of the vehicle. Collision Warning with Brake Support can be activated or deactivated as the driver wishes, and it may alert the driver if the sensor becomes blocked by snow, ice or mist. This technology is available in the U.S. on the Ford Taurus, Edge and Explorer and the Lincoln MKS, MKX and MKT, and in Europe on the Ford Mondeo, S-MAX, Galaxy and Focus.

back to top

Blind Spot Information System

Blind Spot Information System (BLIS) is designed to help inform the driver when a vehicle is detected in the "blind spot zone." The system uses two radar sensor modules that are mounted behind the left- and right-hand side of the rear bumper. BLIS is active above 10 km/h (about 6 mph) and is even capable of detecting motorcycles in some cases.

back to top

Cross Traffic Alert

Cross Traffic Alert is designed to assist the driver when other parked vehicles may obscure the driver's view of traffic while backing out of a parking space. To assist the driver while slowly backing up, the BLIS sensors in the corners of the rear bumper can detect approaching vehicles. A warning chime will sound, an amber light will display in the outside mirror on the appropriate side of the vehicle and a text message will inform the driver of the situation.

In North America, both BLIS and Cross Traffic Alert are available on the Ford Fusion, Taurus, Edge and Explorer, as well as on the Lincoln MKZ, MKX and MKT. In Europe, BLIS is available on the Ford Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy as well as the new Ford Focus and C-MAX.

back to top

Lane Keeping Alert

Lane Keeping Alert (previously called Lane Departure Warning) is designed to warn the driver, via a vibration in the steering wheel, when the front-view camera detects that an unintentional lane departure is likely to happen. The front-view camera continuously monitors the road ahead and evaluates where the car is in relation to the lane markings. If the driver uses the turn indicator, or the driving situation suggests an intended lane change, the warning is suppressed. Lane Keeping Alert is deactivated at speeds below 38 mph, so as not to interfere in urban stop-and-go conditions. The system can be activated and deactivated via a switch on the turn indicator stalk.

Lane Keeping Alert is available in Europe on the Ford Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy, as well as on the new Focus.

back to top

Lane Keeping Aid

Lane Keeping Aid goes a step further. In addition to vibrating the steering wheel, it undertakes a temporary steering intervention to steer the vehicle back into the lane, when the front-view camera detects that an unintentional lane departure is likely to happen. Like Lane Keeping Alert, Lane Keeping Aid can be activated and deactivated via a switch on the turn indicator stalk and is automatically deactivated below 38 mph. Lane Keeping Aid was introduced in Europe on the new Ford Focus, and its availability will be expanded to other vehicles.

back to top

Driver Alert

Driver Alert computes a “vigilance level” for the driver and displays it in the cluster upon request. The vigilance judgment is based on statistical analysis of lane information collected by the forward-looking camera and the vehicle’s yaw behavior. If the driver vigilance level falls below a certain level (i.e., if the driver gets tired), a warning is given. Driver Alert is available in Europe on the Ford Focus, Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy.

back to top

Traffic Sign Recognition

Our new Traffic Sign Recognition technology uses a forward-looking camera to recognize speed limit signs next to the road; it then shows them in the information display. Traffic Sign Recognition is available on the Ford Focus in Europe.

back to top

Active Park Assist

Finally, Active Park Assist, a semi-automatic parallel parking system, is another new driver-assist technology. After activating the system by pressing the “parking” button, sensors detect a parking space by scanning. As the car passes the space, sensors measure the length. The system then defines the optimum point from which the vehicle can start parking and gives audible and visual warnings advising the driver to stop. From there the driver has to engage reverse and operate the accelerator and brakes, but the car controls the steering angle. When in the space, the vehicle continues to control the steering, with the driver engaging forward and reverse gears as necessary until the system gives a finish signal. Active Park Assist is available on the Ford Focus and C-MAX in Europe and the Ford Flex, Escape, Focus, Taurus and Explorer and the Lincoln MKT in the U.S.

back to top

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Occupant Protection Technologies

Many factors influence a vehicle's crash performance, including the design of the vehicle's structure to absorb impact energy and the use of passive safety equipment such as air bags and safety belts. To help protect drivers and passengers in the event of a crash, a variety of Ford technologies have been designed to enhance the performance of safety belts and air bags and provide additional occupant protection in side crashes and rollovers.

The next-generation Ford Focus, which went on sale in North America and Europe in early 2011, features a new standard **driver-side air bag**. The new air bag, which will be used on other future Ford models as well, is designed to further reduce loading on the driver's chest. It uses a curved tether, which resembles a smile when inflated. The new air bag was designed to address new, more stringent federal regulations and five-star New Car Assessment Program (NCAP) requirements, which were directly influenced, in part, by Ford's biomechanical research. The new NCAP uses a mathematical equation published by Ford researchers to estimate the probability of crash-related chest injuries, depending on age and chest deflection. Accordingly, lower chest deflections will be rewarded in the revised star-rating system.

Older drivers, in particular, can benefit from the air bag's redesign, because they are more susceptible to rib injuries due to weaker bones. According to Ford safety researchers, the typical 65-year-old has one-quarter the ability of a 16-year-old to withstand crash-related forces on their chest during a forward collision.

Safety belts remain the most important vehicle safety technology available. For the 2011 model year, Ford brought to market the world's first automotive inflatable safety belts – a brand-new technology that won Popular Science magazine's "Best of What's New" award in late 2010. These belts combine the attributes of traditional safety belt and air bag technologies to help reduce head, neck and chest injuries for rear-seat passengers. Ford introduced the inflatable rear safety belts on the new 2011 Ford Explorer in North America.

The inflatable belts are designed to deploy over a vehicle occupant's torso and shoulder in less than 40 milliseconds in the event of a crash. Each belt's tubular air bag inflates with cold compressed gas. The inflatable belt distributes crash force energy across five times more of the occupant's torso than a traditional belt, helping to further reduce the risk of injury.

In everyday use, the inflatable belts operate like conventional safety belts and are safe and compatible with infant and child safety car and booster seats. In Ford's research, more than 90 percent of those who tested the inflatable safety belts found them to be similar to or more comfortable than a conventional belt, because they feel padded and softer. Ford will monitor real-world effectiveness and customer acceptance of this new technology as it begins the phase-in into the Ford fleet.

Ford Escape 2010 with Safety Canopy

Ford was the first in the industry to offer rollover-activated side-curtain air bags, known as the **Safety Canopy®**, beginning with the Ford Explorer and Mercury Mountaineer in 2002. The Safety Canopy with rollover sensors, combined with safety belts, helps to further reduce the risk of injury to vehicle occupants during side-impact collisions and rollover crashes. For the 2011 model year, the Safety Canopy is available on the Ford Explorer, Expedition, Edge, Flex, Escape, Taurus, F-150 and Super Duty, and the Lincoln MKX, MKT, Navigator and MKS.

Ford has recently implemented a **new strategy** for deploying side-curtain air bags in frontal impacts – specifically in the 40 mph/40 percent offset deformable barrier crash test conducted by

Related Links

Vehicle Websites:

- Ford Fiesta
- Ford Focus
- Ford Fusion
- Ford Fusion Hybrid
- Ford Taurus
- Ford Edge
- Ford Escape
- Ford Explorer
- Ford Flex
- Ford Expedition
- Ford F-150
- Ford SuperDuty
- Lincoln MKZ Hybrid
- Lincoln MKS
- Lincoln MKX
- Lincoln MKT
- Lincoln Navigator

Ford.co.uk:

- Ford Mondeo
- Ford S-MAX
- Ford Galaxy

External Websites:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety

the Insurance Institute for Highway Safety. This strategy helps to reduce the risk of occupant contact with the roof rail, A-pillar and B-pillar and reduces containment concerns during frontal offset and angular impacts.

Ford is also advancing the state of the art in crash sensing. Specifically, we are phasing in new pressure-based sensors on new side air bag systems to deploy side air bags and curtains earlier in a crash as compared to state-of-the-art acceleration-based sensors. In a side collision, the pressure sensors are designed to detect a change in air pressure inside the front doors as the doors deform and send an electrical signal to deploy the side air bag system. Pressure-based sensors have increased accuracy to measure the severity of a side impact crash than acceleration-based sensors, which makes them better able to differentiate between a life-threatening, air-bag-deployable crash and relatively harmless daily abuse that should not require air bag protection. The system also enhances performance in new federal side-impact tests.

In Europe, the Ford Mondeo, S-MAX and Galaxy are equipped with an Inflatable Knee Bolster, designed to help reduce the driver's forward motion in the event of a severe frontal crash and reduce the risk of injury to lower limbs. This technology is also available in the U.S. on the 2011 Fusion Hybrid and MKZ Hybrid and the 2011 Ford Fiesta.

Ford vehicles are engineered with advanced structures designed to direct crash energy around the passenger compartment. For example, Ford's Side Protection And Cabin Enhancement architecture – known as SPACE™ Architecture – utilizes crash energy management techniques to help channel impact forces around and away from the passenger cabin in side collisions. The SPACE system integrates a high-strength steel structure in the floor that runs the width of the vehicle, as well as reinforcements along the rocker panels to help protect passengers in side-impact incidents. In addition, many new Ford vehicles are built with the company's Trinity Front Crash Body Architecture. This energy-absorbing body structure is optimized for strength and stiffness, and it's designed to absorb and redirect crash forces away from the passenger compartment.

As smaller and more fuel-efficient vehicles become more popular, the safety of smaller cars is sometimes raised as a concern. Ford continues to make small cars even safer while building larger vehicles that are more crash compatible with smaller vehicles. The 2011 Ford Fiesta, for example, was the first mini-car to earn a 2010 Top Safety Pick from the Insurance Institute for Highway Safety since the IIHS's introduction of the new roof-strength test. The Fiesta's extensive use of high-strength steels, our Trinity front crash structure, SPACE Architecture and advanced air bag technologies (including a segment-exclusive driver's knee air bag) helped the car perform well in IIHS testing. In our larger vehicles, we've already lowered the front bumper structures on most of our crossovers, SUVs and pickups to help them better match up with small vehicle crash structures.

Finally, Ford is using more advanced and ultra-high-strength steels than ever as part of our continuing effort to enhance the safety and fuel efficiency of our vehicles. Increased use of these types of steels helps us design vehicle structures with enhanced crash energy management, while balancing overall vehicle weight – even as we add more features, equipment and safety devices.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Post-Crash/Injury Mitigation Technologies

One method of assisting emergency responders to reach the scene of a vehicle crash quickly is through in-vehicle emergency call systems, also called post-crash notification. These systems enable a driver to summon assistance in an urgent situation.

In the U.S., Ford SYNC® is an award-winning, in-car connectivity system that was introduced on certain 2007 model year vehicles. Beginning with the 2009 model year, SYNC-equipped vehicles come with an occupant communications capability called SYNC 911 Assist. In the event of a severe crash, the ability to directly contact the local 911 emergency operator could be critical, for both the vehicle occupants and first responders. While any cell phone alone could be used in an emergency situation, SYNC can assist in placing a call to a local 911 emergency operator – when a phone is properly paired, turned on and connected to SYNC and where the system and cell phone remain powered and undamaged – should a crash with an air bag deployment or fuel shutoff switch activation occur. The key advantage of SYNC 911 Assist is speed, as calls are placed directly to local 911 operators and do not have to be routed through a call center (as in competitors' versions), which can delay the time it takes to get help on the way. SYNC 911 Assist gives the occupants a choice as to whether or not to make the emergency call, and places the call if the occupant does not respond after a short time.

This voice-activated feature is available to customers with 2008 and beyond model year SYNC-equipped vehicles through a dealer-installed software update. Ford recently announced that we will offer a system similar to SYNC 911 Assist in Ford's European product range beginning in 2012. We are working with the various stakeholders in Europe to ensure that this type of solution is supportive of the eCall initiative, a pan-European, in-vehicle emergency call system.

The SOS-Post Crash Alert System, which is standard equipment on most Ford, Lincoln and Mercury vehicles, is another advance in post-crash safety technology. The SOS-Post Crash Alert System automatically activates the horn and emergency flashers in the event of an air bag deployment or safety belt pre-tensioner activation. The second-generation system – which was added to the 2011 Ford F-150, SuperDuty, Explorer and Edge and the Lincoln MKX – also is designed to automatically unlock vehicle doors subsequent to an air bag deployment or safety belt pre-tensioner activation, to aid in rescue. The system is designed to alert passersby and emergency services to the vehicle's location.

Related Links

Vehicle Websites:

- Ford Edge
- Ford Explorer
- Ford F-150
- Ford SuperDuty
- Lincoln MKX

Ford Websites:

- SYNC®

External Websites:

- European Automobile Manufacturers' Association

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Research

Ford is undertaking a number of research efforts to assess and verify the effectiveness of new active safety technologies, such as those using forward-looking radar and vision sensors. (Research regarding vehicle-to-vehicle and vehicle-to-infrastructure communication technologies is discussed in the "intelligent vehicles" case study.)

In January 2010, a consortium of 29 partners – led by the Ford European Research Center in Aachen, Germany – joined forces in the Accident Avoidance by Active Intervention of Intelligent Vehicles (interactIVe) European research project. The consortium seeks to support the development and implementation of active safety systems, and consists of seven automotive manufacturers, six suppliers, 14 research institutes and three other stakeholders. The European Commission will cover more than half of the €30 million budget.

During the planned 42-month duration of interactIVe, the partners will test the performance of implemented safety systems through active intervention, including autonomous braking and steering in critical situations, with the aim of avoiding collisions or at least mitigating impact severity in accidents.

In 2008, Ford launched a major European research project (called EuroFOT) to deliver a large-scale field operational test of the real-world impact of active safety systems. Under the EU's Seventh Framework Program (FP7) for research and technological development, this project joins together 28 partners – including vehicle manufacturers, suppliers, universities and research centers – and will run until August 2011. More than 1,500 cars and trucks will be equipped with eight new active safety technologies, along with advanced data-collection capabilities. This will allow a thorough evaluation of the new technologies for safety, efficiency and driver comfort, in real-world scenarios and with ordinary drivers. The project has a total budget of €22 million and is led by the Ford research center in Aachen, Germany. It includes 100 Ford vehicles.

In another area of research, Ford announced in March 2011 that we launched research aimed to create one of the world's first digital human body models of a child. The model could someday serve as a digital "dummy" for computer crash testing. A child's body is very different from an adult's, and building a digital human body model of a child will help Ford design future systems that offer better protection for our young passengers.

Digital models are painstakingly detailed; Ford's current adult digital human body model took more than a decade to create. It was also one of the first full human body digital models ever created. It contains digital representations of the human body, the skeleton and the internal organs in great detail. In addition to the geometrical information, the Ford adult human body model includes accurate mechanical properties, so that in "virtual" or simulated crashes it deforms like a real human would in a real crash. The model has been extensively validated by comparing its response in simulated tests to data from publicly available data in the scientific literature.

Such models are used in research, not vehicle development. They do not take the place of crash dummies, which measure the effects of forces on the body, but instead are used to better understand injury mechanisms, so as to further improve restraint system effectiveness.

For the new digital human body model of a child, Ford researchers have contracted with Tianjin University of Science and Technology and Tianjin Children's Hospital to obtain child geometry and basic body information from sources like MRIs and CT scans provided by volunteers. Most other information for the project will be obtained from public domain literature.

Finally, a particularly creative research technique Ford has been using involves driving cars with Collision Warning with Brake Support into large "balloons" nearly the size and shape of real cars. The purpose of these tests is to assess the accuracy of the radar and the timing of the warning signals and braking pre-charge. The balloons play the role of a "target" vehicle, allowing Ford engineers to assess the radar and braking features without endangering test drivers or damaging real cars. The balloons offer enough "give" to allow impact without injury. Ford uses about a dozen balloon cars in different sizes, each made from tarp-like material and weighing more than 40 pounds.

Related Links

External Websites:
- interactIVe
- EuroFOT

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Collaborative Efforts

ON THIS PAGE

Related Links

External Websites:
- National Fire Protection Association
- Society of Automotive Engineers
- U.S. Council for Automotive Research

Ford Motor Company continues to be involved with a number of partners to enhance the safety of the driving experience and develop future technologies.

Crash Avoidance Metrics Partnership

In 1995, Ford and General Motors launched the Crash Avoidance Metrics Partnership (CAMP) to conduct pre-competitive active safety research with other OEMs, suppliers and the U.S. government. Within CAMP, the Vehicle Safety Communications Two (VSC-2) Consortium, which included Ford, GM, Toyota, Daimler and Honda, worked with the U.S. Department of Transportation on projects to develop safety applications that utilize vehicle communications. Their efforts focused on developing a communication system whereby vehicles can “talk” to each other and to the roadway. This would be analogous to a wireless internet system or a cellular telephone for cars. CAMP VSC-2 successfully completed projects that demonstrated the basic feasibility of this technology and evaluated several applications.

CAMP has now formed a VSC-3 Consortium with Ford, GM, Honda, Hyundai-Kia, Mercedes, Nissan, Toyota and VW-Audi to continue work on vehicle-to-vehicle communications for safety applications. This consortium is being funded by the U.S. Department of Transportation to complete all of the pre-competitive work necessary for a deployment decision for vehicle safety communications in 2013. In addition, the consortium is being funded to conduct driver clinics of vehicle-to-vehicle (V2V) safety systems around the U.S. in 2011 and is preparing to participate in a model deployment of V2V systems in 2012. (See the case study for more on Ford’s work regarding “intelligent vehicle” systems.)

CAMP completed two projects with the U.S. National Highway Traffic Safety Administration in 2010. The Crash Imminent Braking Project (involving Ford, GM, Mercedes, Continental and Delphi) developed minimum performance requirements and objective test procedures for systems that automatically apply the brakes to avoid crashes or mitigate the severity of a crash. The Advanced Restraint Systems Project (involving Ford, GM and Mercedes) developed and evaluated restraint systems that utilize pre-crash and occupant sensing information. In 2011, a CAMP consortium will work with NHTSA on a project to develop performance requirements and test procedures for systems to avoid or mitigate vehicle crashes with pedestrians.

back to top

First Responder Training

For decades, Ford has supplied vehicles to fire departments so they can train on the latest technologies and materials using their increasingly advanced extrication tools. The increased use of stronger steels (e.g., boron steel, tubular hydroform steel and high-strength steel) in motor vehicles, as well as the introduction of new technologies such as advanced safety features and hybrid powertrains, have raised some questions by first responders regarding gaining access to vehicle occupants who have been involved in a severe accident. As a result, Ford has provided more than 2,000 training vehicles to first responders since 1990.

In addition, following the introduction of our first hybrid model (the 2006 Ford Escape Hybrid), Ford began publishing emergency responder hybrid vehicle guides with instructions on how to quickly and safely disable the vehicle’s electrical and battery systems before attempting to rescue occupants. In June 2009, Ford’s training efforts included working with the Regional Alliance for Firefighter Training, which is made up of nearly 35 fire departments in Michigan. For this event, we provided 10 hybrid vehicles to facilitate the first-known emergency responder training event specifically focused on hybrid vehicles.

In 2010, Ford provided more than 70 vehicles to first responders for training purposes, including 12 vehicles to the Dearborn (Michigan) Fire Department. These vehicles gave more than 100 firefighters the opportunity to train on advanced vehicles using their new extrication equipment,

commonly known as “the jaws of life,” which the city of Dearborn obtained with the aid of an “Assistance for Firefighters” federal grant program.

Ford also is working to take this training to the national level. In October 2010 we partnered with PennWell Publishing, the publisher of ***Fire Engineering*** magazine, to develop a three-part training video on advanced vehicle technologies and extrication techniques. This training video was released at the annual Fire Department Instructors Conference, held in Indianapolis, Indiana, in March 2011.

Ford is also working with the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) to provide electric vehicle safety training to first responders. The NFPA’s training program, which was announced last year as part of a $4.4 million grant from the U.S. Department of Energy, will provide firefighters and first responders with information about how to safely handle emergency situations involving new technologies found in electric vehicles.

Ford’s efforts and training events have been well received by the first responder community, and should help their important efforts in the future.

back to top

University Partnerships

Ford increasingly collaborates with university partners on a wide range of research projects, including research into advanced safety technologies. In recent years, we have fine-tuned the objectives of our grant-providing University Research Program (URP), moving away from exploratory, long-term research to highly collaborative projects focused on innovations with more near- and mid-term implementation potential.

In 2010, Ford awarded 13 new URP grants to 12 universities around the globe. Recipient schools include, for example, Wayne State University in Detroit, Michigan; Stanford University in Palo Alto, California; RWTH Aachen University in Aachen, Germany; and Tsinghua University in Beijing, China. These new Ford URP projects add to an active research portfolio that now comprises 30 studies in partnership with 26 universities globally.

In addition to the URP projects, Ford has major research alliances with the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), the University of Michigan and Northwestern University.

Safety is a central thrust in many of these collaborative university programs. The following are some examples of current projects:

- Projects within the Ford–MIT alliance are yielding progress in areas of vehicle autonomy and active safety, including computer vision, lane keeping, vehicle controls, obstacle detection and avoidance, and accurately assessing the driver’s interaction with the vehicle. One project aims to assess the role of active safety technologies, features and functions in reducing driving-related stresses and enhancing driver wellness.
- At Auburn University, Ford has an ongoing project to conduct “sensor fusion” – that is, to coordinate between Global Positioning System sensors and the motion sensors in a vehicle’s stability control systems, to predict when a driver is about to lose control. The ultimate goal is to use satellites to feed data to a vehicle’s electronic stability control system, allowing it to adjust and prevent a loss-of-control accident.
- At the University of Michigan, safety work includes a portfolio of projects on 360° sensing and developing more robust and capable active vehicle control and enhanced collision avoidance systems, utilizing both onboard sensors and offboard information sources.
- A project at the State University of New York’s Downstate Medical Center should yield an improved understanding of human tolerance to pelvis injury.
- Collaborative work is ongoing with Purdue University investigating enhanced vehicle dynamics and stability control.
- As part of its accident research projects in Germany, the UK and Australia, Ford works closely with internationally acknowledged safety experts from the Universities of Hannover, Loughborough, Dresden, Birmingham and Monash.

Collaborative university work catalyzes innovation at Ford by providing access to leading researchers at the cutting edge of vehicle dynamics and stability control, accident avoidance and driver-assist safety technology, to name just a few. Ford will continue to integrate these collaborative innovations, driving continuous improvement in real-world safety and sustainability for all Ford Motor Company products.

back to top

Alcolock Blue Ribbon Panel

Reducing the incidence of impaired driving would go a long way toward improving road traffic safety. In the EU, 25–30 percent of all car accidents involve alcohol. In the U.S., approximately 40 percent of all traffic fatalities are alcohol-related (as reported by NHTSA).

The Automotive Coalition for Traffic Safety formed a Blue Ribbon Panel (BRP) in 2007 for the

development of advanced alcohol detection technology, often called “alcolocks.” The panel consists of vehicle manufacturers, including Ford, alcohol detection technology suppliers, Mothers Against Drunk Driving, the Insurance Institute for Highway Safety, government representatives and other experts.

The BRP and its research are being funded jointly by NHTSA and the Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers. The purpose of the research is to “...engage major automakers in cooperative research that advances the state of alcohol detection technology... to promote the standardization of the technology, its widespread deployment, and acceptance by the general public.”

Ford continues to participate in the work of the Blue Ribbon Panel through the Alliance. Phase I of the research has been completed, though some of the system targets were not achieved and remain to be addressed. Phase II has nonetheless begun, and will include demonstrating the technology in a test vehicle and with human subjects over the next two years.

back to top

New Crash-Test Dummies

Crash-test dummies are essential research tools that aid in the development of passive safety technologies, and Ford Motor Company continues to develop, often in partnership with other parties, more advanced test dummies.

From 2005 through 2010, Ford partnered with the Children’s Hospital of Philadelphia (CHOP), the University of Virginia, Virginia Tech and the Takata Corporation in a multi-year project to develop a new abdominal insert and sensor for a crash-test dummy representing a six-year-old child.

A “family” of crash test dummies

CHOP studies have shown that, in vehicle crashes, significant abdominal injury in four- to eight-year-old children is second in frequency of occurrence only to head and facial injuries. Abdominal injuries may occur when children who are too young (i.e., the four- to eight-year-old range) utilize adult restraint systems without a booster seat. The abdominal insert and sensor will allow restraint engineers industry-wide to test the potential for abdominal injuries in children and ultimately improve the development of in-vehicle restraint systems for younger children.

In February 2008, the Society of Automotive Engineers established a task force to perform “round robin” testing of the new dummy component. More than 20 organizations from around the globe have signed up to participate. Tests will be performed by dummy manufacturers, other OEMs and NHTSA’s Vehicle Research and Test Center. Testing is scheduled to begin in the summer of 2011.

In another effort, Ford, GM and Chrysler have been working together under the auspices of the Occupant Safety Research Partnership (OSRP), a group within the U.S. Council for Automotive Research, to research, develop, test and evaluate advanced crash-test dummies and other pre-competitive safety systems. A number of years ago, the OSRP initiated development of WorldSID, a male side-impact dummy that is recognized as the most advanced crash-test dummy ever created. From 2006 through 2008, the OSRP worked with NHTSA to help them evaluate WorldSID for potential use in the federal government’s new side-impact crash-test standard. NHTSA concluded that the biofidelity of WorldSID is better than that of the dummy in the current side-impact regulation. WorldSID is the first side-impact dummy with the potential to be commonly used in side-impact regulations around the world.

To that end, since 2009, an informal working group under the UN’s Working Party on Passive Safety has been working to fully develop WorldSID dummies for use in government regulations globally. In 2010, OSRP developed a new test fixture to simulate the front end of a generic car or truck. Work is underway using that fixture to assess a new “dummy” leg, called FLEX-PLI, which has been proposed for inclusion in a new Global Technical Regulation for pedestrian testing.

back to top

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Data

The data relating to vehicle safety is included in the Society section of this report.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Case Studies

IN THIS SECTION

Case Study: Driver Distraction

Over the past two decades, cellular phones have gone from clunky novelties to ubiquitous must-haves. The public has become accustomed to using cell phones everywhere – at home, on the street, in restaurants, at the office, while shopping and – of most interest to Ford's safety researchers – while driving. The ubiquity of cell phones has heightened concerns about driver distraction. We at Ford agree that this is an important safety issue, and we have taken steps to address it.

READ MORE

Case Study: Intelligent Vehicles

In recent years, Ford has unveiled numerous safety and driver-assist technologies that rely on radars and cameras to warn the driver of an impending dangerous situation and even intervene if necessary. At the same time, we have been undertaking research – both on our own and in partnership with others – to take these technologies to the next level. This "next level" involves improving the performance of these systems such that they can be used in onboard vehicle-to-vehicle and even vehicle-to-infrastructure communications.

READ MORE

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Case Study: Driver Distraction

Over the past two decades, cellular phones have gone from clunky novelties to ubiquitous must-haves. Wireless subscriptions in the U.S. have grown from about 28 million in 1995 to about 280 million by 2010 – a tenfold increase. The public has become accustomed to using cell phones everywhere – at home, on the street, in restaurants, at the office, while shopping and – of most interest to Ford's safety researchers – while driving.

The ubiquity of cell phones – coupled with the proliferation of portable music players in vehicles – has heightened concerns about driver distraction. We at Ford agree that this is an important safety issue and we have taken steps to address it. We also believe that continued research is needed to better understand the complex interactions involved in this issue, and we are actively participating in that research.

In 2009 and again in 2010, the National Safety Council (NSC) called for a total ban on the use of cell phones, both handheld and hands-free, while driving. The NSC stated that cell phone use while driving is "...a very high-risk behavior with significant impact on crashes...." And indeed, some studies have concluded that there's no difference in driver behavior whether using handheld or hands-free phones. In many of those laboratory studies, participants in simulated driving situations were observed while being asked to engage in in-depth conversations on challenging or emotional subjects, such as the latest political scandal or a near-death experience. Such intense and lengthy discussions can indeed be distracting.

Naturalistic driving studies – in which study participants' driving performance, "eye glance behavior," driving environment and in-vehicle activities are observed and recorded over weeks or months in real-world situations – have revealed different results. For example, naturalistic studies completed by the University of Michigan's Transportation Research Institute reveal that, when immersed in real traffic conditions, drivers using cell phones by and large exhibit prudent driving behavior.

In addition, the landmark 100-Car Naturalistic Driving Study conducted by the Virginia Tech Transportation Institute (VTTI) found that almost 80 percent of all crashes and 65 percent of all near-crashes involved the driver looking away from the forward roadway just prior to the onset of the incident. In 2008, the study's authors summarized their findings in this way: "...it is a rare case that a crash occurs while the driver's eyes are on the forward roadway, regardless of any other 'cognitive demand' that they might be engaged in."

In 2009, the VTTI published a new naturalistic driving study based on commercial vehicle operator experience. This study suggested that there is a 23-fold increase in risk when commercial operators send text messages while driving, and that some behaviors like checking gauges and talking on the cell phone can have protective benefits.

Beyond the VTTI and University of Michigan studies, there exists a considerable body of published research that indicates the superiority of hands-free voice interfaces as compared to handheld or visual–manual interfaces for the same tasks of command or data entry. These studies show advantages in driver performance, eye glance behavior toward the roadway, and object and event detection when the driver can keep eyes on the road and hands on the wheel. It is also interesting to note that, despite the significant increase in cell phone use in recent years, crash rates have fallen over the same time period (specifically, in both the categories of "fatal crashes" and "police-reported crashes"). (See graph below.)

Related Links

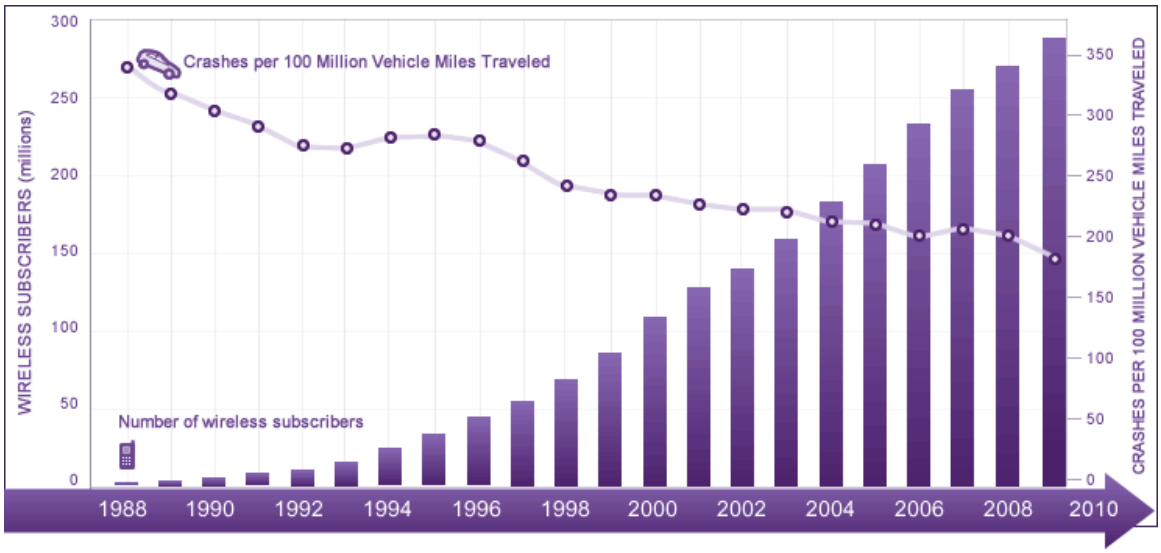
Ford Websites:

- SYNC®
- Ford Driving Skills for Life

External Websites:

- National Safety Council
- University of Michigan Transportation Research Institute
- Virginia Tech Transportation Institute
- U.S. Department of Transportation
- Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers
- Insurance Institute for Highway Safety

Police Reported Crash Rates and Wireless Subscription Growth 1988–2009



Recently, the VTTI 100-Car study has been criticized because only a handful of crashes were recorded, near-miss events were analyzed as surrogates for crashes without empirical justification, and there were only 107 primary drivers (and 132 occasional drivers). In 2010, the U.S. Department of Transportation (DOT) released several important reports that address these issues. One study of commercial truck and bus drivers was based on a data set collected and coded by DriveCam®, a vendor of onboard safety monitoring systems (OBMS). This data set was obtained from 13,306 vehicles and included 1,085 crashes, as well as many times that number of near-crashes, safety-critical events and baseline events. The results, highly consistent with the 100-Car findings, were that activities that take drivers' eyes off the road were associated with crash and near-crash involvement, but listening and talking tasks were not. A separate study conducted by VTTI on the relationship between near-misses and crashes revealed that (a) there was no evidence of different causal mechanisms between the two; (b) the near-misses underestimate risk ratios associated with crashes; but (c) the use of near-misses as surrogates for crashes greatly increases the likelihood of detecting statistically significant differences (when present) because of the much larger sample size of near-misses obtainable in naturalistic driving studies.

Another U.S. DOT-sponsored research study released in 2010 lends new insights into the case-crossover method which produced estimates of "over four-times greater risk of being in a crash" when using a cell phone. (This risk level has been cited by the IIHS, as discussed below.) Unlike the epidemiological studies, the 100-Car data set of video and engineering data has no uncertainty about exact crash times, cell phone use vs. non-use during the hazard interval leading up to the crash or near-crash, whether or not the driver was actually driving during the control day, and so forth. The researchers reported that the case-crossover odds ratios were lower, not higher, than the two-cohort odds ratios, strongly suggesting that the fourfold figure from the non-naturalistic epidemiological studies is inflated. Finally, it is noteworthy that the Strategic Highway Research Program II naturalistic driving study was launched in 2010. This study, which Ford supports with technical advice and information provided on Ford vehicle on-board information channels, will collect data for up to two years each on some 4,000 drivers.

In 2009, the IIHS evaluated insurance data to see if there were demonstrable benefits to bans on handheld cellphone use. As noted above, the IIHS had previously claimed that driving while using a cell phone causes a four-fold increase in risk, thus it was expected that insurance data would show a drop in claims after the enactment of handheld bans. However, the data showed no observable drop in claims as expected. In addition, the IIHS has published studies indicating that handheld phone bans in New York, Washington, DC, and Finland led to an initial decline in the banned behavior followed by a return to pre-ban levels of handheld phone use within roughly one year. The IIHS is now re-evaluating its position on distracted driving and cell phone use risks.

For several years now, Ford has been focused on the issue of driver distraction and has taken steps to enhance driving safety for those who use cell phones and other telematics devices while driving. Through its work with the Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers, for example, Ford helped lead the development of an industry-wide Driver Distraction Voluntary Agreement, and Ford designs its telematics systems to meet that agreement. In addition, Ford was the first automotive manufacturer to support the Schumer Bill, the first bill in Congress to propose a ban on handheld texting while driving. Ford also clarified its employee policies to explicitly ban the practice. Ford Driving Skills for Life, Ford's driver education program, includes modules on the importance of avoiding distracted driving. In 2010 the U.S. Secretary of Transportation convened a two-day Distracted Driving Summit to open a dialogue between the various stakeholders interested in this issue. Ford took part by sending representatives to attend the Summit as well as leading the development of the Alliance of Automobile Manufacturers' presentation for the Advanced Technologies Panel.

Ford SYNC®, our voice-activated in-car connectivity system, has been shown to enhance the ability of drivers to keep their eyes on the road and hands on the wheel while using cell phones and music players. Simulator research at Ford has shown that SYNC substantially reduces drivers' eyes-off-road time and improves lane-keeping, speed maintenance, and object and event detection response times, when compared to handheld devices for the same tasks. (See the above video for an example. It shows how long it takes a driver to find a song on an MP3 player manually vs. using SYNC's voice-activated system.) This study evaluated driver performance, not

driver behavior in the real world. However, these performance effects are consistent with the 100-Car VTTI Study, and strongly suggest that SYNC can reduce driver distraction in situations where a hand-held device would otherwise be used. In addition, these findings were recently confirmed by independent, on-road testing performed by the VTTI and published at the SAE Congress.

Ford customers reinforce the array of compelling research discussed above, as a large majority say they believe voice-controlled systems such as SYNC provide benefits and that they take other responsible measures while using electronics. According to a new survey of Ford owners of vehicles equipped with SYNC, 88 percent use the system's hands-free features, and 74 percent use the unique voice-control functions to use electronics while driving. A large majority of these customers also take other safety measures, such as increasing following distances while using electronics, and 77 percent say they don't use them in hectic driving conditions.

Ford recognizes that drivers will use cell phones and music players while driving, and that evolving technologies like text messaging are growing increasingly popular. Text messaging is a particular concern, as it requires significant time looking away from the roadway to operate. Ford's SYNC system addresses this concern as well: when a text message arrives, it does not display that message but instead reads it aloud through text-to-speech technology, and then provides a list of canned replies for the driver to select rather than key-in or compose manually. SYNC also locks out certain features (such as adding or editing a phone book contact) while driving.

We believe that further education is needed to help drivers understand the importance of focusing on the driving task and keeping their hands on the wheel and eyes on the road. Ford plans to continue to work with the government and other safety-related groups to discuss measures that can effectively reduce driver distraction and improve driving safety. We also plan to participate in continued research that can further our understanding of safe driving and help spread the message of safe driving.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Case Study: Intelligent Vehicles

In recent years, Ford has unveiled numerous safety and driver-assist technologies that rely on radars and cameras to warn the driver of an impending dangerous situation and even intervene if necessary. These technologies include, for example, Lane Keeping Alert, Collision Warning with Brake Support, Adaptive Cruise Control and other features discussed in our Accident Avoidance Technologies and Driver-Assist Technologies sections. At the same time, we have been undertaking research – both on our own and in partnership with others – to take these technologies to the next level.

This "next level" involves improving the performance of these systems such that they can be used in onboard vehicle-to-vehicle (V2V) and even vehicle-to-infrastructure (V2I) communications. In addition to the radar and cameras in use today, advanced Wi-Fi, cellular technologies (GSM/3G or 4G/LTE) and global positioning systems will provide the foundation to build an entirely new landscape of features for the purpose of safety, convenience and eco-mobility.

Ford is rapidly expanding its commitment to "intelligent vehicles" that can wirelessly talk to each other, warning each other of potential dangers to enhance safety and flag impending traffic congestion for more efficient driving. Such systems could potentially help in 81 percent of all police-reported vehicle-to-vehicle crashes involving unimpaired drivers, according to a National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) report. In 2011 we are doubling our investment in intelligent vehicles, forming a new 20-member task force of scientists and engineers to explore the technology's broader possibilities and becoming the first automaker to build prototype vehicles for demonstrations across the U.S.

Ford's vehicle communications technology will allow cars to talk wirelessly with one another using advanced Wi-Fi signals, or dedicated short-range communications, on a secured channel allocated by the Federal Communications Commission. The Wi-Fi-based radio system allows 360 degrees of detection and can "look" around corners for potentially dangerous situations, such as when a driver's vision is obstructed.

Intelligent vehicles could warn drivers if there is a risk of collision when changing lanes, approaching a stationary or parked vehicle, or if another driver loses control. Drivers also could be alerted if their vehicle is on a path to collide with another vehicle at an intersection, when a vehicle ahead stops or slows suddenly, or when a traffic pattern changes on a busy highway. If vehicles approaching from opposite directions were communicating with each other, they could warn the drivers of oncoming vehicles, potentially avoiding head-on crashes.

By reducing crashes, intelligent vehicles could also ease traffic delays, which would save drivers both time and fuel costs. Congestion also could be avoided through a network of intelligent vehicles and infrastructure that processes traffic and road information. A traffic management center would send this information to intelligent vehicles, which could then suggest less-congested routes to drivers.

Ford has initiated a series of research and advanced projects to begin the rollout of intelligent vehicle technologies into our product lineup. Much of our work builds on the research conducted by the Crash Avoidance Metrics Partnership (CAMP), discussed in the Collaborative Efforts section.

In Europe, the "Safe Intelligent Mobility – Test Field Germany" (known as "sim^{TD}" for short) is investigating V2V and V2I communication under everyday conditions in a large-scale field operational test. In sim^{TD}, 400 vehicles are outfitted with V2V and V2I communications systems, and roadside units are set up in select locations around the test area. Both are also linked up to traffic control centers. During the test, participating drivers may, for example, receive information

Related Links

External Websites:

- National Highway Traffic Safety Administration

about a traffic jam or road accident, so they can choose an alternate route. One hundred drivers are actively participating and collecting data by completing specific driving tasks, while 300 drivers are passively taking part by driving where they would normally go. Ford is providing test vehicles for the project, as well as leading the development of the Electronic Emergency Brake Light system, which warns the driver of a heavily braking vehicle ahead.

The sim^{TD} project will run through 2012 around Frankfurt, Germany. It is a joint effort with other OEMs, suppliers, telecommunication providers and research institutes, as well as public authorities. It receives funding from the German government.

Ford is also contributing to the European harmonization and standardization of wireless communication systems and applications within the framework of the DRIVE C2X project, which is co-funded by the European Commission. DRIVE C2X is the acronym for "DRIVing implementation and Evaluation of C2X communication technology in Europe." (C2X stands for "car-to-infrastructure," and means the same as V2I.) This project kicked off in January 2011 and brings together more than 40 stakeholders, such as OEMs, suppliers, universities and public authorities from all over Europe. Within the framework of DRIVE C2X, field operational tests in a real-world environment will be conducted in seven test sites in Europe.

Both sim^{TD} and DRIVE C2X are also targeted to pave the way for full deployment of V2V and V2I systems in Europe and provide Ford with relevant data needed as a basis for the development of next-generation safety and efficiency features.

In the U.S., NHTSA will decide in 2013 whether to initiate a rulemaking process for V2V technologies that could require these systems in new vehicles starting in some future model year. As seen in the examples above, Ford's goal is not to just wait for governmental action in this area, but to accelerate the vehicle connectivity landscape to be a leader in smart, safety and eco-friendly customer solutions.

Toolbox

Print report

Download files

Sustaining Ford

2010 HIGHLIGHTS...

- Won "Business Turnaround of the Year" from American Business Awards
- Full-year 2010 net income highest in more than a decade
- Adding 7,000 new hourly and salaried jobs in the U.S. between 2011 and 2012
- Exploring how automobiles can provide economic opportunities for rural communities in India

Building upon our 2009 momentum, Ford's financial health improved dramatically in 2010 after several challenging years. Our full-year 2010 net income was our highest in more than a decade, as strong products and new investments fueled improvements in all of our global operations. And, we achieved positive Automotive gross cash net of debt earlier than we anticipated.

Our 2010 financial results exceeded our expectations, accelerating our transition from a company working to fix the very fundamentals of our business to a company focused on delivering profitable growth for all. We have emerged from one of our darkest periods and today are continuing to invest in an unprecedented volume of new products, cutting-edge technologies and manufacturing growth across all of our markets.

We have been able to gain market share and make tremendous financial progress by steadfastly sticking to our "ONE Ford" plan. Our vision is one of profitability for all. In other words, when we have a good year, so do our suppliers, our dealers, our shareholders, our employees and our communities.

By staying focused, we have been able to deliver to our customers a full range of vehicles with outstanding fuel economy and exciting new technology at affordable prices. Our incoming vehicle models, for example, are getting better fuel efficiency than their outgoing model counterparts – for each and every vehicle line. At the same time, adhering to the ONE Ford plan has allowed us to advance our sustainability strategy – and simultaneously propel the Company forward.

At Ford, sustainability is at the heart of our business. We have thoroughly linked our Company's economic health to the environmental health of our planet and to the broader social health of the communities in which we operate. Our sustainability strategy is woven through our overall ONE Ford business strategy.

Our sustainability efforts in the early to mid 2000s – both internally and in our work with external stakeholders – set the stage for our Company to respond quickly with new products when skyrocketing fuel prices changed markets virtually overnight. Today, we continue to track and address emerging strategic sustainability issues, from global water availability to the sourcing of conflict minerals, that impact the development and manufacture of new products.

Our sustainability strategy calls for the introduction of a range of global environmental technologies that will offer consumers a choice of more fuel-efficient vehicles that emit fewer greenhouse gases – without compromising on safety, quality or performance. We aim to make our vehicles greener, safer and smarter.

As we develop new vehicles and technologies, we're proud to be addressing a number of critical, broader issues that impact us globally, including the availability and affordability of fuel, the electrification of vehicles, the environmental impacts of CO_2 emissions, the mobility challenges of emerging markets, and human rights within our supply chain.

Such issues pose tremendous challenges for automakers. But they also promise significant opportunities for Ford as we work toward innovative solutions.

For example, our future competitiveness in emerging markets rests in large part on our ability to meet the challenges of rapidly growing urban locations, where more automobiles on the road

Perspectives on Sustainability

Michael Muyot

President and Founder, CRD Analytics

READ MORE

Perspectives on Sustainability

Gary Johnson

Vice President, Manufacturing – Asia Pacific and Africa, Ford Motor Company

READ MORE

Related Links

This Report:

- Restructuring Our Business
- Delivering New Products
- Working as One Team

equals more congestion. At the same time, we are focusing on innovative solutions for remote regions, where access to vehicles has been extremely limited.

At Ford, we have an opportunity to not only focus on our own balance sheet, but to make meaningful contributions toward economic growth, energy independence and environmental sustainability for all of our stakeholders.

ONE Ford

Our ONE Ford plan, which was developed to create a leaner, more efficient global enterprise, is anchored by four key priorities:

- Aggressive restructuring to operate profitably at current demand and changing model mix
- Accelerated development of new products our customers want and value
- Financing the plan and improving our balance sheet
- Working together effectively as one team to leverage our global assets

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Current Financial Health

In recent years, these pages of our Sustainability Report focused on disappointing financial results and our necessary efforts to sustain our business through workforce reductions and streamlined manufacturing. As painful as that process was – and as painful as it remains for those whose jobs were eliminated – it is essential to note that we did not "downsize" our operations as much as we "rightsized" our business. We minimized overcapacity and reduced inefficiencies, resulting in a leaner, but stronger, Ford Motor Company. This positions us to continue the profitable growth we have reported over the past two years so that all stakeholders can benefit from the Company's success.

Prior to our reorganization, we were a company that was global in name only. Today, we operate on a truly global platform, building vehicles that can be adapted for specific regional needs. For example, about 80 percent of the auto parts on our new global Ford Focus are the same around the world; the remaining 20 percent varies to allow for customer flexibility and choice. Flexible manufacturing capabilities enable us to bring products to market with greater speed and greater efficiency than ever before.

The fundamental restructuring of our operations impacted every part of our business – from product innovation and fuel efficiency to labor relations and our interactions with suppliers and dealers. This restructuring helped earn us a "Business Turnaround of the Year" award from the 2010 American Business Awards, which are judged by more than 200 executives from across the U.S. The award recognized our efforts to turn the corner during 2009 in the face of a global economic and financial crisis, as well as unprecedented events in the U.S. automotive industry.

We continued to strengthen our balance sheet in 2010, reducing our Automotive debt by $14.5 billion as we strengthened our business. This included the full $7 billion prepayment of our debt obligations under the Voluntary Employee Beneficiary Association, an independent health care trust established as part of collective bargaining between Ford and the UAW.

We remain committed to aligning production with demand. In many cases, this has meant retooling facilities that previously built large trucks and SUVs to instead manufacture smaller, more energy-efficient vehicles. In 2010, we announced more than $9 billion in global investments for future growth, including $4.5 billion in North and South America, $2.9 billion in Europe and $1.7 billion in our Asia Pacific and Africa region. In early 2011, we announced plans to invest $400 million to support new vehicle production at our Kansas City (Missouri) Assembly Plant, reinforcing our commitment to U.S. manufacturing and American jobs.

Our improved financial performance has allowed us to grow our workforce after several years of painful reductions. We have announced plans to add 7,000 new hourly and salaried jobs in the U.S. between 2011 and 2012. We also have been able to bring more hourly jobs (those that were previously performed by suppliers) in-house, exceeding our commitments in UAW collective bargaining. (For more on our workforce, see the Society section of this report.)

Our financial results also generated tangible employee benefits in 2010. We were able to pay profit sharing to approximately 40,600 eligible U.S. hourly employees, for example. We reinstated a 401(k) matching program and awarded 2010 merit increases for our U.S. salaried employees. We also awarded bonuses and profit sharing for U.S. employees in 2011; however, as part of our ongoing commitment to maintaining a competitive cost structure, we did not award merit increases for the year.

We expect continued financial progress, driven primarily by our growing product strength, a gradually strengthening global economy and an unrelenting focus on improving the competitiveness of our operations.

Ending Mercury Production

A decade ago, Ford Motor Company was made up of eight brands. Today, we have just two, allowing us to focus all of our attention on our Ford and Lincoln brands. In 2010, we ended production of our Mercury brand. Mercury originally was created as a premium offering to Ford and was an important source of incremental sales. However, as the Ford brand grew in strength – particularly during the last three years – many Mercury customers migrated to Ford, and Mercury's incremental sales were declining as Ford sales increased.

At the time of our announcement, there were no stand-alone Mercury dealerships in North America. We worked closely with our dealers to help them sell their remaining Mercury inventory.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Product Competitiveness

Overall, 2010 marked another pivotal year as we launched 24 new or redesigned vehicles in key markets around the world, including the redesigned Ford Explorer, Ford Edge and Lincoln MKX and the new Ford Fiesta in North America; the redesigned Ford C-MAX and new Ford Grand C-MAX in Europe; and the new Ford Figo in India. In 2011, we are launching the new global Ford Focus in North America, Europe, and Asia Pacific and Africa.

We are boosting global production of smaller-sized vehicles, such as the Fiesta, which debuted in the U.S. in 2010. And we are expanding our lineup of vehicles with affordable advanced technologies, such as the fuel-efficient EcoBoost™ engine. We're on track to offer EcoBoost on as much as 80 percent of our global nameplates and 90 percent of our North American nameplates by 2013. That's about 1.5 million engines.

Our blueprint for sustainability, which highlights how we will meet our product carbon dioxide-reduction goal, has positioned us to lead in our industry and will help us meet new regulatory emissions standards. In the U.S., government regulations will require 36 miles per gallon (fleet average) by 2016 – a 30 percent improvement from the 27 mpg required for 2011 models.

The size of and mileage for our light trucks and SUVs has changed dramatically. Our bestselling SUV for 2010 – the compact Ford Escape – is the smallest in our U.S. lineup, getting 23 combined miles to the gallon (a gas-electric hybrid version gets 32 mpg). Our revamped Ford Explorer, meanwhile, gets 25 to 30 percent better gas mileage than the prior model. We also now offer our first full-size pickup built with a smaller, turbocharged engine.

Electrification is another important piece of our overall product development strategy. We have launched or plan to launch five new electrified vehicles in North America by 2012 and Europe by 2013: the Transit Connect Battery Electric Vehicle (BEV), the Focus Electric BEV, the CMAX Energi Plug-In Hybrid Vehicle (PHEV), the C-MAX Hybrid and a next-generation hybrid sedan yet to be named. Our electrification approach is built around customer choice, with options for hybrids, plug-in hybrids and pure battery electric vehicles.

We see ourselves as more than just a car company. To be competitive, we must also be a technology company.

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Ford Future Competiveness

In the next 20 years, the number of vehicles in the world is projected to double from 1 billion to 2 billion, while the demand for fuel for all forms of transportation is predicted to grow by 45 percent. Global temperatures may continue to rise unless we stabilize greenhouse gases. Erratic weather patterns may impact water availability. And increasing global populations, coupled with improved standards of living worldwide, will put added strains on natural resources.

At Ford, we're looking at ways that technology can help us solve such challenges while creating profitable growth. One key piece of our future strategy is finding ways to tackle the mobility challenges of emerging economies. This includes looking for opportunities to improve transportation in rapidly growing urban centers and enhancing access to vehicles in remote locations. We have been dedicating R&D resources toward developing new integrated mobility solutions.

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Focus on Asia

Our future competitiveness depends largely on our ability to meet growing consumer demand for vehicles in the Asia-Pacific area. If we want to remain competitive, we must have a strong presence in Asia, which will account for 70 percent of the world's population growth over the next five years. The fastest-growing markets for automobiles are in rapidly developing countries, especially China and India.

Ford has been operating in China through two joint ventures: Changan Ford Mazda Automobile Corporation, Ltd. (CFMA), which began production in 2003, and Jiangling Motors Corporation, Ltd. (JMC), which assembles Ford and JMC vehicles for distribution in China.

We have invested more than $4 billion in Asia and currently employ some 25,000 people in the region. We are expanding our production capacity in China, India and Thailand, building several new production plants to help meet the needs of the rapidly expanding consumer base.

In China, for example, automakers have been struggling to keep pace with demand. Ford had a record year in China in 2010, selling more than 465,000 units – a 32 percent increase over the previous year. We have been adding dealerships – more than 100 in 2010, for example – in the western and northern regions of China especially. We now have about 340 dealers in China. (For more information on our expansion in the region, please see the Economy section of this report.)

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Mobility Solutions

For decades, we focused on how to sell more cars and trucks. Today, we are considering the consequences if ***all*** we do is sell more cars and trucks.

It's simple math: as the Earth's population grows, so does its need for mobility, which is a critical enabler of economic growth and human potential. Consider the following:

- There are now more than 6.9 billion people in the world. By 2050, there will be 9 billion, 75 percent of whom will live in urban areas.
- By 2015, it is projected that at least 35 mega-cities will have a population of more than 10 million.
- The number of automobiles globally is expected to grow from about 800 million today to between 2 and 4 billion by 2050.
- During 2010 alone, the car market in China expanded by 30 percent, while the market in India grew by more than 35 percent.

We are poised to capture our share of these growing markets. But we also recognize that there are limits to growth, because putting 9 billion people onto the world's already congested roads is neither practical nor desirable. With growth comes severe mobility challenges, ranging from CO_2 and other emissions to congestion. At Ford, we're addressing these challenges by:

- Reducing the environmental impacts of the vehicles we offer by improving their fuel efficiency, making them from more sustainable materials and taking many other measures detailed in this report
- Developing advanced technologies such as electrified and biofueled vehicles
- Exploring how we can help to reduce the global crisis of gridlock by enabling vehicle-to-vehicle and vehicle-to-infrastructure communications that will allow cars to re-route to avoid traffic jams, based on information sent by other vehicles

But we also recognize that to develop innovative mobility solutions, we need to look beyond the vehicle itself to new models of mobility, which take a more integrated approach toward developing transportation solutions. Our vehicles must fit into a broader ecosystem that ties together multiple modes of transportation, enabled by innovative information technologies.

New Models of Mobility

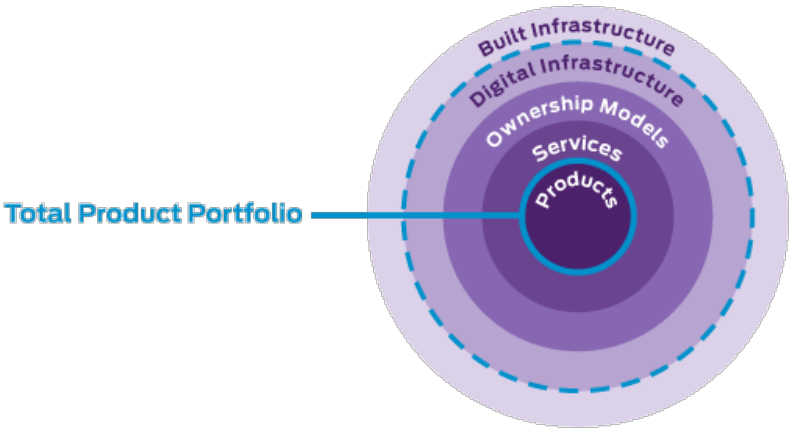
As we reach the limits of conventional models of mobility, we are looking at different models that offer a practical route forward. New approaches take a more holistic view of transportation needs and options, relying on collaborative partnerships and information technology to bring existing services, products, technologies, infrastructure and design together into something that is greater than the sum of its parts – smarter, more sustainable, more convenient, more equitable and better connected.

The last few years have seen technological breakthroughs, such as vehicle-to-vehicle communications, that we didn't ever think possible. Increasingly, Ford is becoming a technology company that makes cars and trucks, and we are exploring ways to leverage these technological innovations to tackle mobility challenges.

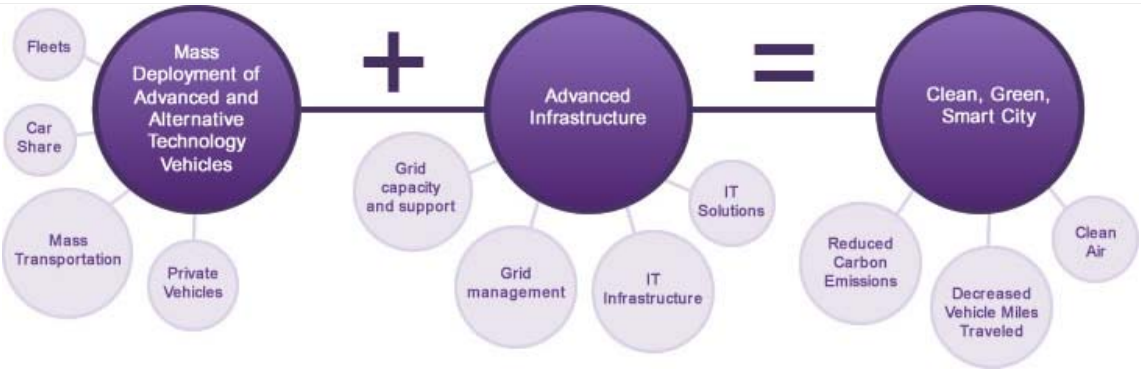
Ford is looking at new mobility options through an "ecosystem" lens that puts vehicles in a broader transportation context. The sustainability ecosystem includes different designs of cars (with different powertrains and different modes of digital connectivity) that can adapt to local geographic needs and integrate with other mass transportation options.

We are analyzing emerging trends, such as population growth, infrastructure, technology and public policy issues (including climate change) to determine how we may fit into a solution. To be successful in the marketplace, Ford can't develop new products in isolation. We must also consider how they will integrate with:

- Built infrastructure (e.g., roadways and parking systems, and the resulting impacts from congestion)
- Digital infrastructure (e.g., "cloud" technology, cell phone use and internet use)
- Vehicle ownership models (e.g., car shares, community car pools)
- Other transportation services (e.g., buses, trains, streetcars, car/bike shares)



For several years, we have invested significant research and development dollars in, and helped to advance thinking about, new models of transportation. We have done this through partnerships and pilot projects at several global locations. Some of these projects have focused on exploring how to deploy electric vehicles as part of integrated mobility solutions aimed at creating "clean, green and smart" cities (see figure below). We believe that creative collaboration and innovative technologies and services can yield new solutions, and that these solutions can harness the benefits of mobility while reducing its environmental and social impacts.



Our goal is to make mobility affordable in every sense of the word – economically, environmentally and socially. Exploring how we can meet social needs will provide insights into the needs of our global customers and new business opportunities for Ford. We aim to be a trusted partner with the many institutions that must cooperate to implement new mobility models. Not only will we be ready with low-carbon vehicles, but also with expertise, insight and mobility solutions.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

SUMURR Project

Recently, we have been taking a closer look at an issue that is closely related to urban mobility: providing economic opportunities for people in rural communities. We're currently examining how automobiles can be part of the solution, from transporting food and water to supplying power from renewable energy sources stored in the vehicle. Improving opportunities for mobility in rural areas may also help alleviate migration to urban areas and thereby slow the problem of urban congestion.

We have been developing a new project that we are calling SUMURR – Sustainable Urban Mobility with Uncompromised Rural Reach. The project is exploring ways we can use our vehicles to add value to society by improving four critical needs – the delivery of potable water; primary education; health; and renewable energy – in India and Brazil.

An initial pilot project will focus on primary health in the Chennai, India, region, where Ford has manufacturing operations. In the poorer rural communities that surround the city, women often neglect their own health, largely because it's difficult to access health care.

"Women feel guilty about taking time away from their families and their demanding lives to travel to the hospital and then spend time waiting to see a doctor," said K. Venkatesh Prasad, group and technical leader of Ford's Infotronics Research and Advanced Engineering team. (Prasad is sometimes described as the "What's Next" guy responsible for software technologies within Ford vehicles.)

Rather than have the women travel to a hospital for health care, the project will take the hospitals to them, in the form of a Ford vehicle equipped with medical supplies and "tele-present" medical practitioners. A mobile broadband connection in the vehicle would enable "telemedicine" service, provided by a doctor back at an urban hospital. (A partnership with a health care provider was under development in the spring of 2011.) The idea is to have the mobile health applications designed, built and managed by local social entrepreneurs, working with the best clinical service and technology providers.

As an incentive to use the service, the patient would also receive a container of drinkable water – an important commodity in the rural regions of Chennai.

"A project like this comes with a deep sense of reward in playing a social role, because it empowers the local communities by identifying entrepreneurs within them," said Prasad, who grew up in Chennai. "But obviously we're also a business, and we can take our learnings from projects like these back into creating products that will drive new global business opportunities with a sharp local focus."

We also are exploring ways we can use our advanced technology vehicles to provide technology to people in rural communities who lack access to computers and digital devices. Prasad described these projects as a form of "digital suffrage" for emerging markets.

We expect these projects to develop more fully in 2011 and 2012, and we hope to have more details – and results of our efforts – to share in our 2011/12 Sustainability Report.

Mobility Challenges and Opportunities

Mobility is a basic human need. Developed and emerging economies alike require transportation systems to get goods to market and people to the places where they work, shop, dine and gather.

Automobiles have provided personal mobility for more than 100 years. There are currently 800 million vehicles in the world, and that number is increasing rapidly as individuals in developing markets reach new levels of prosperity; it could reach 2 to 4 billion by the middle of this century.

This sounds like good news for an automotive company, and to some extent, it is. But a business model built on private ownership of automobiles comes with inherent challenges, which are related directly to the following current and emerging mega-trends. Taken together, the following trends point to increasingly diverse and fragmented markets for traditional automobile sales. They also point to significant opportunities for companies that are able to respond to mobility needs creatively.

- **Urbanization**: By 2015, it is projected that at least 35 mega-cities will have a population of more than 10 million. The migration of rural populations to urban areas often outpaces infrastructure development, leading to overcrowded, substandard living conditions and inconvenient, congested transportation systems.
- **Built and Digital Infrastructure**: More congestion means greater impacts on roadways and other infrastructure, which will require different products and solutions. Collaboration must occur among manufacturers, energy/utility companies, information technology companies and businesses as transportation and utilities become more interdependent.
- **Congestion**: Each year, traffic congestion is estimated to cost the U.S. $67.6 billion, and the average metropolitan driver endures 27 hours of traffic delays. In many places, especially developing countries, traffic delays are considerably worse, and are increasing at an alarming pace. As more vehicles crowd limited road networks, congestion increases. This, in turn, creates pollution, reduces fuel efficiency and wastes travelers' time. We're working on advancing vehicle-to-vehicle and vehicle-to-infrastructure communication systems that will connect cars, allowing them to "talk" to each other and send real-time updates about traffic congestion, road works and other matters that can delay transportation.
- **Climate Change**: The transportation of people and goods accounts for about a third of global human-caused greenhouse gas emissions. Stabilizing greenhouse gas emissions in the atmosphere will require a concerted effort on the part of the private and public sectors to achieve significant cuts in transport-related emissions, at a time when rapid growth in the transportation sector is anticipated. Climate change and associated regulation is leading to new vehicle standards and increased costs. Other policy changes may lead to more congestion taxes and prohibitions on cars entering city limits.
- **Population**: Different regions of the world are experiencing opposing population trends. Among the more developed countries, only the U.S. is growing in population; Europe, Russia and Japan are all shrinking. Regions of Africa and Asia are growing in population and will have large numbers of young people. But by the middle of this century, most of the world will be much older on average. With most people living in urban areas, more and different forms of mobility will be needed to support independent living for seniors, the disabled and young people.
- **Social Inequality**: The growing gap between rich and poor creates enormous needs for innovative, affordable mobility solutions that meet human needs and help people build a better way of life. Unequal access to transportation often limits the opportunities available to those most in need. Better mobility is part of the solution to unemployment and income disparities.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Key Partners

Mobility issues are complex and rapidly changing. Developing solutions to mobility challenges requires innovative, systems thinking. That's why we've developed sustained relationships with organizations, including the following, that give us access to the latest research, insights and integrative ability.

- **Sustainable Mobility and Accessibility Research and Transformation (SMART):** Ford has been working with the University of Michigan on the SMART project since April 2005. SMART takes a collaborative, systems approach to developing innovative, sustainable and connected mobility and accessibility solutions in urban regions around the globe. Building on the seminal work of Moving the Economy in Toronto, SMART has pioneered new thinking, new partnerships and pilot projects related to emerging New Mobility markets and industry development.

  SMART has provided the empirical research and inspiration for Ford's mega-city mobility projects. The insights of the SMART leadership team have served as a foundation for our innovative approach to business opportunities related to New Mobility and for our work with other key sectors, including manufacturing, IT, logistics, tourism, real estate, design and more. In addition to developing New Mobility business opportunities and markets, SMART and Ford are seeking to improve quality of life, employment and other community benefits in cities all over the world over the long term. We are convinced that our partnership with SMART will produce a new systems approach for addressing the increasingly complex challenges to achieving sustainable mobility and accessibility globally, while at the same time transforming the transportation industry into a more sustainable and equitable industry.

- **Georgia Tech Joint Research Projects:** Ford and Georgia Tech have a strong cooperative relationship, focused particularly on sustainability. Our present joint research projects are funded under a multi-year agreement to partner in design, manufacturing and logistics, and in mega-city mobility research. Our collaborative approach has been effective in developing talent among students, faculty and Ford professionals, as knowledge is transferred between the university and company settings. For instance, the students develop enthusiasm for the contributions of engineering in the realms of manufacturing and sustainability, and they gain valuable work experience during summer internships. At present, Georgia Tech is assisting Ford by:

  - Developing the business case for urban mobility, especially pertaining to finance, information technology and vehicles (including fuels, design, carbon and powertrains)
  - Building on the results of Ford's prototype projects, particularly with regard to software device connections

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Mega-Cities: The Icon of Personal Mobility Challenges

Mega-cities are urban areas with more than 10 million residents. At least 25 mega-cities already exist worldwide. Twenty are located in the developing world, as are seven of the nine most populous. By 2015, there are projected to be at least 35 mega-cities, with virtually all the growth in developing countries. Mega-cities experience a wide range of social and environmental problems, many of them related to mobility.

All of the mega-trends we have identified, as well as other challenges to sustainable mobility, are at their worst in mega-cities, and engender paralyzing traffic congestion, air pollution, vehicle-related injuries and fatalities, and health problems. Furthermore, social inequality and the dislocation of families and communities are increasing as people move from rural areas to mega-cities seeking economic opportunities. To develop mega-city mobility strategies will require addressing the mobility needs of rural as well as urban residents, as many mega-city problems could be improved by developing new approaches to the transportation of people and goods between rural and urban areas, and by reducing the need for rural–urban migration.

New mobility solutions depend on collaboration and partnership. Technology can “connect the dots,” but only humans can get the varied institutions and interests involved in urban and rural mobility to work toward a common end. Projects like those described in this section require extensive stakeholder engagement and establishment of trust between the many partners with a role to play.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

2010 Sales and Highlights

Business Unit	2010 Wholesales (in thousands)	Percent Change from 2009	2010 Highlights
Ford North America	2,413	25%	■ In the U.S., Ford's sales were up 19 percent in 2010 compared to 2009, the largest increase of any full-line manufacturer. ■ The Ford F-series was the top-selling vehicle in the U.S. for the 29th consecutive year, and the top-selling pickup truck for the 34th consecutive year. ■ In the U.S., Ford's market share was 16.4 percent, up 1.1 percentage points over 2009; the gain was led by strong sales of the Ford Fusion and the Ford Taurus, which increased sales over 2009 by 21 percent and 51 percent, respectively. ■ The new Ford Transit Connect was awarded the 2010 North American Truck of the Year at the North American International Auto Show. ■ The 2011 Ford Fiesta went on sale in the summer of 2010.
Ford Europe[1]	1,573	–	■ Ford remained the second best-selling passenger car brand in Europe in 2010. ■ In the U.K., Ford was the top-selling car and commercial vehicle brand for the 34th and 45th year, respectively. ■ Ford was the total sales market leader in Denmark, Hungary, Ireland and Turkey for 2010, and remained the No. 1 imported brand in Italy and the Czech Republic. ■ We introduced or revealed 11 new vehicles, including the Ford Fiesta and Ka models, the freshened Ford Galaxy, S-MAX and Mondeo, and a new Focus ECOnetic. ■ We announced a $2.3 billion investment in U.K. manufacturing facilities over the next five years, to support the production of low-carbon-emission vehicles.
Ford South America	489	10%	■ We brought a flexible-fuel version of the European-based Ford Focus to Brazil and launched the North American Ford Edge. ■ Ford is investing $2.57 billion in our Brazil operations between 2011 and 2015 to accelerate the delivery of more fuel-efficient, high-quality vehicles.
Ford Asia Pacific and Africa	838[2]	39%	■ Ninety percent of Ford's sales growth for the region came from China (62%) and India (28%). ■ Our sales in China totaled approximately 339,500 units, an increase of 26 percent compared to 2009. ■ In 2010, we announced a $300 million investment to build a new plant in partnership with JMC in Nanchang. This plant will be capable of building 300,000 vehicles per year. We also began building a new CFMA plant located in Chongqing. And we announced plans to build an engine plant with CFMA, also in Chongqing. ■ Over the next three years, Ford will introduce four new vehicles in the Chinese market, including the new Ford Focus. ■ We introduced the fuel-efficient EcoBoost™ engine and PowerShift transmission technologies in China. ■ In India, we had a record sales year, and we are continuing to expand production capacity and new vehicle introductions. Sales for 2010 were up 168 percent, led by strong sales of the Ford Figo, Fusion, and Ikon. ■ We introduced the Ford Figo, an all-new four-door hatchback small car, in India. ■ Ford sales in Thailand were up 78.7 percent over 2009.

1. Included in wholesale unit volumes are Ford-brand vehicles sold in Turkey by our unconsolidated affiliate, Ford Otosan, totaling about 67,000 units and 51,000 units in 2010 and 2009, respectively.
2. Included in wholesale unit volumes in Ford Asia Pacific and Africa are Ford-brand and JMC-brand vehicles sold in China by our unconsolidated affiliates totaling about 483,000 units and 345,000 units in 2010 and 2009, respectively.

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Perspectives on Sustainability

IN THIS SECTION

Scott Belcher

President and CEO
Intelligent Transportation Society of America (ITS America)

"Intelligent transportation systems truly are the next big thing in vehicle safety. Having vehicles communicate with each other to alert drivers to unsafe roads, accidents and other problems will, quite simply, be transformational."

READ MORE

Michael J. Brennan

President and Chief Executive Officer
United Way for Southeastern Michigan

"When you look at Ford Motor Company today, you see a company with community-focused commitments that are embedded within the corporate DNA. The automaker believes that thriving, viable communities are critical not only to the company itself, but also to those who live and work within its areas of operation."

READ MORE

Tony (Thomas K.) Brown

Group Vice President, Global Purchasing
Ford Motor Company

"At Ford, we spend a lot of time educating ourselves, trying to understand current supply chain issues that impact our operations today, and emerging issues that may define how we operate in the future."

READ MORE

Sister Patricia Daly

Executive Director
Tri-State Coalition for Responsible Investment

"Companies that prioritize human rights issues are making an investment that is ultimately deeply connected to brand value."

READ MORE

Monica Ellis

Chief Executive Officer, Global Environment & Technology Foundation and Chief Executive Officer, Global Water Challenge

"Companies need to evaluate climate change risks holistically – and not just in terms of whether they will have enough water to operate their own businesses. They should also think about water impacts on their workers and their social license to operate."

READ MORE

Mark Fulton and Bruce Kahn

Global Head of Investment Research, and
Senior Investment Analyst for Climate Change
DB Climate Change Advisors

"Climate change brings with it a tremendous opportunity for the auto industry to create new products and entirely new models of transportation technology. Vehicle electrification, for example, is the long-run destination for the industry."

READ MORE

Gary Johnson

Vice President, Manufacturing – Asia Pacific and Africa
Ford Motor Company

"Ford is currently undergoing the largest growth in our manufacturing operations that our Company has witnessed in four to five decades. Most of this is occurring in the Asia Pacific region, with new Ford production plants coming online in China, India and Thailand."

READ MORE

Michael Muyot

President and Founder
CRD Analytics

"Socially responsible investing has become so mainstream among institutional investors that it has now passed the tipping point."

READ MORE

Gerhard Schmidt

Chief Technical Officer, Vice President of Research and Advanced Engineering (Emeritus)
Ford Motor Company

"Part of the ultimate success story for Ford stems from the fact that the Company fully integrated science into its product and operations decision-making processes."

READ MORE

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Scott Belcher

President and CEO
Intelligent Transportation Society of America (ITS America)

Intelligent transportation systems truly are the next big thing in vehicle safety. Having vehicles communicate with each other to alert drivers to unsafe roads, accidents and other problems will, quite simply, be transformational.

Indeed, the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration estimates that connected vehicle technologies could lead to a 70 percent reduction in the number of crashes where the driver isn't impaired. In terms of order of magnitude for vehicle safety, this is as big a leap forward as the implementation of seat belts or the addition of electronic stability controls.

Auto manufacturers have already demonstrated the viability of connected vehicles, and the technology has been taking big steps forward in recent years – in part because regulators are considering taking action by 2013 to require such technology.

The system is based upon Dedicated Short-Range Communication, or DSRC, which consists of wireless channels designed specifically for automotive use. DSRC technology is also being used for infrastructure-to-vehicle communications, such as automatic payment systems at tollbooths.

In the United States, auto manufacturers have been investing hundreds of millions of dollars and are working together through the Crash Avoidance Metrics Partnership to develop the technology on an open, shared platform. This means that a Ford vehicle will be able to "talk" not only to another Ford, but to a Toyota, a GM or any other vehicle on the road. The Department of Transportation, which has been encouraging the collaboration, and automakers should be commended for making this big and important commitment.

Of course, there are always naysayers who question the technology platforms. But it's the same argument that doubters made with the introduction of cell phones or the Internet. That is, as soon as you settle on a technology, something else will inevitably come along that is smarter, cheaper or better.

Depending on when vehicle-to-vehicle DSRC technology becomes a requirement for new cars, we can anticipate seeing full penetration of these systems as standard equipment on all vehicles within 10 to 15 years. That's the timeframe needed for deployment within the majority of new vehicles on the road. Meanwhile, "here I am" devices can be installed in older vehicles, speeding the use of vehicle-to-vehicle safety technology. Once fully deployed, cars will be able to communicate to avoid crashes and to allow for better management of our highways and infrastructure.

In addition, consumer electronics companies are building after-market vehicle-to-vehicle technology devices.

ITS America has been working to harmonize the standards globally, so that vehicles in Europe will communicate with each other the same way that they do in the United States or in Asia. You want the safety messages and the systems to operate on the same platform – but we're not there yet. Ford has been very actively involved in this effort.

The safety benefits for these communications are often seen as the top priority, but vehicle-to-vehicle capabilities can also have big impacts on traffic congestion and on the environment. If you know to steer clear of a certain highway, then you can reroute your commute and avoid sitting in traffic – thereby reducing your vehicle emissions. Similarly, this system can help to identify parking spots in an urban setting, thereby significantly limiting the amount of time spent circling around looking for a spot.

Automakers have much at stake on the issue of climate change. Vehicle-to-vehicle communications are just one way they can make a substantial contribution toward reducing greenhouse gas emissions.

Scott Belcher

President and CEO
Intelligent Transportation Society of America (ITS America)

Related Links

This Report:

- Vehicle Safety and Driver-Assist Technologies

Toolbox
- Print report
- Download files

Michael J. Brennan

President and Chief Executive Officer
United Way for Southeastern Michigan

The partnership between United Way and Ford dates back more than 60 years. Even in its early days, the company understood that it was essential for a successful corporation to address the most pressing human needs within society. Ford has a long history of mirroring its belief system with actions.

When you look at Ford Motor Company today, you see a company with community-focused commitments that are embedded within the corporate DNA. The automaker believes that thriving, viable communities are critical not only to the company itself, but also to those who live and work within its areas of operation.

Sadly for our community, Detroit can be seen as the “ground zero” of the nation’s economic crisis. The devastation to this city is equivalent to that of New Orleans following Hurricane Katrina – only without the floods. In 2010, our United Way “help line” took in 400,000 calls from southeastern Michigan (up from 300,000 in 2008) – with hunger the top reason for assistance.

Many of those calls for food relief were coming from areas that never before needed help, which meant social service organizations didn’t have the infrastructure to support so many in need. Ford worked with us to develop a mobile strategy, through which we could take food directly to individuals using a fleet of Transit Connect vans donated by Ford for this purpose. These vans are able to bring food to historically middle-class communities where food pantries simply don’t exist.

Despite Ford’s own financial troubles in recent years, the company continued to stand behind its communities. The approach has been focused and strategic, because the company has had to do more with less. When Ford had to re-focus its charitable dollar contributions to maximize community impacts, it harnessed the energy of its employees for volunteer projects. The company found creative ways to use its people and its products to address urgent social issues.

The most important thing a company can do for its communities is to be successful as a private enterprise. After all, there’s nothing more power than a viable, sustainable and meaningful job.

I’ve been doing this kind of work for 25 years, and the companies that weather the most difficult times are those that have a deep understanding of the interdependence between a successful company and a successful community. Companies that encourage their employees to be engaged within their communities are far likelier to do well. Indeed, employees want to work for organizations that allow them to find meaning in their lives.

I could give a company a detailed checklist of the things they and their employees can do for their communities. But unless a company has a deep and abiding commitment from corporate leaders, execution of the checklist will be a thankless task. The big differentiator for Ford is that they understand the importance of community work, and they attach the leadership and the resources to it so it can reach its full expression.

Michael J. Brennan

President and Chief Executive Officer
United Way for Southeastern Michigan

Related Links

This Report:
- Communities

Tony (Thomas K.) Brown

Group Vice President, Global Purchasing
Ford Motor Company

When we started on our sustainable supply chain journey in 2000, Ford really was on the leading edge of our industry. As a consequence, it meant we had a lot of learning to do ourselves about the true meaning of supply chain sustainability.

The more we learned, the more we realized that it was not a journey we could legitimately take on our own. One of the first things we did was think about ways to bring the auto industry along with us, so we could have a much more significant impact. To leverage our resources and truly influence change, we needed to educate ourselves and educate other automakers to get them to understand how essential a sustainable supply chain is to business operations.

We're proud of the fact that we've been successful not only in improving working conditions among our own direct supplier companies, but also in getting the industry to partner with us to advance the overall human rights agenda. We have had a terrific multiplier effect, thanks to the efforts of our industry collaborative, the Automotive Industry Action Group Initiative (AIAG). Thousands of individuals and hundreds of plants all over the world have received training in responsible working conditions issues.

One of the biggest challenges in this area lies in developing sustainable supply chains in emerging markets. Not all developing markets are receptive to the importance of human rights for their workforce. For countries that are nation building, not everything is going to be perfect from Day One, and it's unrealistic for us to expect that.

Of course, business priorities can change for any company, whether you are in a developed market or an emerging one. For example, when our industry went through a difficult period in 2008 and 2009, as a result of the economic meltdown, supply chain sustainability issues did not get the attention they deserved. Fortunately for Ford, we were able to maintain our focus in this area, even during difficult financial times.

At Ford, we spend a lot of time educating ourselves, trying to understand current supply chain issues that impact our operations today, and emerging issues that may define how we operate in the future. To use a hockey analogy, it's the concept of understanding where the puck is going to be, versus where the puck is right now. In addition to our work with the AIAG, we also collaborate with nongovernmental organizations, the U.S. government and the United Nations so we can be a part of shaping policies around human rights issues.

Ford's overall approach has been about building our own knowledge and capacity, which in turn has helped to build knowledge and capacity among our suppliers, which, in turn, helps them do the same with their own suppliers. For us, it's been a voyage of discovery – and we're not yet at an endpoint.

Tony (Thomas K.) Brown

Group Vice President, Global Purchasing
Ford Motor Company

Related Links

This Report:
- Supply Chain

Toolbox
Print report
Download files

Sister Patricia Daly

Executive Director
Tri-State Coalition for Responsible Investment

When it comes to human rights issues, the best corporate citizens – and the ones with the greatest integrity – are those companies that have very clear codes of conduct, with real buy-in and participation from top levels of management and from members of the board of directors. There has to be a deep understanding throughout the company about the implications of the code. I'm not talking about a code that simply says: "We're going to be good people."

An effective code of conduct must identify the company's responsibility to its own employees, but also its responsibilities to the working conditions of the people who work within the supply chain. The code should factor in broader issues of human rights, such as water availability in stressed regions. And the code must be a living document that is pertinent to the operations of a company and that can adapt over time.

As an example, members of the Interfaith Center on Corporate Responsibility (ICCR) were among the first to raise concerns to global manufacturers over conflict minerals in the Congo. Companies need to be responsive to new information about human rights abuses within their spheres of operation and be prepared to be accountable.

Companies that prioritize human rights issues are making an investment that is ultimately deeply connected to brand value. Of course, it's an investment whose outcomes can initially be hard to quantify. Yet, companies that run afoul of human rights issues can find themselves in trouble very quickly – especially in a 24-hour news cycle where disturbing videos can be seen by millions of people around the globe within minutes.

Ford has a reputation within the auto industry for taking a leadership role on human rights issues. For example, in recent years it's been wonderful to see how the company has initiated addressing concerns around the accessibility and availability of water and abuses in the Congo over conflict minerals. On the conflict minerals issue, Ford is attempting to address the concerns right up front.

I've been working with Ford on social and human rights issues for more than three decades, but the real turning point in our relationship came in the mid 1990s when our coalition put forward our first shareholder resolution around global warming. Bill Ford understood our concerns, and he opened up a strategic dialogue for us, becoming one of the first U.S. companies to seriously engage business perspectives around greenhouse gas emissions. We've had a robust and engaged relationship ever since. We may agree to disagree sometimes, but we have a strong working relationship that is built in large part on trust.

Very often, investment managers will ask me to list five global companies that are tackling human rights issues and engaging openly with their shareholders and nongovernmental organizations. Ford always comes to mind.

Engaged shareholder organizations such as the Tri-State Coalition for Responsible Investment and the ICCR want our companies to profit, but we believe that long-term profitability is clearly linked to strategies that avoid behaviors that are harmful, and in the end contribute to society as a whole. A company with a robust code of conduct demonstrates that it aims to be a company of great integrity and that it's not simply about financial profits.

For me, it's an honor to be partnering with employees who really want to ensure that their company is profitable and filled with integrity, and who want their company to play a role in making the world a better place.

Sister Patricia Daly

Executive Director
Tri-State Coalition for Responsible Investment

Related Links

This Report:
- Human Rights

Monica Ellis

Chief Executive Officer, Global Environment & Technology Foundation and Chief Executive Officer, Global Water Challenge

Water supply and quality challenges are growing increasingly acute. This trend is expected to continue, with the greatest impacts in Africa, West Asia, China, India and Indonesia – the future growth markets for many companies. Experts predict that by 2015, two-thirds of the world's population will live in water-stressed areas.

Today, nearly 1 billion people worldwide lack access to safe water, making it one of the world's most significant yet underreported public health challenges. When you couple that with the 2.6 billion people who lack sanitation, the true scope of the challenge becomes clear. Yet despite these grim statistics, this is one of the most solvable issues of our time. Companies have an important role to play in the solution.

A growing number of companies are stepping up their leadership on water issues out of recognition that water is a basic element of a healthy, vibrant and economically viable community. Clean water provides the underpinnings for prosperity. Without clean water access, we often find economic and social instability.

A company that is interested in leading the change toward solutions must first make sure that its own house is in order. Is your own water use as efficient as possible? Are you setting targets to improve your efficiency over time? How do you impact the watersheds where you operate? Outside of your operations, how are you working to improve water quality and access within the communities where you operate? Do your own employees have access to safe water and sanitation at home? Once those issues are addressed, companies can further expand outward to examine their impacts and their ability to be "change-makers" at the regional, national and global levels.

Companies that tackle water issues in concentric circles that radiate outward are able to address community needs while mitigating important business risks. This includes risk to the business from issues such as climate change. Water will be one of the first resources affected in locations where climate change is felt, particularly in coastal and water-scarce regions. This will likely exacerbate water availability problems, especially in emerging growth markets such as China and India.

Companies need to evaluate climate change risks holistically – and not just in terms of whether they will have enough water to operate their own businesses. They should also think about water impacts on their workers and their social license to operate. If employees don't have access to safe water, then they are more prone to waterborne diseases and won't be effective at their jobs.

Over the last decade, I have seen amazing progress among companies that have decided to tackle water as a front-line issue. The challenge, however, is this: Are they addressing it fast enough and in the places with the greatest needs? Ford is one of a number of leading companies that are members of Global Water Challenge, which is investing in collaborative solutions to expand access to clean water and sanitation to those in need.

The water challenge is too large for any one sector to tackle alone. Public and private groups must work together to find sustainable solutions. For example, through efforts by governments, organizations and private-sector actors, roughly 200 million people have gained access to clean water over the past decade.

I applaud Ford's recognition of water as an issue material to its business. It's a very powerful thing when companies understand their environmental footprints and choose to leverage this understanding for the greater good. When a company like Ford takes this step, that gets the attention of competitor companies and stimulates momentum. It is this momentum that provides perhaps the best hope for solving the global water crisis.

Monica Ellis

Chief Executive Officer, Global Environment & Technology Foundation and Chief Executive Officer, Global Water Challenge

Related Links

This Report:
- Water

Mark Fulton and Bruce Kahn

Global Head of Investment Research, and
Senior Investment Analyst for Climate Change
DB Climate Change Advisors

Among investors, widespread interest in climate change and its impacts really began in the mid 2000s. We believe climate change investing is a mega-trend that will be here for another 50 years, if not longer.

Companies must view climate change as a business issue, as an environmental issue, and as a moral and a social issue. How a company discusses these topics depends in many ways upon its audiences. In the United States, for example, right now climate change is looked at more in terms of energy security and cost reductions in renewable energy. In Europe, climate change is also about impacts on the environment. And in China, climate change is viewed more through the lens of pollution and industrial energy policy.

Those who want to make climate change-related investments are looking for what we like to call "TLC" – transparency, longevity and certainty in policy frameworks. Therefore, having governmental and regulatory policies around climate change, mandates, standards and incentives is absolutely essential for investors who must be able to evaluate appropriate risk-adjusted returns.

In the United States, there's a strong feeling that federal regulations have been on-again, off-again in terms of supporting cleaner energy and alternatives. Many states, however, have proven to be more consistent with their policies and regulations, particularly California, Texas and New Jersey. In Europe, Germany's policies around climate change are comprehensive and arguably best in class; the United Kingdom has been moving strongly in that direction.

For us, analyzing policy and regulations is the heart and core of what we're doing as a research group.

Obviously, climate change brings with it a tremendous opportunity for the auto industry to create new products and entirely new models of transportation technology. Vehicle electrification, for example, is the long-run destination for the industry.

Around the world, governments have been pushing fuel-efficiency standards, forcing auto manufacturers to tighten up and make dramatic increases in efficiency. But clearly, the auto industry will need to partner with other industries, such as utilities and power generators, because the infrastructure needs for new modes of transport will be enormous. Auto companies simply can't solve energy and transportation problems on their own. There's not much point in electrifying the transport sector if gasoline is replaced with heavy, carbon-burning fuels like coal.

As we move more toward the electrification of vehicles, we must find better ways to play into the power system so that plug-in cars become sources of energy storage. For example, can we harness wind power overnight to charge car batteries? How will the auto industry play into the smart grid to ensure that the power provided for electrification is indeed clean power?

In many senses, climate change is simply another symptom of population growth and the increasing wealth of global populations, which becomes a problem when combined with the use of fossil fuels. We have gone from 1 billion people on the planet in 1900 to 6.5 billion now; and we're heading toward 9.5 billion by 2050. If all these billions of people want to live like we do in America, then we will place a tremendous burden on the resources of this planet and the environment. Water scarcity is likely to be the next crisis – and potentially an even bigger one than climate change.

Ultimately, the only way we can provide the power, water, transportation and food for 9.5 billion people is by having an enormously powerful deployment of technologies that will allow these resources to work for the planet in a clean and sustainable way.

Mark Fulton

Global Head of Investment Research
DB Climate Change Advisors

Bruce Kahn

Senior Investment Analyst for Climate Change
DB Climate Change Advisors

Related Links

This Report:
- Climate Change

Gary Johnson

Vice President, Manufacturing – Asia Pacific and Africa
Ford Motor Company

Ford is currently undergoing the largest growth in our manufacturing operations that our Company has witnessed in four to five decades. Most of this is occurring in the Asia Pacific region, with new Ford production plants coming online in China, India and Thailand. Over the next four years, we will be introducing more than 50 new vehicles and powertrains in our Asia Pacific and Africa region, which is expected to account for 70 percent of Ford's future growth.

In 2010, auto sales in China reached more than 18 million – a tenfold increase from a decade earlier. To put that in perspective, that's more auto sales than we've ever seen in a year in the United States. About 70 percent of buyers in China are first-time auto purchasers. And 90 percent of those buyers pay with cash.

That's why we at Ford are positioning ourselves to participate in this tremendous growth opportunity. Over the last few years, we have developed a new business model with globalized vehicle platforms that can be adapted to specific regional needs. Ultimately, every vehicle we launch globally will be evaluated for markets in China and India, too.

Right now in China, we rank as the 13th or 14th automaker in terms of sales – well behind our ranking in the North American and European markets, where we are consistently within the top three auto producers. But we believe we'll be able to significantly increase our presence in the Chinese market.

Two years ago, we moved our Asia Pacific headquarters from Thailand to China, because that's where the biggest growth is. The move has given us much greater insight, because we're able to see firsthand what's going on in China. We understand the customers and how our joint ventures operate. We also have gained a better understanding of our supply base, our dealer footprint and how to hire the workforce we need to compete effectively.

Ford was slightly late to the game in China, in part because we didn't truly operate as a global company until the last few years. But recently, we have focused on our One Ford plan and strategy that cuts across all of our regions of operation. Today, 90 percent of our products are global, which gives us the ability to compete anywhere in the world.

Of course, there are a host of challenges for Ford in these markets. For example, can we deliver the products we promise on time? We can have extremely aggressive growth plans, but we need to have the manufacturing capacity and capabilities to produce results.

Another challenge is integrating Ford into these new communities in a sustainable fashion. Each time we build a new manufacturing plant, we examine social and environmental factors, such as traffic congestion, accessibility within the local communities to water and electricity, and biodiversity. Many of the locations we are entering are underdeveloped, so we must consider ways Ford can help support the community.

This period of growth is incredibly exciting. The last period like this at our Company was in the late 1950s and early 1960s, so most of us have never seen anything like this – and most of us will likely never see anything similar again.

Gary Johnson

Vice President, Manufacturing – Asia Pacific and Africa
Ford Motor Company

Related Links

This Report:
- Sustaining Ford
- Economy

Michael Muyot

President and Founder
CRD Analytics

In recent years, we have witnessed the exponential growth of companies that are reporting metrics that capture their activities around environmental, social and governance issues (or ESG, for short). More and more, companies are integrating these measures into their overall corporate accounting standards. In fact, those companies that are not monitoring, measuring and optimizing their ESG performance are seen as laggards.

At CRD Analytics, we evaluate corporations through the lens of some 200 quantitative and qualitative metrics to give investors a truly holistic view of where companies fall within their industries and across different sectors on ESG and financial measures. We focus on a range of key performance indicators, from a company's commitment to human rights and community involvement to its performance in product responsibility and environmental impacts.

About 3,500 companies worldwide produce some type of corporate social responsibility (CSR) report with quantifiable ESG metrics. But, with 60,000 multinational firms in the world, we're not even close to hitting critical mass. A growing number of companies are issuing social responsibility reports in the United States and Asia, while Europe, which historically had been the leader in reporting, has tapered off.

Socially responsible investing has become so mainstream among institutional investors that it has now passed the tipping point. And individual investors, who make up 30 percent of all shareholders, have become more active and are thinking about CSR issues when they buy and sell company shares. Individual investors and consumers have an incredible amount of information at their fingertips and are increasingly loyal to those brands that mirror their own individual belief systems. When a company gets into trouble, consumers see the headlines almost instantly through social media. And we see this having an impact on individual purchasing and investing behaviors.

Ford, which is one of the companies my firm tracks in our analytic reports, has shown strong improvements in its ESG ratings from 2007 to 2010. The company demonstrates a nice balance between financial and ESG issues, ranking number two within the automotive industry.

Companies like Ford that have weathered the recent financial crisis have done so partly because of strong internal governance and a vision for corporate responsibility that not only originated from the top down, but also was incorporated from the bottom up. Employee engagement is a critical component in making sustainable practices part of the company's DNA.

Ford has strong visibility within the global responsible investment community, thanks in large part to its use of the Global Reporting Initiative (GRI) G3 Reporting Guidelines, a GRI Index for its online and printed sustainability reports and the fact that the company produces a report at a GRI application level of "A."

The most successful corporate responsibility reports tell a story and provide details of both the good and the bad at a company. That's one of the things I believe Ford does really well. The automaker talks openly about the challenges it faces, and that makes investors feel the company is more trustworthy. Investors don't believe companies that "greenwash" and claim that everything is rosy. Transparency is key.

Companies that can tie sustainability to their brands, and show how citizenship is woven into their DNA, will be able to differentiate themselves from their peers. Investors want to see how the company treats its employees, how diverse its Board of Directors is and how it manages in a crisis, to name just a few examples.

Ford has an amazing opportunity to really engage with its customers in a revolutionary way through technology and social media – and to define itself as a sustainable brand. To get to the next level, Ford must show that it is listening to its employees; after all, it's the employees who can help advance sustainability by finding new ways to innovate, save money and promote the brand.

Michael Muyot

President and Founder
CRD Analytics

Related Links

This Report:

- Sustaining Ford
- Economy

Gerhard Schmidt

Chief Technical Officer, Vice President of Research and Advanced Engineering (Emeritus)
Ford Motor Company

I spent a decade at Ford, before my recent retirement, looking at ways to advance automotive engineering and research. Although my job description was technically the same over those 10 years, the roles I played varied, and I considered myself at times a scientist, an engineer, a teacher and occasionally even a visionary.

The visionary part may be a bit overstated, but one has to be forward-thinking when considering long-term solutions for climate change and how to make better use of natural resources. In the early 2000s, the Company wasn't ready to accept that climate change was a potential threat. We were fortunate that Bill Ford started to address the importance of climate change and translate his own visionary approach into the creation of products that could address the problem.

Yet even when the Company began to recognize the significance of climate change, the business environment at Ford couldn't immediately support the development of potential solutions. A decade ago, nearly three-quarters of the vehicles we were building in North America were trucks and SUVs, which meant it would have been nearly impossible to achieve stringent emission reduction targets along the lines of those that were already in place in Europe.

The biggest challenge initially wasn't just knowing what technologies were available to reduce vehicle emissions, but thinking about what Ford's long-term product portfolio might look like.

Part of the ultimate success story for Ford stems from the fact that the Company fully integrated science into its product and operations decision-making processes. As a scientist, it was incredibly exciting to see Ford begin to integrate sustainability issues into our corporate strategies and to conclude that it was the right thing to do. Today, the Company recognizes that building more fuel-efficient products creates a stronger business. There's no longer a conflict between having a strong business and building more-efficient powertrains and products. Being the best in class in fuel economy (which also means best in class in terms of CO_2 emissions) gives Ford a distinct competitive advantage.

When developing new automotive technologies, you're not looking a year or two ahead – you're looking 10 to 15 years out. Every new technology objective at Ford must take into account four essential pillars: safety, quality, environmental sustainability and design. Put another way: Ford automobiles must be safe, clean and smart. After all, if the car doesn't look nice and doesn't offer the right features, customers won't buy it.

To improve a vehicle's carbon footprint, the auto industry must work together and with governments, academics and community organizations. We know already that significant emissions reductions won't be possible simply by improving today's powertrains. The long-term roadmap requires much greater use of battery electrification and other applications, such as fuel cells, and we'll require new infrastructures and transportation systems as a result.

Looking ahead to the future, auto companies will need to deliver a balanced portfolio with alternative energy sources that are tailored to particular regions. For example, in Iceland, where there's a high production of geothermal energy, automobiles might run only on fuel cells. But that wouldn't be practical, for example, in Detroit.

Where environmental sustainability is concerned, the goal must be to make advanced, more-efficient technologies that are affordable for everyone – in other words, "the democratization of technology," which was a philosophy that Henry Ford himself embraced when he started his Company.

Gerhard Schmidt

Chief Technical Officer, Vice President of Research and Advanced Engineering (Emeritus)
Ford Motor Company

Related Links

This Report:

- Climate Change